Your Owner's Manual

Digital version available on the Internet

http://go.skoda.eu/owners-manuals

ŠKODA KODIAQ 07.2020
Angličtina/English
565012720AH

OWNER´S MANUAL

ŠKODA KODIAQ

ŠKODA
SIMPLY CLEVER



Documentation of vehicle delivery
Vehicle Identification Number (VIN)

Date of vehicle delivery _____ / _____ / _____

ŠKODA Partner

Stamp and signature of the vendor

I confirm that I have taken delivery of the vehicle in good condition, have received information on how to operate it correctly, and have had the terms of the warranty explained to me.

Signature of the customer

Does the vehicle have an extended warranty?

☐ **YES**

☐ **NO**

Limitations of the ŠKODA extended warranty[a)]

Years: _____

or

km: _____

or

Miles: _____

[a)] Depending on which comes first.

565012720AH

Reprinting, reproduction, translation or use in any other way, either in whole or in part, is not permitted without the written consent of ŠKODA AUTO a.s..

ŠKODA AUTO a.s. expressly reserves all rights relating to copyright laws.

Subject to change.

Issued by: ŠKODA AUTO a.s.

© ŠKODA AUTO a.s. 2020

Vehicle owner

First Vehicle owner

This vehicle with the registration plate

_____

belongs to:
Title, name/company:

_____

_____

Address:

_____

_____

_____

Telephone:

_____

ŠKODA Partner:

Service consultant:

_____

Telephone:

_____

Second Vehicle owner

This vehicle with the registration plate

_____

belongs to:
Title, name/company:

_____

_____

Address:

_____

_____

_____

Telephone:

_____

ŠKODA Partner:

Service consultant:

_____

Telephone:

_____

565012720AH

Table of Contents

1 Vehicle owner

5 About the Owner's Manual

5 About the Owner's Manual

6 Explanations

6 Digital Instructions in Vehicle Infotainment

6 Application Quick Start Guide

7 Vehicle overviews

7 Front vehicle area
9 Rear vehicle area
10 Driver's seat
10 Centre console and passenger seat
11 Engine compartment
11 Buttons/dials on the multifunction steering wheel

12 Warning lights

12 Functionality
12 Warning lights overview
14 Indicator lights overview

18 Correct and safe

18 Introductory information on correct use
18 New vehicle or new parts
18 Regular checks
18 No improper vehicle adjustments
18 Keeping sensors and cameras in working order
19 Engine compartment
19 Vehicle battery
19 Using electrical sockets in the vehicle
19 Before your journey
21 Safe driving
22 Emergency call
23 After an accident

24 Keys, locks and alarm system

24 Key
25 Memory function of the key
26 Central locking
27 Keyless locking (KESSY)
28 Alarm system

29 Doors, windows and boot lid

29 Doors
29 Child safety lock on the rear doors
30 Protective door strip
30 Window - with electrical operation
32 Sliding/tilting roof
33 Sunblind - with electrical operation
33 Sun protection roller blinds for the rear door panes
33 Sun visors
33 Boot lid - with manual operation
34 Boot lid - with electrical control
35 Electrically operated contactless boot lid
35 Unlocking the boot lid

36 Seats, steering wheel and mirror

36 Front seat - with manual operation
36 Front seat - with electrical operation
36 Memory function of the seat
37 Second row of seats
38 Parking position of the rear seat belts
38 Third row of seats
39 Headrests
40 Front armrest
40 Rear armrest
40 Steering wheel
41 Interior rear-view mirror
41 Wing mirror

42 Restraint systems and airbags

42 Seat belts
44 Child seat
45 Fasteners for child seats
47 Airbags
48 Key switch for the front passenger airbag

49 Lighting, windscreen wipers and washers

49 Exterior lighting
52 COMING HOME, LEAVING HOME exterior lighting
52 Light Assist high-beam assist system
52 Replace light bulbs
55 Interior lighting
56 Interior ambient light
56 Windscreen wipers and washers

58 Heating and air conditioning system

58 Manual air conditioning
59 Climatronic automatic air conditioning system
61 Auxiliary heating and ventilation
62 Heated windscreen
63 Seat heating and ventilation
64 Heated steering wheel

64 Driver information system

64 Analogue instrument cluster
65 Digital instrument cluster
67 Driving data
68 Speed limit warning
68 Vehicle status
69 Stopwatch in the instrument cluster
69 Stopwatch in the Infotainment
70 Information Sport
70 Personalization

71 Infotainment Swing

71 Infotainment overview
71 System
72 Screen
72 Infotainment keyboard

73 Control centre
73 Radio
76 Media
79 Mobile device management
80 Telephone
82 SmartLink

84 Infotainment Bolero
84 Infotainment overview
85 System
86 Screen
87 Infotainment keyboard
88 Voice control
89 Control centre
89 Radio
93 Media
97 Images
98 Mobile device management
99 Telephone
102 Wi-Fi
104 SmartLink

106 Infotainment Amundsen
106 Infotainment overview
106 System
107 Screen
108 Infotainment keyboard
109 Voice control
110 Control centre
111 Radio
114 Media
118 Images
119 Mobile device management
120 Telephone
123 Wi-Fi
125 SmartLink
127 Navigation

131 Infotainment Columbus
131 Infotainment overview
131 System
132 Screen
133 Keypad
134 Voice control
135 Control centre
136 Radio
139 Media
143 Images
144 Mobile device management
145 Telephone
148 Wi-Fi
150 SmartLink
152 Navigation

156 Online Services
156 ŠKODA Connect
157 User registration and activation of the ŠKODA Connect services
158 Setting personal data protection
160 User management
162 User account
162 Personalisation
162 Management of online services
163 eSIM data connection
164 Online System Update
165 Shop
165 Information call
166 Breakdown call
166 Service schedules
166 Vehicle status report
166 Remote access to the vehicle

167 Starting and driving
167 Start
168 Starting issues
168 START STOP
169 Manual gearbox
169 Automatic gearbox
171 Vehicle driving mode
172 Economical driving style
172 Towing a trailer
174 Towing eye and towing procedure
175 Brakes
175 Electric parking brake
176 Auto Hold automatic holding function

177 Driver assist systems
177 Braking and stabilising systems
178 Front Assist
179 Pedestrian detection system
179 Speed limiter
180 Cruise control system
181 Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)
183 Lane Assist
184 Travel Assist
184 Lane change assist system Side Assist
185 Traffic sign recognition
186 Crew Protect Assist proactive occupant protection
187 Driver Alert fatigue detection assistant
187 Emergency situation assist systemEmergency Assist
187 Hill descent assistant

188 Park Assist systems
188 Park Pilot parking aid
189 Rear view camera
191 Area View environment overview
192 Rear Traffic Alert
192 Park steering assistant
194 Trailer assist trailer manoeuvring aid

195 Engine, exhaust system and fuel
195 Bonnet
195 Engine oil
196 Coolant
198 Engine electronics
198 Particle filter
198 Exhaust control system
198 Fuel filter

198 Radiator blinds
199 Fuel filler flap
199 AdBlue
200 Petrol
201 Diesel

202 Vehicle battery and fuses
202 Vehicle battery
204 Using the jump-starting cable
205 Fuses
205 Fuses in the dash panel
207 Fuses in the engine compartment

208 Wheels
208 Tyres and rims
209 All-season or winter tires
209 Snow chains
209 SEAL tyres
210 Spare and emergency spare wheel
210 Changing the wheel and raising the vehicle
212 Breakdown kit
213 Tyre pressure
214 Tyre pressure monitor
214 Tyre pressure monitoring system
215 Wheel bolt cover caps
215 Full wheel frame

216 Storage space and interior equipment
216 Equipment in the boot
216 Emergency equipment
217 Storage compartment for the reflective vest
217 Fasteners in the boot
218 Bag hooks in the boot
218 Cargoelements in the luggage compartment
218 Fastening nets
219 Sliding hooks
219 Net partition
219 Double-sided floor covering
219 Floor covering in the boot
220 Roll-up luggage compartment cover
220 Variable loading floor in the boot
221 Partition in the boot
221 Through-loading bag
222 Overview of passenger compartment
223 Storage pockets on the inner sides of the front seats
223 Parking ticket holder
224 Bottle tray in the storage compartment of the front door
224 Bottle tray in the storage compartment of the rear door
224 USBConnections
225 Hook on the middle body pillar
225 Glasses compartment
225 Pen holder
226 Storage compartment for cards, coins and SD card
226 Storage compartment for cards in the storage area on the driver's side
226 Third row of seats - cup and phone holder
226 Storage compartment under the front seat
226 Storage compartment for an umbrella
227 Phonebox
227 Cup holder
228 Waste container
228 Ashtray and cigarette lighter
228 Folding table
229 Multifunction holder
229 Ceiling
229 Tablet holder
230 12-Volt power socket
230 230-Volt power socket
230 Storage compartment with air outlet nozzle

231 Roof rack and hitch
231 Roof rack
231 Swivelling hitch

233 Maintaining and cleaning
233 Service events
233 Service work, adjustments and technical changes
234 Interior
235 Exterior
237 Ice scraper on the fuel filler flap

237 Technical data and specifications
237 Requirements for the technical data
237 Vehicle identification data
238 Maximum permissible weights
238 Operating weight
239 Vehicle dimensions
239 Engine specifications
242 Accident data recorder
243 Personal data
243 Information about the radio systems in the vehicle
244 Rights arising from defective performance, ŠKODA warranties

246 Index

About the Owner's Manual

General points
This Owner's Manual applies to all **chassis variants** of the vehicle, including all **models** and **trim levels**.

All possible **trim levels** are described here without identifying them as special trims, model variants or market-dependent equipment. This means that **not all the trim components** described in this Owner's Manual are available in your vehicle.

The **images** in this Owner's Manual are for illustrative purposes only. The images may differ from your vehicle; these are for general information purposes only.

ŠKODA AUTO is constantly working on the further development of all vehicles. It is therefore possible for changes to be made at any time to the scope of delivery in terms of shape, equipment and technology. The information contained in this Owner's Manual corresponds to the information available at the time of going to press.

No legal claims can therefore be derived from the technical data, illustrations and information in this Owner's Manual.

Digital version of the Owner's Manual
Keeping environmental protection in mind, the printed Owner's Manual only contains the most important information regarding vehicle operation and vehicle maintenance.

The digital version of the Owner's Manual includes full information regarding vehicle operation.

The digital version is available at the following locations.

- On the ŠKODA internet pages.
- In the mobile application - MyŠKODA.
- In infotainment Bolero, Amundsen, Columbus.

http://go.skoda.eu/owners-manuals

Digital version of the Owner's Manual in Infotainment
Applies to Infotainment Bolero, Amundsen, Columbus.

The digital version of the Owner's Manual can be viewed in the Infotainment under the menu MENU > .

About the Owner's Manual

General
This Owner's Manual applies to all **chassis variants** of the vehicle, including all **models** and **trim levels**.

All possible **trim levels** are described here without identifying them as special trims, model variants or market-dependent equipment. This means that **not all the trim components** described in this Owner's Manual are available in your vehicle.

The **images** in this Owner's Manual are for illustrative purposes only. The images may differ from your vehicle; these are for general information purposes only.

ŠKODA AUTO is constantly working on the further development of all vehicles. It is therefore possible for changes to be made at any time to the scope of delivery in terms of shape, equipment and technology. The information contained in this Owner's Manual corresponds to the information available at the time of going to press.

No legal claims can therefore be derived from the technical data, illustrations and information in this Owner's Manual.

Explanations

Terms used

“Specialist garage” - A workshop that carries out specialist service tasks for ŠKODA vehicles. A specialist can be a ŠKODA Partner, a ŠKODA Service Partner, or an independent workshop.

“ŠKODA Service Partner” - A workshop that has been contractually authorised by ŠKODA AUTO or its distribution partner to perform service work on ŠKODA vehicles and to sell ŠKODA Genuine Parts.

“ŠKODA Partner” - A company that has been contractually authorised by ŠKODA AUTO or its distribution partner to sell new ŠKODA vehicles and, when applicable, to service them using ŠKODA Genuine Parts and sell ŠKODA Genuine Parts.

Text notes

“Press” - short press (e.g. a button) within 1 second

“Hold” - long press (e.g. a button) for more than 1 second

Direction indications

All direction indications, such as “left”, “right”, “front”, “rear”, relate to the forwards direction of travel of the vehicle.

⚠ DANGER

Texts with this symbol indicate dangerous situations which, if the safety instructions are not observed, will result in death or serious injury.

⚠ WARNING

Texts with this symbol indicate dangerous situations which, if the safety instructions are not observed, could result in death or serious injury.

⚠ CAUTION

Texts marked with this symbol indicate dangerous situations which, if the safety instructions are not observed, could result in minor or moderate injury.

ⓘ NOTICE

Texts with this symbol indicate situations which, if the corresponding instructions are not observed, will result in damage to the vehicle.

ⓘ Texts with this symbol contain additional information.

Digital Instructions in Vehicle Infotainment

Application Quick Start Guide

Interactive images

In pictures with the exterior and the interior of the vehicle, there are touch points. Tapping a touch point displays a menu with topics or a detailed image.

Symbols

Information about symbols that can be shown on the instrument cluster display. By tapping the symbol, a detailed description is displayed.

Topics

Instruction content, sorted by topic.



Top bar of the topic displayed

A Title of the topic

B Type of information displayed / display menu with information

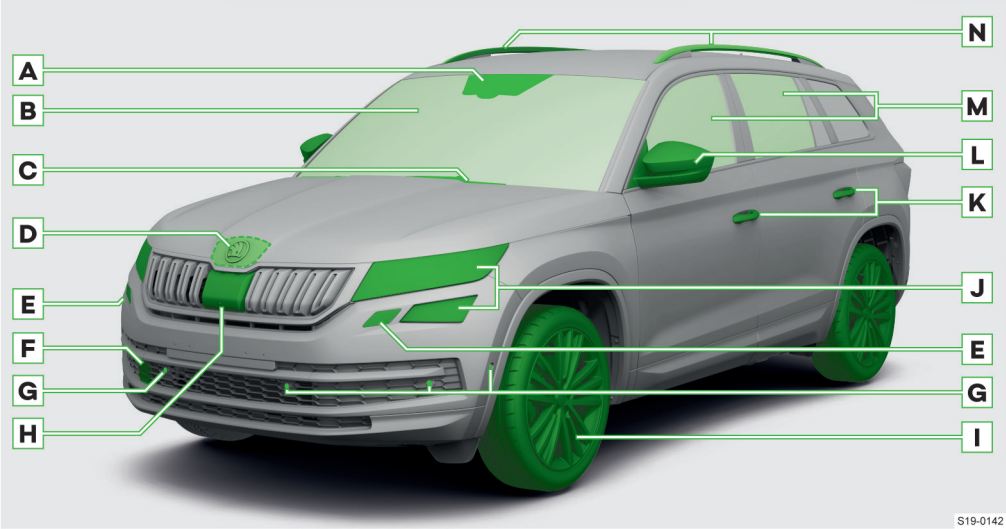
C Text search

About the instructions

Language selection for instructions and updates.

Vehicle overviews

Front vehicle area



A Under the windscreen:
- ▸ Camera for assist systems.
- ▸ Light sensor for automatic driving light circuit » page 49.
- ▸ Rain sensor for automatic wiping » page 56.

B Windscreen - Heating » page 63.

C Wiper - Operation » page 56.

D Bonnet release lever (under the flap) » page 195.

E Headlight cleaning system » page 56.

F Cover for the holder for the screw-in towing eye » page 174.

G Ultrasonic sensors for assist systems.

H Cover in the grille:
- ▸ Front radar sensor for assist systems.
- ▸ Camera for assist systems.

I Wheels:
- ▸ Tyres and rims » page 208.
- ▸ Changing the wheel and raising the vehicle » page 210.
- ▸ Breakdown set » page 212.
- ▸ Tyre pressure » page 213.
- ▸ Tyre control display » page 214.
- ▸ Tyre control display » page 214.

J Headlights:
- ▸ Operation » page 50.
- ▸ High-beam assistant Light Assist » page 52.
- ▸ Replacing the bulb » page 52.

K Door handles:
- ▸ Opening the door » page 29.

▸ Keyless entry (KESSY) » page 27.

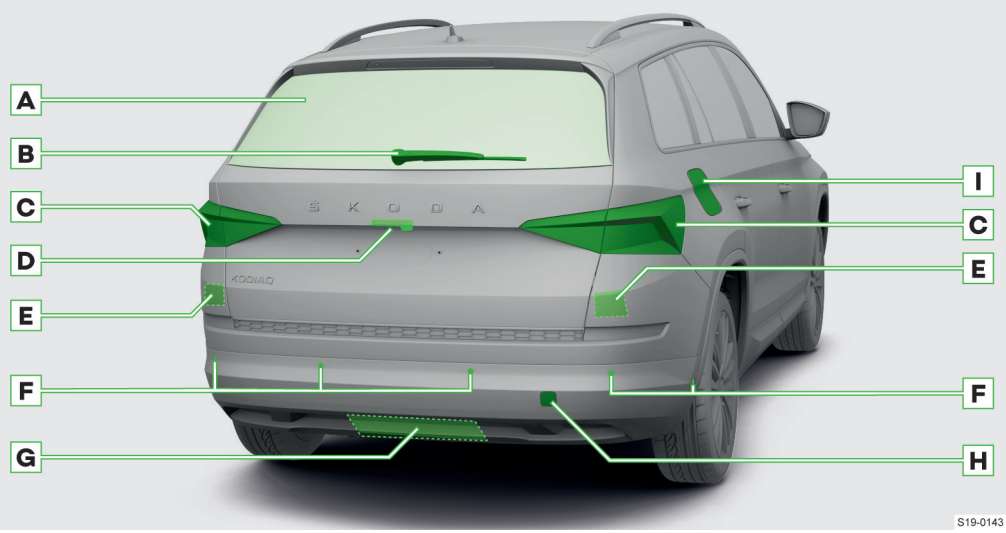
L Rearview mirror:
- ▸ Mirror adjustment » page 41.
- ▸ Cameras for assist systems.

M Side door windows - Operation » page 31.

N Roof rack » page 231.

› Keep the sensors and cameras for the assist systems clean » page 18.

Rear vehicle area



A Rear window - Heating » page 63.

B Rear window wiper and washer - Operation » page 56.

C Tail lights:
- ▸ Operation » page 50.
- ▸ Replacing the bulb » page 52.

D Luggage compartment lid handle:
- ▸ Flap with manual operation » page 33.
- ▸ Flap with electrical operation » page 34.
- ▸ Camera for assist systems.

E Radar sensors for assist systems (inside the bumper).

F Ultrasonic sensors for assist systems.

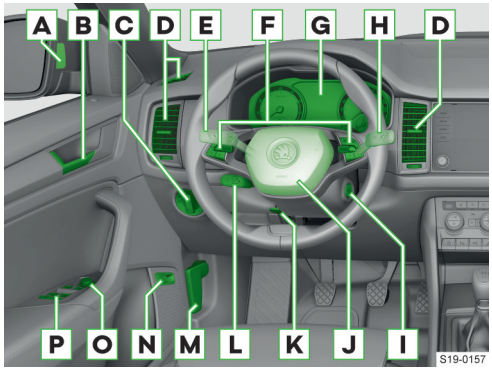
G Swivelling hitch » page 231.

H Cover for the holder for the screw-in towing eye » page 174.

I Fuel filler flap:
- ▸ Open » page 199.
- ▸ Label with tyre pressure values » page 213.
- ▸ Label with prescribed fuel.
- ▸ Ice scraper.
- ▸ Filler neck of the AdBlue® tank » page 199.

› Keep the sensors and cameras for the assist systems clean » page 18.

Driver's seat



A Indicator light of the lane change assistant Side Assist » page 184.

B Door opening lever » page 29.

C Light switch » page 50.

D Air outlet nozzle.

E Operating lever:
- ▸ Turn signal and main beam » page 50.
- ▸ Cruise control » page 180.
- ▸ Speed limiter » page 179.
- ▸ High beam assistant » page 52.

F Buttons/dials on the multifunction steering wheel » page 11.

G Depending on the equipment:
- ▸ Analogue instrument cluster » page 64.
- ▸ Digital instrument cluster » page 65.

H Operating lever:
- ▸ Windshield wipers and washers » page 56.

I Starter button » page 167.

J Steering wheel with horn/with driver's front airbag » page 47.

K Safety lever for steering wheel adjustment » page 40.

L Operating the automatic distance control » page 181.

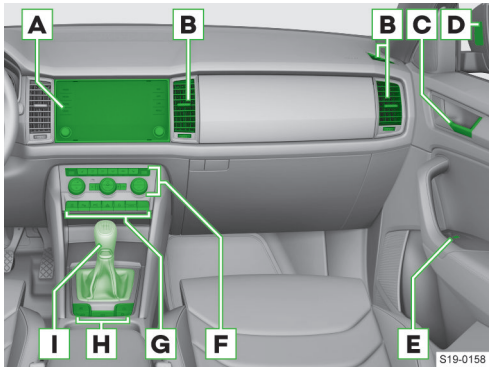
M Unlocking the engine compartment lid » page 195.

N Button for the electric luggage compartment lid » page 34.

O Operating the exterior mirror » page 41.

P Operating the windows » page 31.

Centre console and passenger seat



A Infotainment (depending on trim level):
- ▸ Columbus » page 131.
- ▸ Amundsen » page 106.
- ▸ Bolero » page 84.
- ▸ Swing » page 71.

B Air outlet nozzle.

C Door opening lever » page 29.

D Indicator light of the lane change assistant Side Assist » page 184.

E Window operation in the passenger door » page 31.

F Operation (depending on the trim level):
- ▸ Manual air conditioning » page 58.
- ▸ Climatronic » page 59.

G Buttons and indicator lights (depending on the specification).

Buttons:
- ▸ Ⓐ START-STOP » page 168.
- ▸ P Parking assistant » page 192.
- ▸ P Parking assist » page 188.
- ▸ ⚠ Hazard warning system » page 50.
- ▸ Central locking system » page 26.

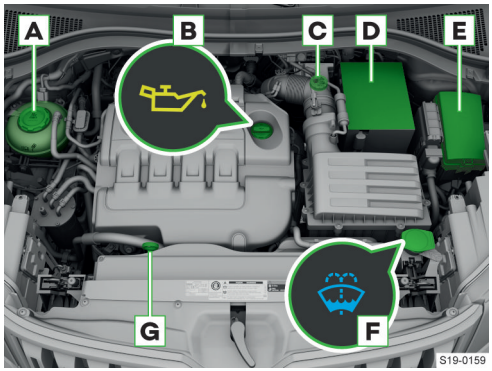
Indicator lights:
- ▸ Front passenger airbag ON / OFF » page 48.

H Buttons (depending on the specification).
- ▸ MODE Selection of travel mode » page 171.
- ▸ Ⓐ Auto Hold » page 176.
- ▸ Ⓟ Parking brake » page 175.
- ▸ OFF Stability control ESC / traction control ASR » page 177.
- ▸ Off-road mode » page 171.

I Depending on the equipment:
- ▸ Shift lever (manual transmission) » page 169.

▸ Selector lever (automatic transmission) » page 169.

Engine compartment



A Coolant expansion tank » page 197.

B Engine oil filler opening » page 195.

C Brake fluid reservoir » page 175.

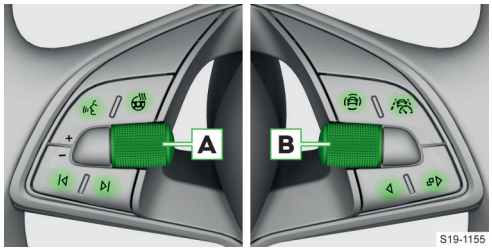
D Vehicle battery » page 202.

E Fuse box » page 207.

F Washer fluid reservoir » page 57.

G Engine oil dipstick » page 195.

Buttons/dials on the multifunction steering wheel



Switch voice control on / off.

Depending on the equipment:
- ▸ Steering wheel heating » page 64.
- ▸ No function.

A **Rotate** - Adjust Volume.
Press – Switch sound off/on.

Switch to the next track/station.

Switch to the previous track/station.

Show menu of assistance systems.

Depending on the equipment:
- ▸ Switch the Travel Assist assistance system on / off » page 184.
- ▸ No function.

B Depending on the equipment:
- ▸ Operate analogue instrument cluster » page 65.
- ▸ Operate digital instrument cluster » page 66.

Depending on the equipment:
- ▸ Operate analogue instrument cluster » page 65.
- ▸ Operate digital instrument cluster » page 66.

Depending on the equipment:
- ▸ Operate analogue instrument cluster » page 65.
- ▸ Operate digital instrument cluster » page 66.

Warning lights

Functionality

⚠ **WARNING**
Disregarding the lighting up of the warning lights and the associated messages on the display of the instrument cluster can lead to accidents, serious injuries or damage to the vehicle.

The warning lights in the instrument cluster indicate certain functions or faults.

The illumination of some of the indicator lights may be accompanied by acoustic signals and messages in the instrument cluster display.

Colour display of the indicator lights
Depending on the vehicle equipment, the colour scheme of the indicator lights may vary. The coolant indicator light can, e.g. be shown in colour as follows.

- colour display

- black and white display

Additional indicator lights
Depending on the meaning, the additional indicator light will also light up in the display along with some of the indicator lights.

⚠ - Hazard

⚠ - Warning

Warning lights overview

After switching on the ignition, some indicator lights light up briefly as a function test of the vehicle systems. If the tested systems are in order, the respective indicator lights go out a few seconds after the ignition is switched on or after the engine has been started.

For further details » page 12, *Functionality*.

Symbol	Meaning
	Indicates a warning together with another warning light » page 12.
	Unfastened seat belts at the front and rear » page 42.
	Vehicle battery is not charging » page 203.
	Along with - Engine fault » page 197, » page 203.
	Engine oil pressure too low » page 196.
	Engine oil level too low » page 196.
	Coolant level is too low » page 197.
	Coolant temperature too high » page 197.
	Brake fluid level is too low » page 175.
	Together with - Brake system and ABS faulty » page 178.
	Parking on a slope with too much inclination » page 176.
	Parking brake on » page 175.
	Illuminates - Power assisted steering faulty » page 40.
	Flashing - Steering lock faulty » page 40.
	Automatic gearbox impaired » page 170.
	Automatic gearbox overheated » page 170.
	AdBlue® level too low » page 199.
	AdBlue® system impaired » page 200.
	Warning if there is a risk of a collision » page 178.
	ACC does not decelerate sufficiently » page 181.
	Indicates a warning along with another warning light » page 12.
	The fuel supply has reached the reserve area. » page 201, » page 202.
	Windscreen washer fluid level too low » page 57.
	Bulb faulty » page 51.
	Rear fog light switched on » page 50.
	Engine oil level too high **or** engine oil level sensor impaired » page 196.
	Clogged particle filter » page 198.
	Parking brake error » page 176.
	ABS faulty » page 178.
	Worn brake pads » page 175.

Symbol	Meaning
	Automatic gearbox overheated » page 170.
	Automatic gearbox impaired » page 170.
	Water in the diesel fuel filter » page 198.
	AdBlue® system impaired » page 200.
	AdBlue® level too low » page 199.
	Tyre pressure control system faulty » page 214.
	Tyre pressure change » page 209, » page 214, » page 214, » page 215.
	**Illuminates** - Power assisted steering faulty » page 40.
	Flashing - Steering lock not unlocked » page 41.
	Flashing - Steering lock faulty » page 40.
	KESSY - starting problem » page 168.
	KESSY - no key found » page 28.
	Adaptive suspension faulty » page 172.
	Petrol engine control faulty » page 198.
	Emission control system faulty » page 198.
	**illuminates**, if relevant, does not illuminate after switching on the ignition - Diesel preheating system faulty » page 198.
	Flashing - Diesel engine control faulty » page 198.
	**Flashes** together with  - Key switch for airbag deactivation faulty » page 49.
	Front passenger airbag switched off » page 48.
	Front passenger airbag switched on » page 48.

Symbol	Meaning
	Airbag system faulty » page 48.
	Crew Protect Assist faulty » page 187.
	Illuminates for 4 seconds **and then flashes** - Airbag or belt tensioner deactivated with diagnostic device » page 48.
	Ball rod not locked » page 232.
	ESC Offroad is activated » page 171.
	ESC Sports enabled » page 177.
	ASR deactivated » page 177.
	**Illuminates** - ESC or ASR faulty » page 178.
	Flashing - ESC or ASR is engaged » page 177.
	Front Assist deactivated » page 178, » page 178.
	ACC not available » page 183.
	Lane Assist intervenes » page 183.
	Lane Assist intervenes » page 183.
	Turn signal light, left » page 50, » page 51.
	Rear seat belt fastened » page 43.
	Turn signal light, right » page 50, » page 51.
	Trailer turn signal light » page 51.
	Front fog lights switched on » page 50.
	The selector lever is locked » page 169.
	Vehicle is secured by Auto Hold » page 176.
	Lane Assist is activated and ready to intervene » page 183.
	Lane Assist is activated and ready to intervene » page 183.
	ACC controls the driving speed » page 181.

Symbol	Meaning
	The cruise control system controls the driving speed » page 180.
	Speed limiter controls the driving speed » page 179.
	Travel Assist activated » page 184.
	Low outside temperature » page 64.
	High beam or flasher activated » page 50.
	Unoccupied rear seat » page 43.
	Rear seat belt not fastened » page 43.
	A rear seat belt is not fastened » page 43.
	A rear seat belt is fastened » page 43.
	A rear seat belt is fastened » page 43.
	High beam Assist System switched on » page 52.
	No light is switched on » page 50.
	AdBlue® level too low » page 199.
	AdBlue® system impaired. » page 200.
	Adaptive suspension fault » page 172.
	Service event » page 233.
	Engine was switched off automatically by START-STOP » page 168.
	Engine was not automatically switched off via START-STOP » page 168.
	Speed limiter faulty » page 180.
	Speed limiter activated » page 179.
	ACC not available » page 183.
	ACC activated » page 181.
	ACC controls the driving speed according to the road » page 181.

Symbol	Meaning
	ACC controls the driving speed according to the permissible speed » page 181.
	Cruise control system faulty » page 180.
	Cruise control activated » page 180.
	The Hill Descent Assist System is activated » page 187.
	Hill Descent Assist System intervenes » page 187.
	Front Assist deactivated » page 178, » page 178.
	Front Assist is started » page 178.
	Safety distance too small » page 178.
	Consumption-friendly driving » page 172.
	Break recommendation » page 187.
	Driving mode Normal » page 171.
	Driving mode Eco » page 171.
	Comfort Driving Mode » page 171.
	Driving mode Individual » page 171.
	Offroad driving mode » page 171.
	Driving mode Sport » page 171.
	Snow Driving Mode » page 171.

Indicator lights overview

After switching on the ignition, some indicator lights light up briefly as a function test of the vehicle systems. If the tested systems are in order, the respective indicator lights go out a few seconds after the ignition is switched on or after the engine has been started.

Symbol	Meaning
	Indicates a warning together with another warning light » page 12.

Symbol	Meaning
	Unfastened seat belts at the front and rear » page 42.
	Vehicle battery is not charging » page 203.
	Along with - Engine fault » page 197, » page 203.
	Engine oil pressure too low » page 196.
	Engine oil level too low » page 196.
	Coolant level is too low » page 197.
	Coolant temperature too high » page 197.
	Brake fluid level is too low » page 175.
	Together with  - Brake system and ABS faulty » page 178.
	Parking on a slope with too much inclination » page 176.
	Parking brake on » page 175.
	Illuminates - Power assisted steering faulty » page 40.
	Flashing - Steering lock faulty » page 40.
	Automatic gearbox impaired » page 170.
	Automatic gearbox overheated » page 170.
	AdBlue® level too low » page 199.
	AdBlue® system impaired » page 200.
	Warning if there is a risk of a collision » page 178.
	ACC does not decelerate sufficiently » page 181.
	Indicates a warning along with another warning light » page 12.
	The fuel supply has reached the reserve area. » page 201, » page 202.
	Windscreen washer fluid level too low » page 57.
	Bulb faulty » page 51.
	Rear fog light switched on » page 50.

Symbol	Meaning
	Engine oil level too high **or** engine oil level sensor impaired » page 196.
	Clogged particle filter » page 198.
	Parking brake error » page 176.
	ABS faulty » page 178.
	Worn brake pads » page 175.
	Automatic gearbox overheated » page 170.
	Automatic gearbox impaired » page 170.
	Water in the diesel fuel filter » page 198.
	AdBlue® system impaired » page 200.
	AdBlue® level too low » page 199.
	Tyre pressure control system faulty » page 214.
	Tyre pressure change » page 209, » page 214, » page 214, » page 215.
	Illuminates - Power assisted steering faulty » page 40.
	Flashing - Steering lock not unlocked » page 41.
	Flashing - Steering lock faulty » page 40.
	KESSY - starting problem » page 168.
	KESSY - no key found » page 28.
	Adaptive suspension faulty » page 172.
EPC	Petrol engine control faulty » page 198.
	Emission control system faulty » page 198.
	**illuminates**, if relevant, does not illuminate after switching on the ignition - Diesel preheating system faulty » page 198.
	Flashing - Diesel engine control faulty » page 198.

Symbol	Meaning
	**Flashes** together with  - Key switch for airbag deactivation fault-ty » page 49.
	Front passenger airbag switched off » page 48.
	Front passenger airbag switched on » page 48.
	Airbag system faulty » page 48.
	Crew Protect Assist fault-ty » page 187.
	Illuminates for 4 seconds **and then flashes** - Airbag or belt tensioner de-activated with diagnostic de-vice » page 48.
	Ball rod not locked » page 232.
	ESC Offroad is activated » page 171.
	ESC Sports enabled » page 177.
	ASR deactivated » page 177.
	**Illuminates** - ESC or ASR fault-ty » page 178.
	Flashing - ESC or ASR is engag-ed » page 177.
	Front Assist deactiva-ted » page 178, » page 178.
	ACC not available » page 183.
	Lane Assist intervenes » page 183.
	Lane Assist intervenes » page 183.
	Turn signal light, left » page 50, » page 51.
	Rear seat belt fastened » page 43.
	Turn signal light, right » page 50, » page 51.
	Trailer turn signal light » page 51.
	Front fog lights switched on » page 50.
	The selector lever is locked » page 169.
	Vehicle is secured by Auto Hold » page 176.

Symbol	Meaning
	Lane Assist is activated and ready to intervene » page 183.
	Lane Assist is activated and ready to intervene » page 183.
	ACC controls the driving speed » page 181.
	The cruise control system controls the driving speed » page 180.
	Speed limiter controls the driving speed » page 179.
	Travel Assist activated » page 184.
	Low outside tempera-ture » page 64.
	High beam or flasher activa-ted » page 50.
	Unoccupied rear seat » page 43.
	Rear seat belt not fas-tened » page 43.
	A rear seat belt is not fas-tened » page 43.
	A rear seat belt is fas-tened » page 43.
	A rear seat belt is fas-tened » page 43.
	High beam Assist System switched on » page 52.
	No light is switched on » page 50.
	AdBlue®level too low » page 199.
	AdBlue®system impaired. » page 200.
	Adaptive suspension faul-ty » page 172.
	Service event » page 233.
	Engine was switched off automati-cally by START-STOP » page 168.
	Engine was not automatically switched off via START-STOP » page 168.
	Speed limiter faulty » page 180.
	Speed limiter activated » page 179.

Symbol	Meaning
	ACC not available » page 183.
	ACC activated » page 181.
	ACC controls the driving speed according to the road » page 181.
	ACC controls the driving speed according to the permissible speed » page 181.
	Cruise control system faulty » page 180.
	Cruise control activated » page 180.
	The Hill Descent Assist System is activated » page 187.
	Hill Descent Assist System intervenes » page 187.
	Front Assist deactivated » page 178, » page 178.
	Front Assist is started » page 178.
	Safety distance too small » page 178.
	Consumption-friendly driving » page 172.
	Break recommendation » page 187.
	Driving mode Normal » page 171.
	Driving mode Eco » page 171.
	Comfort Driving Mode » page 171.
	Driving mode Individual » page 171.
	Offroad driving mode » page 171.
	Driving mode Sport » page 171.
	Snow Driving Mode » page 171.

Correct and safe

Introductory information on correct use

- Read this Owner's Manual carefully, as proceeding in accordance with this manual is a prerequisite for the correct use of the vehicle. This Owner's Manual should therefore always be in the vehicle.
- When using the vehicle, the generally binding legal provisions that are specific to the country must be observed. Such as those for transporting children, switching off airbags, using tyres, road traffic and the like.
- Do not exceed the maximum permissible weights and loads.
- Do not exceed the maximum permissible roof load.
- Use the specified fuel and operating fluids.
- Drive on roads that correspond to the technical vehicle parameters. Obstacles that exceed the ground clearance of the vehicle can damage the vehicle when driving over them.
- Care must be taken during operations related to operation, maintenance and self-help to avoid damage to the vehicle or injury. If necessary, seek the help of a specialist company.
- All work on the vehicle's safety systems e.g. on the seatbelts or the airbag system, may only be carried out by a specialist garage.
- When using the accessories, observe the instructions in the operating instructions of the accessories manufacturer. These include child seats, roof racks, compressors etc.
- Observe the service intervals.

New vehicle or new parts

New vehicle - Running in the engine
Driving style during the first 1500 km determines the quality of the engine run-in process.

- During the first 1000 km, rev the engine to max. 3/4 of the highest permissible engine speed and avoid using a trailer.
- Over the next 500 km, the engine speed can be slowly increased.

Depending on driving style and operating conditions, the engine consumes some oil, up to 0.5 l/1000 km. Consumption may be higher over the next 5000 km.

New brake pads
New brake pads do not provide the optimum braking effect during the first 200 km, they have to be worn in first. Therefore, drive very carefully.

New tyres
New tyres do not have optimum grip for the first 500 km. Therefore, drive very carefully.

Regular checks

What should be taken into account before driving?
A vehicle with technical defects can increase the risk of accidents and injuries.

Eliminate any defects before driving. If required, seek the help of a specialised garage.

Pay special attention to the following points.

- Is the tyre undamaged?
- Is the tyre tread sufficient?
- Is the tyre pressure sufficient?
- Do the headlamps, brake and turn signals work?
- Is the windscreen in good condition?
- Is the engine oil, brake fluid and coolant level OK?
- Is the air intake in the engine compartment free from obstruction?
- Are the air outlet nozzles or air intake in front of the windscreen free from obstruction?
- Are the windscreen wiper and washer system and windscreen wiper blades functional?
- Is the windscreen washer fluid level sufficient?
- Are the windscreen wiper blades in good condition?
- Are all seatbelt system components in good working order? Are the seatbelts clean and have the buckles been unclogged?
- Is the spoiler working properly?
- Are parts and components of the vehicle still visibly attached?
- Are there no oil stains or other operating fluids under the vehicle?

No improper vehicle adjustments

Improper modifications can cause interference and affect safety-related functions and other functions of the vehicle.

- Adjustments and technical modifications to the vehicle should only be carried out by a specialist garage.
- Do not cover the engine with additional insulation materials, e.g. a blanket.

Keeping sensors and cameras in working order

Some functions of your vehicle are supported by sensors and cameras inside and outside the vehicle.

The rear-mounted accessories, e.g. bike rack, may affect system and camera functionality.

- Do not cover or put a sticker over the sensors and cameras and keep them clean.

- If there is damage suspected to the sensors or cameras, seek the help of a specialist garage.

Engine compartment

Before opening the engine compartment flap
Risk of scalding! Do not open the engine compartment flap if steam or coolant comes out of the engine compartment.

- Stop the engine and allow it to cool.
- Remove the ignition key. On vehicles with a keyless locking system, open the driver's door.

When working in the engine compartment
- Keep children away from the engine compartment.
- Do not touch the radiator fan. The radiator fan can turn itself on, even when the ignition is off.
- Do not touch electrical cables. Avoid short circuits in the electrical system, especially on the vehicle battery.
- Do not smoke near the vicinity of the engine and refrain from handling open flames or sparks.
- If you need to work in the engine compartment with the engine running, be mindful of rotating engine parts and electrical equipment.
- Do not leave any objects in the engine compartment.

Handling operating fluids
Your vehicle needs various fuels to operate that can affect health or the environment when they are emitted. These include fuel, oils, battery acid, coolant and brake fluid or AdBlue®.

- Only use operating fluids outdoors or in well-ventilated areas. If required, wear protective equipment.
- Do not use or check operating fluids with the engine running.
- In the event of contact with operating fluids, wash affected areas with warm water. If required, seek medical help.
- The leaked engine oil in the engine compartment can cause a fire, so wipe it off with a cloth.
- Store soiled cloths in a well-ventilated area until disposal. Cloths with residues of engine oil can ignite and cause a fire.

Vehicle battery

Handling the vehicle battery
Battery acid is highly corrosive. Improper handling of the vehicle battery can cause an explosion, fire, chemical burns or poisoning!

- When handling the vehicle battery, eye and skin protection must be worn.
- Do not tilt the vehicle battery, as it may leak battery acid.
- If battery acid comes into contact with skin, wash the affected areas with water for a few minutes. Get medical help without delay.
- Do not charge a frozen or thawed vehicle battery. Replace a frozen vehicle battery.
- Do not use a damaged vehicle battery.
- Short circuit! Do not connect the battery terminals.

Using electrical sockets in the vehicle

Improper handling of sockets can lead to life-threatening electric shock or fire.

- The sockets may get hot during operation. Do not touch hot sockets.
- Protect sockets from liquids.
- If moisture gets into the socket, let the socket dry before reusing it.
- Do not insert any objects into the socket contacts.

Before your journey

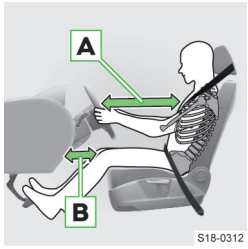
Adults and children, cargo and objects - everything has its place in the vehicle. Observe the following instructions so that all occupants are protected in the best possible way in the event of an accident.

Before you go
- Ensure that you have a good view of outside the vehicle. Attach external devices (e.g. navigation system) so that they do not restrict the view externally.
- Adjust the rearview mirrors.
- Close all doors and the engine compartment and boot flap.
- Take up the correct sitting position, adjust the seats correctly and fasten the seat belt properly. Ensure that passengers do likewise. Always leave the seat belt on while driving.
- Only one person can be secured with a seat belt.
- Make sure that the seat belts are not trapped, e.g. in the door or in the seat.
- Check seat belts, their locks and attachment points for damage.

Sitting safely
For the safety of the occupants and to reduce the risk of injury in the event of an accident, the following instructions must be observed.

- Stand the backrests upright. If the front passenger seat backrest has been folded forward, only the seat behind the driver's seat may be used for transporting passengers.
- Engage the rear seat backrests correctly.

- ▶ Adjust the height-adjustable headrest so that the top of the headrest is as close as possible to the top of the head.
- ▶ On the occupied rear seat, the headrest should not be in the lower position although the upper edge of the headrest should be at the same height as the top of the head.
- ▶ Keep your feet in the footwell.
- ▶ Use the entire seat.
- ▶ Do not lean forward or sit to the side.
- ▶ Do not hold your limbs out the window.



- › Adjust the driver's seat in the longitudinal direction so that the pedals can be fully pushed through with slightly bent legs.
- › Adjust the steering wheel in such a way that the distance A between the steering wheel and sternum is at least 25 cm.
- › For vehicles with driver's knee airbag, adjust the driver's seat longitudinally so that the distance B from the legs to the dash panel in the area of the knee airbag is at least 6 cm.
- › Adjust the angle of the backrest so that the steering wheel can be reached at the top with your arms slightly bent.
- › Move the passenger seat back as far as possible. The front passenger must maintain a minimum distance of 25 cm from the dash panel.

Correct belt webbing arrangement



The webbing arrangement is extremely important for the seat belts to offer the best possible protection.

- ▶ The shoulder strap must run over the middle of the shoulder, must never run over the neck, and must lie firmly against the body (it must not run over loose layers of clothing).
- ▶ The lap belt part must be placed in front of the pelvis and fit tightly.
- ▶ In pregnant women, the lap belt part must be as low as possible on the pelvis, so that no pressure is exercised on the abdomen.
- ▶ The webbing must not be pinched or twisted and rub against sharp edges.
- ▶ The webbing must not pass over solid or fragile objects in clothing, such as a key ring, etc.
- ▶ The tongue may only be inserted into the buckle of the associated seat.
- ▶ The webbing must be tight. Therefore, do not attach clamps or similar items to the webbing for adjusting the seat belt according to body size.

Correct steering wheel position



- ▶ Hold the steering wheel with both hands on the outer edge in the "9 o'clock" and "3 o'clock" position. Otherwise, you may experience serious injury to the arms, hands and head when deploying the airbag.

Be mindful of the effect of the airbag system

Airbag systems can only properly protect if all occupants have been secured and they are in the correct seating position.

No persons, animals or objects such as cup holders or hangers for clothes may be in the deployment area of the airbags » page 47.

- ▶ Do not cover or stick anything over the steering wheel or the dash panel. The front airbags were not able to deploy.

The front passenger airbag should be switched off in some situations » page 48.

Securing children properly

- ▶ Do not carry a child on your lap, and secure the child and yourself with a seat belt.
- ▶ Only transport children in a suitable child seat » page 44.

Children under 150 cm tall will not be properly protected without a child seat. Children that have been inadequately secured can be thrown through the vehicle in the event of an accident or a sudden manoeuvre. You can cause life-threatening injuries to yourself and other occupants.

If children lean forward or assume a wrong sitting position while driving, they are more likely to be injured in the event of an accident. This is especially true for children who are carried in the passenger seat - when the airbag system triggers, they can be seriously injured or killed!

A child that has been incorrectly secured in the wrong sitting position - endangered by the side airbag



The child should not be in the deployment area of the side airbag.

A child that has been properly secured in a child seat



There must be enough room between the child and the exit area of the side airbag for the side airbag to offer the best possible protection.

Transporting objects safely
When moving heavy objects, there is a shift in emphasis. Thus, the driving behaviour of the vehicle changes.

- ▶ Adjust driving speed and driving style to this changed driving behaviour.

Unsecured or misplaced items may be thrown around in the event of an accident or sudden manoeuvre. There is a risk of serious injury and loss of control of the vehicle!

In a rear-end collision at 50 km/h unsecured objects are thrown forward with up to 50 times their weight. A 1.5 litre water bottle is thrown with up to 75 kg.

- ▶ Transport objects securely.
- ▶ Stow objects so they do not hinder the driver. Keep the driver footwell clear.
- ▶ Stow small items in the storage compartments.
- ▶ Do not leave lockable storage compartments open.
- ▶ Do not let items protrude out of the slots. This note does not apply to bottles in bottle trays.
- ▶ Do not place any objects on the dash panel or on the luggage compartment cover.
- ▶ Do not exceed the maximum permissible load of fasteners and shelves.
- ▶ Distribute the load evenly in the luggage compartment and fasten it so it cannot slip.
- ▶ Place heavy objects in the luggage compartment as far forward as possible.

Safe driving

Introductory notes
- ▶ Pay attention when you are driving! As a driver, you are fully responsible for road safety.
- ▶ Always adjust driving speed to the road conditions as well as the traffic and weather conditions.

Paying attention to warning signals
The driver information system warns you with indicator lights and messages in the event of any faults.

Failure to follow the warnings may increase the risk of accidents and injuries.

- ▶ If the vehicle issues a warning signal, then park the vehicle safely and follow the information in the instrument cluster, and in this Owner's Manual.

Using assistance systems in a clever way
The assistance systems are only for support and do not absolve you from your responsibility for driving the vehicle.

The assistance systems are subject to physical and technical limitations. Therefore, in certain situations, system reactions may be perceived as undesirable or delayed.

- ▶ Stay alert and be ready to intervene.
- ▶ Familiarise yourself with the assistance systems, their limitations and operating conditions.
- ▶ Activate, deactivate and adjust the assistance systems so that you have full control of the vehicle in any traffic situation.

Driving with a substitute spare wheel or emergency wheel
A substitute spare wheel or emergency wheel is only used to reach the nearest specialist garage.

- ▶ Inflate the wheel with the max. prescribed inflation pressure.
- ▶ Follow the instructions on the warning label on the rim.
- ▶ Do not cover the warning sign.
- ▶ Avoid full accelerations, strong braking and fast cornering.
- ▶ Do not drive with more than one mounted spare wheel.
- ▶ Avoid using snow chains on the temporary spare wheel.

Driving with a loaded roof rack
When transporting objects on the roof rack, the vehicle's driving behaviour changes.

- ▶ Adapt your speed and driving style to this.

Towing a trailer
The vehicle's handling characteristics change with a trailer. The assistance systems may behave differently.

- ▶ Drive more slowly, excessive speed can lead to loss of control of the vehicle.
- ▶ Keep a larger distance from the vehicle in front.
- ▶ Do not exceed the max. vertical load and the permissible trailer load.

Driving through water
There must be no water ingress into the vehicle systems e.g. into the engine's air intake system!

- ▶ Therefore, determine the water depth before driving through water. The water level must not exceed the lower edge of the lower beam.
- ▶ Drive at max. walking speed. Otherwise, a wave may form in front of the vehicle, increasing the water level.
- ▶ Never stop in the water, do not drive backwards and never stop the engine.

Vehicle operation in different weather conditions
If you wish to run your vehicle in countries with different weather conditions from those specified, please contact a ŠKODA partner. They will advise you if certain precautions need to be taken to ensure the full functioning of the vehicle or to prevent damage (e.g. coolant, battery replacement, etc.).

Is something wrong?
- ▶ Pay attention to changes in vehicle handling.
- ▶ If in doubt about safety, stop driving and seek the help of a specialist garage.
- ▶ Unusual vibrations or the vehicle 'pulling' to the side may indicate a puncture.
- ▶ If tyre pressure loss is very quick, try to stop the vehicle carefully without heavy steering or heavy braking.
- ▶ Immediately remove foreign bodies stuck in the tyre tread.
- ▶ Do not remove foreign objects that have penetrated into the tyre. Check the tyre pressure and seek the help of a specialised garage.
- ▶ Immediately remove any objects jammed under the floor of the vehicle. These can damage the vehicle or ignite and cause a fire.

Parking the vehicle safely
A vehicle that has not been secured may roll away and cause accidents.

- ▶ For parking, look for a place with suitable ground. Do not park the vehicle on flammable materials such as dried leaves, spilt fuel. Hot vehicle parts can cause a fire.

Carry out the following activities in the specified order when parking.

- › Stop the vehicle and keep the brake pedal depressed.
- › Secure the vehicle with the parking brake.
- › For vehicles with an automatic gearbox, put the selector lever in the **P** position.
- › Turn off the engine.
- › For vehicles with manual transmission, engage 1st gear or reverse gear.
- › Release the brake pedal.

Exiting the vehicle
Do not leave children unattended in the vehicle!

- ▶ Children may injure themselves when handling the seats, releasing the parking brake etc.
- ▶ In emergency situations, children are not able to leave the vehicle on their own or help themselves.
- ▶ At very high or very low temperatures, there is danger to life!
- ▶ When locking the vehicle, the SAFE function switches on. As a result, no doors or windows can be opened from the inside. Turn off the SAFE function if people are left behind in the locked vehicle » page 26.

Emergency call

⚠ **WARNING**
Availability of a mobile network is indispensable for establishing a connection to the emergency number.

⚠ **WARNING**
This emergency service is only available in some countries.

⚠ **WARNING**
If the vehicle is located in an area without a functioning emergency call system infrastructure, no vehicle data shall be transmitted to the emergency call centre.

After the start of the conversation, the emergency call centre also contains information as to the accident location and the severity of the accident, the number of occupants with seatbelts on and the vehicle identification number (VIN).

Once the connection has been established, communication with the emergency call centre takes place via the loudspeaker and microphone installed in the vehicle.

Personal data
Personal customer data is collected, processed and used by ŠKODA AUTO in accordance with the provisions of the generally binding legal provisions in the area of personal data protection.

The current declaration on the protection of personal data can be found on the following website:

https://www.skoda-auto.com/other/personal-data

Serious accident - automatic call
In the event of an accident where the airbag or belt tensioner activates, a call is automatically started with the emergency call centre.

The automatic call to the emergency call centre is also started after the Emergency Assist- the assistant system for emergency situations has intervened.

Minor accident - call option
The Infotainment screen displays the option to set up a connection to the emergency call centre or breakdown service.

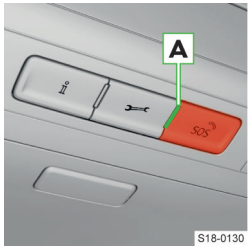
Manual call



- › Keep the SOS button pressed down.
- › Confirm the connection to the emergency call centre in the Infotainment screen.
- › To cancel the connection to the emergency call centre before starting the call, press the SOS button again or confirm the cancellation of the connection in the Infotainment screen.

Starting a manual conversation can then be used, for example, if you also report an accident in which you are not directly involved.

Indicator light



The system status is displayed after the ignition is switched on, by the illumination of indicator lamp A .

- ▸ Green - lit up - the system is functional.
- ▸ Green - flashing - a call is being made to the emergency call centre.
- ▸ Red - lit up - there is a system failure, immediately seek the help of a specialist garage.
- ▸ Not lit up - the system is out of order due to a long term unavailable mobile network, if this circumstance persists, the system will require the assistance of a specialist garage.

⚠ **WARNING**
If there is a system fault, no emergency call is possible.

After an accident

What to do after an accident
Where possible, please observe the following instructions.

- › Switch off the ignition.
- › Turn on the hazard warning lights.
- › Set up the warning triangle to warn other road users.
- › Stay at a safe distance from the vehicle, along with any passengers.
- › Report the accident to the emergency services.
- › Wait for the emergency services to arrive.

Safety systems
After an accident, the safety systems of the vehicle, e.g. seatbelts and airbag system, may be out of action.

- ▸ Have the vehicle's safety systems checked by a specialist garage, even if no load or trip has occurred.
- ▸ Have damaged, loaded or triggered components of the safety systems replaced by a specialist garage.

What to do in the event of a fire
Where possible, please observe the following instructions.

- › Switch off the ignition.
- › Turn on the hazard warning lights.
- › Set up the warning triangle to warn other road users.
- › Stay at a safe distance from the vehicle, along with any passengers.
- › Report the fire to the emergency services.
- › Wait for the emergency services to arrive.

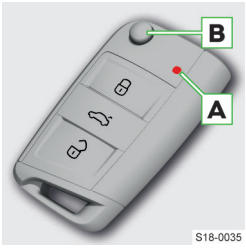
Keys, locks and alarm system

Key

Key overview

The vehicle has one of the following keys.

Key with fold-out key bit

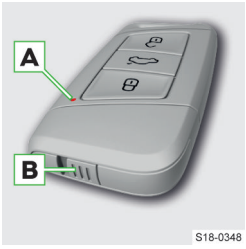


- Lock the vehicle
- Operate the luggage compartment lid
- Unlock vehicle

A Battery status indicator light

B Safety button for opening and closing the key bit

Key with removable key bit



- Lock the vehicle
- Operate the luggage compartment lid
- Unlock vehicle

A Battery status indicator light

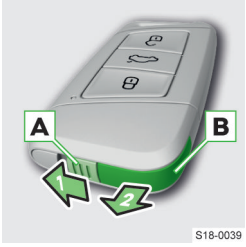
B Locking tab for removing the key bit

NOTICE

- Protect the key from moisture and strong vibrations.
- Keep the grooves in the key bit clean.

The effective range of the key signal is approximately 30 m. The effective area can be reduced, e.g. due to signal interference from other transmitters.

Take out the key bit



› Unlock the securing tab **A**.

› Remove the key bit **B**.



Troubleshooting

The battery in the key is almost empty

- After pressing a button on the key, the warning light does not flash.

Or:

- A message stating it is necessary to change the battery will be displayed.

› Replace the battery » page 24.

The vehicle cannot be unlocked or locked with the remote control

There may be the following reasons.

- The battery in the key is empty.

› Replace the battery » page 24.

- The key is not synchronized.

Synchronize the key as follows.

› Press one of the buttons on the key.

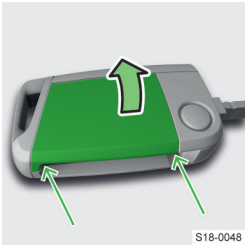
› Unlock the door within 1 minute with the key via the locking cylinder » page 27.

If necessary, the key must be synchronized if one of the buttons on the key has been repeatedly pressed outside of the effective range of the remote control.

Changing the key battery

The new battery must meet the specifications of the original battery.

Key with fold-out key bit



› Fold out the key bit.

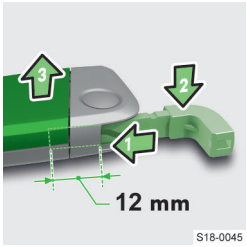
› Loosen the battery cover with your thumb or with a flat-blade screwdriver at the marked positions.

› Open the battery cover.



› Take out the battery.
› Press any key on the radio key, and the key resets.
› Insert the new battery.
› Fit the battery cover and press until it clicks into place.

Key with removable key bit



› Remove the key bit and partially insert it into the opening.
› Press the key bit to unlock the top cover.



› Slide on the battery cover.



› Use a thin screwdriver in the recess A insert and remove the battery.
› Press any key on the radio key, and the key resets.
› Insert the new battery.
› Fit the battery cover and press until it clicks into place.

Memory function of the key

Functionality

Applies to vehicles that do not have the personalisation function.

Each time the vehicle is locked, the position of the driver's seat and rearview mirror are stored in the memory of the remote key being used to lock the vehicle.

Operation

Retrieve saved position

› Unlock the vehicle and open the driver's door.

The driver's seat and the exterior mirrors occupy the position assigned in the memory to the key used to unlock the vehicle.

Stop position change

› Press any button on the seat to be adjusted.

Or:

› Press the button on the key.

Settings

Activate and deactivate the memory function of the key

The function is activated or deactivated in the following menu in the Infotainment system.

CAR > >

Or:

MENU > > >

Storing driver's seat and exterior mirror position for driving forwards

The data is saved automatically each time the vehicle is locked.

The seat position can be stored if the angle of inclination of the seat back relative to the seat surface is less than approximately 110° and the seat is not in any of the end positions.

Storing front passenger´s exterior mirror position for reversing

› Unlock the vehicle with the key.
› Turn on the ignition.
› Activate the folding function of the mirror in the Infotainment in the following menu.

CAR > >

Or:

MENU > > >

› Put the knob for the exterior mirrors in position R .
› Engage reverse gear.
› Adjust the mirror to the desired position.
› Disengage reverse gear.

The set mirror position is saved.

Central locking

Functionality

Central locking system
The system unlocks and locks all doors, the fuel filler flap and the luggage compartment flap at the same time.

Unlock indicator: the flashing lights flash twice.

Lock indicator: the flashing lights flash once.

The warning light in the driver's door will flash for about 2 seconds in quick succession after the vehicle is locked, then it will start flashing regularly at longer intervals.

If none of the doors or the boot lid is opened within 45 seconds of unlocking, the vehicle automatically locks again.

SAFE-Function
Depending on the equipment, the SAFEFunction can be incorporated into the central locking system.

The SAFEFunction prevents the doors from opening from the inside after locking the vehicle.

The SAFEFunction turns on when the vehicle is locked from the outside.

After the ignition is switched off, a message regarding the SAFEFunction is displayed on the instrument cluster display.

⚠ **DANGER**
Risk of death!
▶ When the vehicle is locked and SAFEFunction is switched on, no people may remain in the vehicle.

SAFE-Turn off the function
▶ By double locking within 2 seconds.

Or:

▶ Together with the deactivation of the interior surveillance » page 28, *Settings*.

The warning light in the driver's door will flash for about 2 seconds in quick succession after the vehicle is locked, then goes out and starts flashing regularly at longer intervals after about 30 secs.

If the SAFEFunction is switched off, the door can be opened from the inside by pulling the opening lever once.

The SAFEFunction is switched on again after unlocking and locking the vehicle.

Operation

Means for operating the central locking
Depending on the equipment:
▶ Key » page 24.
▶ Keyless Entry (KESSY) » page 27.
▶ Central locking button.

Lock / unlock with the central locking button
› Press the button in the centre console.

The symbol in the button lights up when locking.

The button locks all doors and the boot lid.

Unlocking of the vehicle also takes place when opening a door from the inside or when removing the key from the ignition.

⚠ **WARNING**
A locked vehicle with a central locking button makes it difficult for responders to enter the vehicle in an emergency.

Setting the unlocking and locking function

The lock and unlock functions are set in the following menu in the Infotainment system.

CAR > >

Or:

MENU > > >

All doors
Unlocking all doors, the luggage compartment lid and the fuel filler flap.

Single door
The driver's door and the fuel filler flap are unlocked with the button on the key.

In vehicles equipped with a keyless locking system, the door near to which the key is located and the fuel filler flap are unlocked by touching the door handle.

When unlocked again, the other doors and the boot lid are also unlocked.

Doors on one side of the vehicle
The doors on the driver's side and the fuel filler flap are unlocked with the button on the key.

In vehicles equipped with a keyless locking system, the doors on the passenger's side near to which the key is located and the fuel filler flap are unlocked by touching the door handle.

When unlocked again, the other doors and the boot lid are also unlocked.

Automatic locking after starting
After starting, all doors and the boot lid are locked when a speed of 15 km/h is reached.

The vehicle is unlocked when a door is opened from the inside.

⚠ **WARNING**
An automatically locked vehicle makes it difficult for responders to enter the vehicle in an emergency.

Troubleshooting

Central locking fault

▶ The warning light in the driver's door first flashes for 2 secs in quick succession.
▶ Then it lights up continuously.
▶ After 30 secs, it flashes slowly.

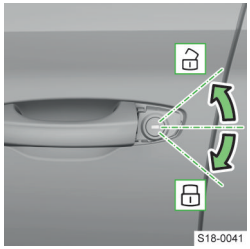
› Seek the help of a specialist garage.

Unlock and lock the door mechanically

Unlocking and locking the door with the lock cylinder



Remove cover
› Pull on the door handle of the vehicle and hold it.
› Insert the key bit into the recess on the underside of the cover.
› Open the cover in the direction of the arrow.
› Let go of the door handle.



Unlock and lock with key with fold-out key bit
› Left hand drive: Insert the key, with the buttons facing **upward** , into the locking cylinder and unlock or lock.
› Right hand drive: Insert the key, with the buttons facing **downward** , into the locking cylinder and unlock or lock.

Unlock and lock with key with removable key bit
› Insert the removed key bit, with the handle **downward** , into the locking cylinder and unlock or lock.

Install cover
› Pull and hold the door handle.
› Replace the cover.
› Let go of the door handle.

Lock the door without the locking cylinder



› Open the door.
› For vehicles with a panel over the opening, remove the panel.
› Insert the key or a flat-head screwdriver into the slot.
› Turn the key or flat-head screwdriver towards the outside of the vehicle (spring-loaded position).

After closing, the door is locked.

Keyless locking (KESSY)

Usage

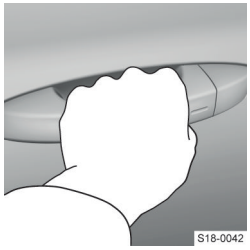
The keyless locking system, KESSY, enables unlocking and locking of the vehicle without actively using the remote control key.

Operation

Keep the key with you when unlocking and locking.

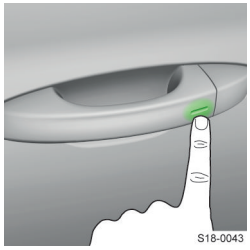
The sensors on the handle are intended to be operated with bare hands, e.g. wearing gloves may affect the function of the sensors.

Unlock



› Grip the door handle.
› Open the door.

Lock



› Touch the sensor.

After locking, it is not possible to unlock within 2 seconds by touching the door handle. This can be used to check whether the vehicle is locked.

Unlock the boot lid

› Push the handle of the boot lid.

Protection against inadvertently locking the key in the vehicle

When the key is locked in the vehicle, the vehicle is automatically unlocked. If no door is opened within 45 seconds, the vehicle automatically locks again.

When the key is locked in the luggage compartment, the luggage compartment lid is automatically unlocked.

Settings

Deactivate keyless locking

› Lock the vehicle with the button on the key.
› Within 5 s, touch the sensor on the door handle with your finger.

Deactivation is confirmed by a single flash of the direction indicators.

› To check the deactivation, wait at least 10 seconds and then pull the door handle.

The door must remain locked.

Keyless locking is automatically activated once again after the vehicle is unlocked.

Troubleshooting

The vehicle cannot be unlocked or locked using the sensors on the handle

› Lock or unlock the vehicle with the button on the key.
› Then try to unlock or lock the vehicle using the sensors on the handle.
› If keyless locking does not work, get the help of a specialist garage.

If the vehicle is not unlocked for a longer period of time, the function can be deactivated automatically.

No key was found when the ignition was switched on

illuminates
A message that no key was found in the vehicle.

› Insert the key into the vehicle.

Alarm system

Functionality

The alarm system triggers acoustic and optical signals in the event of a break-in or towing attempt.

The alarm system is activated automatically approximately 30 seconds after the vehicle is locked.

The alarm system is automatically deactivated after the vehicle is unlocked.

Alarm trigger

The activated alarm system triggers an alarm when one of the following events occurs.

▸ Open the engine compartment lid.
▸ Open the boot lid.
▸ Opening the door.
▸ Manipulation of the ignition lock.
▸ Towing the vehicle.
▸ Movement in the vehicle.
▸ Sudden and significant voltage drop in the electrical system.
▸ Unhitch the trailer.
▸ Opening the door unlocked via the lock cylinder.

Switch off the triggered alarm

› Unlock the vehicle.

Or:

› Turn on the ignition.

Functional conditions

All windows must be closed for the alarm system to function correctly.

A trailer is integrated into the alarm system under the following conditions.

✓ The vehicle is factory-fitted with a towing device.
✓ The trailer is electrically connected to the vehicle via the trailer socket.
✓ The trailer is not equipped with LED tail lights.

If the electrical connection to the trailer is interrupted in a vehicle with an activated alarm system, warning signals are triggered.

Disable the alarm before connecting or disconnecting a trailer.

Settings

The following functions of the alarm system can be deactivated at the same time.

▸ Interior surveillance.
▸ Towing protection.

By deactivating the SAFEFunction will also be switched off » page 26, *Functionality*.

Deactivation

▸ By double locking within 2 seconds.

Or:

▸ In Infotainment, in the menu: CAR > > > Menu item for interior monitoring.

Or:

▸ In Infotainment, in the menu: MENU > > > > Menu item for interior monitoring.

The deactivated functions are reactivated after unlocking and locking the vehicle.

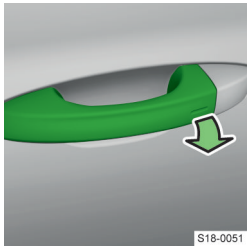
Deactivation is to be carried out if the vehicle is, for example, towed or transported.

Doors, windows and boot lid

Doors

Open / close door

Open from the outside



› Unlock the vehicle and pull on the door handle.

Open from the inside



› Pull the door opening lever and push the door away from you.

Close from the inside

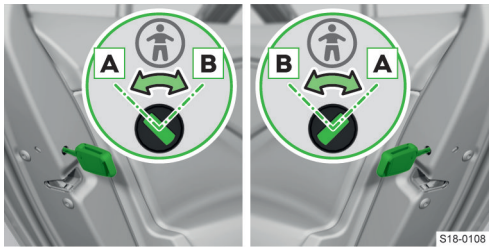
› Grasp the pull handle and close the door.

Child safety lock on the rear doors

Operation

The child lock prevents the rear doors from being opened from the inside.

Switching on and off



› Turn the child lock with the vehicle key or a flat-head screwdriver.

Child lock A switched off

Child lock B switched on

Electrically operated child lock



› Press the **left** button to switch on/off the child lock in the **left** rear door.

› Press the **right** button to switch on/off the child lock in the **right** rear door.

The fact that the child lock is switched on can be seen by the illuminated displayed in the button.

After switching on the child lock the electric window is also blocked in the respective door.

Protective door strip

What you should be mindful of

NOTICE

Risk of damage to the strip, the door and the body!

- Do not open the door too hastily or abruptly.
- Do not hold the door on the strip when opening and closing, as the strip must be able to move in and out freely.
- If the strip prevents the door from closing freely, do not close the door forcefully! Remove the strip, and seek the help of a specialist garage.

Usage

Depending on the equipment, the doors can each be provided with a protective strip. This moves out when opening the door and protects the central area of the door edge from damage.

When the door closes the protective strip retracts.

Self help

Replace damaged strip

CAUTION

Risk of injury!

- Be careful when handling the strip.



› Remove the strip from the door.

NOTICE

- If any part of the strip remains in the door, seek the help of a specialist garage.



› Insert a new strip in the grooves.

› Press in the bar.

A new strip can be purchased from the ŠKODA original parts.

Window - with electrical operation

What you should be mindful of

Force limitation

To reduce the risk of pinch injuries when closing the windows, the vehicle has a force limiter.

If there is an obstacle, the window closing process is stopped and the pane retracts by several centimetres.

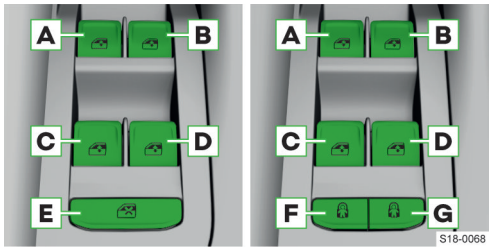
If the obstacle prevents it from being closed for the next 10 seconds, the closing process is interrupted once again and the window goes down by several centimetres.

If you attempt to close the window again within 10 seconds of the window being moved down for the second time, even though the obstacle was not yet been removed, the closing process is only stopped. During this time, it is not possible to automatically close the windows by pulling the button all the way. The force limiter is, however, switched on.

The force limiter is only not operational if you attempt to close the window again within the next 10 seconds – the window will now close with full force! If you wait longer than 10 seconds, the force limiter is switched on again.

⚠ **CAUTION**
Risk of injury!
▸ Close the windows carefully, even though they have a force limit.

Overview of the operating buttons on the driver's door



Depending on the equipment:

A Front left window
B Front right window
C Rear left window
D Right rear window
E Deactivation / activation of the buttons in the rear doors
F Deactivation / activation of the button in the left rear door (part of the child lock with electrical control)
G Deactivation / activation of the button in the right rear door (part of the child lock with electrical control)

Operation

Open
› Press the corresponding button slightly downwards and hold it until the window has reached the desired position.

Or:

› Press the corresponding button until it stops; the window opens automatically. Press the button again to stop the opening process.

Close
› To close, pull gently upwards on the top edge of the corresponding button and hold until the window has reached the desired position.

Or:

› Pull the corresponding button until it stops; the window closes automatically. The closing process is stopped by pulling the button again.

After switching off the ignition, the windows can still open and close for about 10 minutes so long as none of the doors are opened.

Open all windows at the same time
› Hold down the button on the key.

Or:

› Turn off the ignition, open the driver's door, and hold down the driver's window button until it stops.

Depending on the setting, only the driver's window can be opened in this way.

Close all windows at the same time
› Press the button on the key.

Or:

› Turn off the ignition, open the driver's door, and pull upwards on the driver's window button until it stops.

Or:

› For vehicles with a keyless locking system, hold one finger on the sensor on the outside of the handle on the front door.

Depending on the setting, only the driver's window can be closed in this way.

Settings

The window operation is set in the following menu in the Infotainment system.

CAR > > > Menu item for window operation

Or:

MENU > > > > Menu item for window operation

Troubleshooting

The window regulator has stopped working after repeated opening and closing
The window regulator mechanism could have overheated.

› Let the window regulator mechanism cool down.

The automatic window operation does not work after disconnecting the vehicle battery
› Activate the automatic window control » page 31.

Activation after disconnecting the vehicle battery

Activate automatic window operation
› Turn on the ignition.
› Pull the corresponding button upwards and the window closes.

› Release the button.
› Pull up the respective button and hold for 1 second.

Sliding/tilting roof

What you should be mindful of

Force limiter
To reduce the risk of pinch injuries when closing the tilt/slide sunroof, the vehicle has a force limiter.

If there is an obstacle, the glass panel closing process is stopped and the pane retracts by several centimetres.

If the obstacle is not removed, the force limiter will be disabled during the third closing attempt. The sliding/tilting roof will then close with full force.

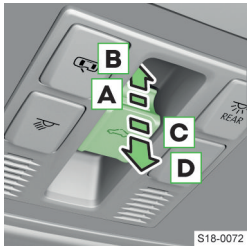
⚠ **CAUTION**
Risk of injury!
▸ Close the sliding/tilting roof carefully, even though there is a force limiter.

ⓘ **NOTICE**
▸ During winter time, if necessary, remove any ice and snow around the area of the sliding/tilting roof before opening.
▸ Always close the sliding/tilting roof before disconnecting the battery.

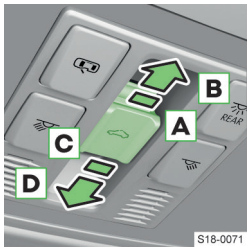
Operating conditions

✓ Ignition is switched on.
✓ The outside temperature is higher than -20 °C (applicable for the opening of the sliding/tilting roof).

Operation



A Tilt step-by-step
B Tilt in full
C Reset gradually
D Reset completely



A Open step-by-step
B Open fully
C Close gradually
D Close completely

ⓘ After moving the switch to position B, the sliding / tilting roof opens into the low-noise position (at a speed of approximately 80 km / h).
After another shift to position B, the sliding / tilting roof opens completely.

ⓘ After switching off the ignition, the sliding / tilting roof can be operated for about 10 minutes as long as none of the doors are opened.

Easy operation of the sliding / tilting roof
The comfort operation makes it possible to lock the sliding/tilting roof with the key if necessary.

› To **tilt,** hold the button down.
› To **close,** hold the button down.

On vehicles with a keyless locking system, it is possible to close the sliding / tilting roof using the sensor in the door handle of the front door .

› Hold one finger on the sensor on the outside of the handle on the front door.

Troubleshooting

Operation of the sliding/tilting sunroof does not work after disconnecting the vehicle battery
› Activate the operation of the sliding/tilting roof » page 32.

Activation after disconnecting the vehicle battery

Activation of the operation of the sliding/tilting roof



› Turn on the ignition.
› Pull the switch all the way down and hold it down.

After about 10 secs, the sliding/tilting roof opens and closes again.

› Release the switch.

Sunblind - with electrical operation

Operation



Open
Close

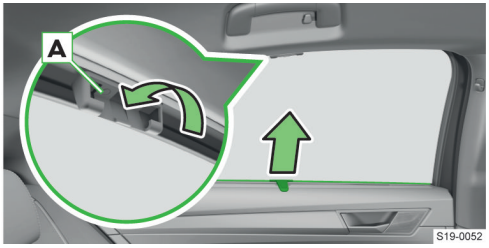
› Press or hold the button to move the blind .
› Press or release the button to stop the blind from moving .

Activation after disconnecting the vehicle battery

› Turn on the ignition.
› Keep the button pressed down. The sunblind opens and closes again.
› Release the button.

Sun protection roller blinds for the rear door panes

service



Stopping down

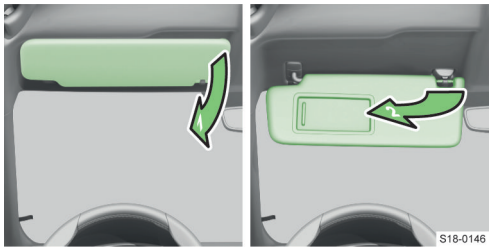
› Pull out the sun blind from the handle and hang it in holder A.

Curl up

› Remove the sun protection blind from the holder at the handle and let it roll in slowly.

Sun visors

Fold up and fold down



1 Swivel the panel towards the windscreen
2 Swivel the visor towards the door

⚠ **CAUTION**
Objects attached to the sun visors can restrict vision outside.
In the event of sudden braking or an impact, these can also cause injuries.
▸ Do not attach anything to the sun visor.

Boot lid - with manual operation

Operation

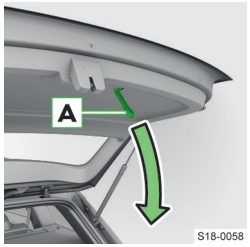
Open



› Push the handle and lift the flap.

The option to open by pressing the handle is deactivated once a speed of 5 km/h is reached. This is activated again after the vehicle has stopped and a door is opened.

Close



› Grasp the bracket A and pull the flap down.

⚠ **CAUTION**
Danger of opening the tailgate while driving!
▸ Make sure that the latch engages after the flap is closed.

Set a delayed lid lock

If the lid is unlocked with the button on the key, the lid is automatically locked again after closing.

The period after which the lid is locked automatically can be extended by a specialist garage.

Boot lid - with electrical control

Operation

⚠ **CAUTION**
Risk of injury!
▸ Only operate the tailgate when there are no people or objects in the swivel area.

⚠ **CAUTION**
Danger of opening the tailgate while driving!
▸ Make sure that the latch engages after the flap is closed.

ⓘ **NOTICE**
▸ Do not manually close the tailgate when moving.
▸ Before operating the tailgate, check that there are no objects in the swivel area that could damage the tailgate. Also check whether there are any objects in the immediate vicinity of the vehicle that could damage the vehicle interior and the objects being transported.

If the tailgate hits an obstacle when closing, it stops and an audible signal sounds.

When automatically closing the tailgate, e.g. under the weight of snow, a broken beep sounds.

Handle in the tailgate



› Press the handle to open, close, or stop the tailgate from moving.

The option to open by pressing the handle is deactivated once a speed of 5 km/h is reached. This is activated again after the vehicle has stopped and a door is opened.

Button in the tailgate



› Press the button to open, close, or stop the tailgate from moving.

Button in the door



› To open the tailgate, pull and hold the button until the tailgate starts to open.
› To close the tailgate, pull and hold the button until the tailgate is fully closed.
› To stop the tailgate from moving, pull or release the button.

Button on the key



› Hold the button to open, close, or stop the tailgate from moving.

The option to lock exists only on vehicles with a keyless locking system. The key must not be in the vehicle and must be at a distance of max. 2 m from the tailgate.

The tailgate can also be closed by pulling it down briefly.

Settings

Set the uppermost position of the tailgate and store it
It makes sense to set the top position of the tailgate, e.g. setting for the opening of the tailgate in a limited space due to the garage height.

› Stop the tailgate in the desired position.
› Press the button and hold down on the lower edge of the tailgate until an audible signal sounds.

Re-adjusting the top starting position of the tailgate
› Carefully raise the tailgate manually to the limit.
› Press the button and hold down on the lower edge of the tailgate until an audible signal sounds.

Troubleshooting

The tailgate does not react to the opening signal

› There is a possible obstacle, e.g. snow; remove it.

Or:

› Press the handle in the tailgate and lift the lid.

Or:

› Mechanically unlock the tailgate » page 35.

The tailgate does not react to the closing signal

› Close the tailgate manually.

NOTICE

▸ Close the tailgate slowly, push down the tailgate and push in the lock on the centre of the rear edge of the tailgate.

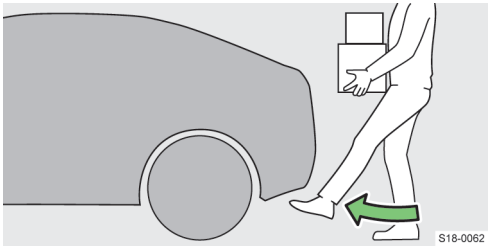
Electrically operated contactless boot lid

Operating conditions

✓ Ignition switched off.
✓ You have the vehicle key with you.
✓ No trailer or other accessory is connected to the trailer socket.

Operation

Open / close tailgate



› Stand in the middle behind the bumper.
› Bring one foot under the bumper in one swift movement and remove it again.

If the tailgate does not move, wait a few seconds and repeat the swivel movement.

Closing indicator
Acoustic signals sound when the tailgate is closed.

Stop / restore tailgate movement
The tailgate movement can be stopped with a swift swivelling movement with the foot. The tailgate movement is restored by a subsequent swivelling movement with the foot.

Restriction

The system function may be restricted in the following cases.

▸ Downpour.
▸ Dirty rear bumper.

Settings

Activate and deactivate
The function is activated and deactivated in the following menu in the Infotainment.

CAR > >

Or:

MENU > > >

We recommend that the function is deactivated in the following cases:

▸ Installation of a roof rack.
▸ Coupling a trailer or other accessories to the hitch.
▸ Washing the vehicle.
▸ Maintenance and repair work in the back of the vehicle.

Unlocking the boot lid

Release

If the boot lid does not open, it can be unlocked manually by the following procedure.

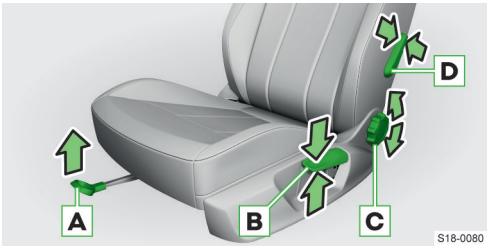


› Insert a screwdriver into the opening in the panel.
› Release the tailgate by moving it in the direction of the arrow.

Seats, steering wheel and mirror

Front seat - with manual operation

Controls on the seat

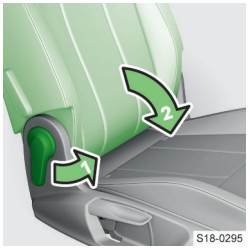


- **A** Adjust lengthways - after releasing the operating lever, the locking mechanism must audibly engage
- **B** Adjust height
- **C** Adjusting the angle of the backrest - do not lean against the backrest during adjustment
- **D** Adjust lumbar support: the extent of the curvature

After a certain time, play can develop within the adjustment mechanism of the backrest angle.

Folding front passenger seat back

Fold up



› Pull on the operating lever.
› Fold the backrest forwards until it clicks into place.

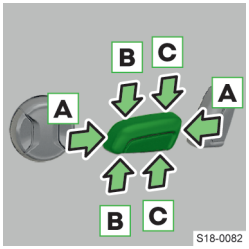
Fold back

› Pull on the operating lever.
› Press the backrest backwards until it audibly clicks into place.

Front seat - with electrical operation

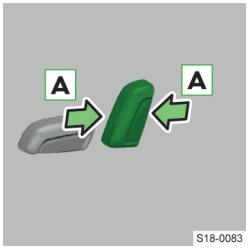
Controls on the seat

Adjust the seat



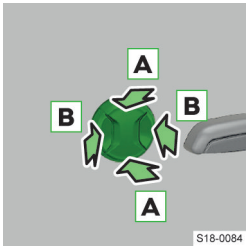
- **A** Adjust lengthways
- **B** Adjust the inclination
- **C** Adjust height

Adjust the seat back



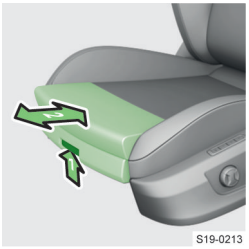
- **A** Adjust the inclination

Adjust lumbar support



- **A** Set the position of the curvature
- **B** Set the extent of the curvature

Manually adjust the length of the seat



› Press the release handle.
› Push the front part of the seat forwards or backwards.

Memory function of the seat

Functionality

Valid for vehicles with electrically adjustable driver's seat.

Each of the memory buttons on the driver's seat can be used to store and recall the set driver's seat and exterior mirror position.

Depending on the equipment, the front passenger seat may also have a memory function.

Operation

Retrieve stored position

› With the ignition off and the driver's door open, **press** the desired memory button.

› In other instances, **hold** the button for example with the ignition switched on or the driver's door closed.

The passenger seat position can be retrieved in the same way.

Stop position change

› With the ignition off and the driver's door open, **press** any button on the seat to be adjusted.

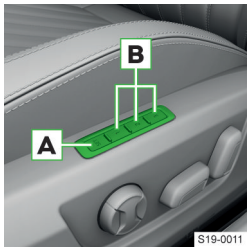
Or:

› Press the button on the key.

› In other cases, **release** the held memory button.

Settings

Storing driver's seat and exterior mirror position for driving forwards



› Turn on the ignition.

› Adjust the seat and the exterior mirrors.

› Press the button A and within 10 seconds one of the memory buttons B.

Storing is confirmed by an acoustic signal.

The seat position can be stored if the angle of inclination of the seat back relative to the seat surface is less than approximately 110° and the seat is not in any of the end positions.

Save front passenger seat position

Storing the passenger seat position is analogous to storing the driver's seat position.

Storing front passenger´s exterior mirror position for reversing

› Turn on the ignition.

› Activate the folding function of the mirror in the Infotainment in the following menu.

CAR > > >

Or:

MENU > > >

› Turn the exterior mirror knob to the position R.

› Engage reverse gear.

› Adjust the mirror to the desired position.

› Disengage reverse gear.

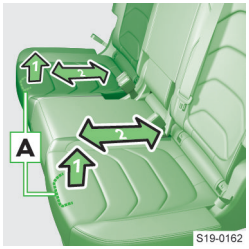
The set mirror position is saved.

When changing the stored seat and exterior mirror position for forward driving, the passenger exterior mirror position for reverse driving must be restored.

Second row of seats

Adjust the second row of seats

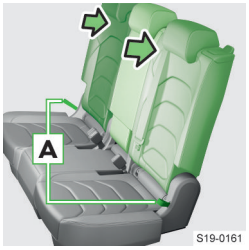
Move the seats lengthways



› Pull on the lever A and move the seat.

The seat must audibly click into place.

Adjusting the inclination of the seat backrests



› Pull on the loop A and adjust the inclination of the seat.

The backrest must click audibly into place.

Access to the third row of seats

Applicable to the seven-seater variant of the vehicle.



› Pull the release handle.

› Fold the seat back forwards and move the seat forwards.



› To get to the third row of seats more easily, attach the seat belt to the strap.

Set the seat in the starting position

› Adjust the seat forwards/backwards
› Fold back the seat back.
› Check this by pulling on the seat and on the seat backrest.

Fold the backrests forward

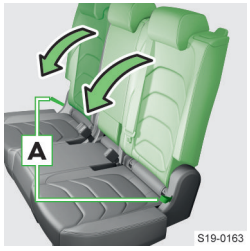
Before folding down

NOTICE

Risk of damage to the slats in the air outlet nozzles and the front seats.

▸ Adjust the headrests of the second row of seats so that they are as low as possible.
▸ Adjust the position of the front seats so that they are not damaged by the folded backrests.

Folding the backrests forwards from the passenger compartment



› Pull on the loop A.
› Fold the backrest forwards until it clicks into place.

Folding the backrests forward from the luggage compartment



› Pull on the lever.

The backrest is unlocked and partially folded forward.

› Fold the backrest forwards until it clicks into place.

Fold back the backrests

› Pull on the loop.
› Press the backrest backwards until it audibly clicks into place.

Fold the middle backrest forward



› Press the safety button and fold the backrest forward.

Fold back the middle backrest

› Press the backrest backwards until it audibly clicks into place.

Parking position of the rear seat belts



Third row of seats

Fold the seats in the third row of seats forward and up

Before folding down

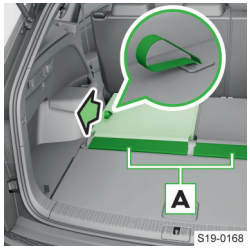
› Move the second row of seats forwards.
› Remove the roll-up luggage compartment cover.

Fold up



› Press the release handle.
› Fold the seat back forward.

Fold back



› For vehicles with the variable loading floor, place the foldable parts A on the variable loading floor.
› Pull on the loop.

The seat back must audibly click into place.

Before folding up

› Release the buckles on the seat belts.

NOTICE

Risk of damage to the belt buckles, the lock tongues and the seats.

▸ The straps must be fully rolled up.

› Fold the backrests forward.

Fold up



› Pull on the loops at the same time.

Collapse

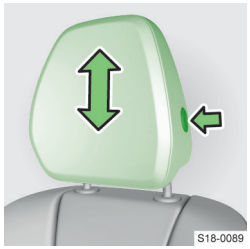


› Press on the seats.

Headrests

Adjust headrests

Headrests in front



› Hold the safety button and move the support in the desired direction.

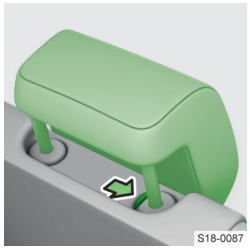
Headrests in the second row



› Move the headrest in the desired direction.

When moving downwards, the safety button must be kept pressed.

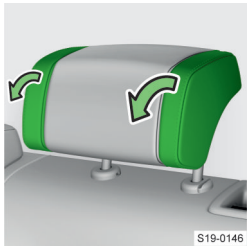
Third row headrests



› Move the headrest in the desired direction.

When moving downwards, the safety button must be kept pressed.

Folding side bolsters of the rear headrest



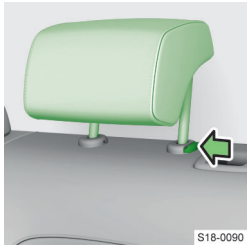
The folded side cheeks reduce an uncontrolled head movement sideways, e.g. while sleeping.

› Set the headrest in the first extended position.
› Fold the side bolsters of the headrest forward.

Remove and insert the rear head restraints

Remove

Applies to the second row of seats.



› Partially fold forward the respective seat back.
› Move the headrest up to the stop.
› Press the safety button and remove the support.

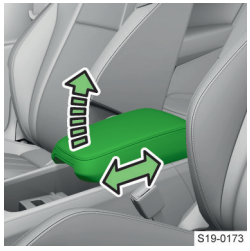
Deploy

› Slide the support into the seat back.

The safety button must audibly click into place.

Front armrest

Settings



Adjust height

› Raise the backrest into one of the resting positions.

Fold down

› Raise the backrest beyond the highest resting position and fold it down again.

Adjust lengthways

› Move the backrest to the desired position.

Rear armrest

Settings



› Fold down the armrest.

The folded-down armrest can be used as a storage table.

Steering wheel

Adjust the steering wheel

⚠ **WARNING**

Risk of accident!

▸ Do not adjust the steering wheel while driving.



› Swing the safety lever downwards.



› Adjust the steering wheel to the desired position.



› Press the safety lever as far as it will go.

Troubleshooting

Power assisted steering faulty

lights up - total failure of the power steering, failure of the steering assistance

› Turn off the ignition, start the engine and drive a few meters.
› If the indicator light does not go out, do not continue driving. Get the help of a specialist company.

lights up - partial failure of power steering, possible reduction in power steering

› Turn off the ignition, start the engine and drive a few meters.
› If the indicator light does not go out, it is possible to continue driving with the appropriate careful driving style. Get the help of a specialist company.

Steering column lock faulty

flashes
Message regarding a fault in the steering column lock

› Stop the vehicle.
› Get the help of a specialist company.

After switching off the ignition, it is then no longer possible to switch on the ignition, to lock the steering and to switch on the electrical components.

flashes
Message regarding a fault in the steering lock

› You may continue driving, exercising appropriate caution. Get the help of a specialist company.

Steering column lock not unlocked

flashes

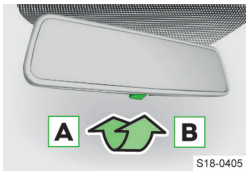
Message regarding the necessary steering wheel movement

› Move the steering wheel slightly back and forth.
› If the steering does not unlock, stop the vehicle and seek the help of a specialist garage.

Interior rear-view mirror

service

Interior mirror with manual darkening



A Mirror is not darkened
B Mirror darkens

Interior mirror with automatic darkening

Darkening of the mirror is automatically controlled through the sensors in the mirror once the engine is started.

⚠ **CAUTION**

Risk of accident!

A glowing display e.g. a mobile phone or navigation device may affect the function of the automatic mirror darkening.

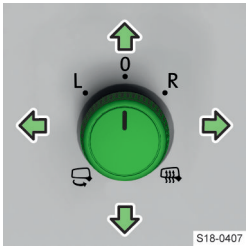
▸ Do not mount these devices near the mirror.

Wing mirror

service

Depending on the equipment, the mirrors can be folded manually or electrically.

Rotary knob positions



L Adjust the left mirror surface
0 Switch off operation
R Adjust the mirror surface on the right
Fold up the mirror electrically (choose another position to fold back)
Heat the mirror while the engine is running

Adjust the mirror surface

› Select position L or R.
› Turn the rotary knob in the direction of the arrows.

Fold up the electrically folding mirrors automatically

The mirrors fold in when the vehicle is locked and fold back in when the function is activated.

ⓘ Locking of the vehicle is not indicated by the fact that the mirrors fold in. Locking of the vehicle is indicated by the turn signal lights flashing.

Manually foldable mirrors

› Fold the mirror towards the side window by applying pressure with your hand.

Set mirror surfaces synchronously

When adjusting the mirror surface of the driver's mirror, the mirror surface of the front passenger's mirror is adjusted at the same time if this function is activated.

Mirror with memory function

Valid for vehicles with electrically adjustable driver's seat.

The current setting of the exterior mirror surfaces can be stored in the driver's seat » page 37 or the radio key » page 25.

Lower the passenger mirror surface when reversing

Valid for vehicles with electrically adjustable driver's seat.

The mirror surface of the passenger mirror takes in the memory of the driver's seat » page 37 or the remote key » page 25 stored position to improve visibility when reversing.

conditions

✓ The function can be activated in Infotainment.
✓ The mirror position is saved.
✓ The reverse gear is engaged.
✓ The adjustment knob is in the R position.

The mirror automatically resumes the home position when driving forward at speeds above 15 km/h or after the ignition is switched off.

⚠ **WARNING**

Risk of accident!

The exterior mirrors make objects appear further away.

▸ Use the inside mirror to determine the distance to the following vehicles.

ⓘ **NOTICE**

Risk of mirror damage!

▸ If the electrically foldable mirror is swung out due to external influences (e.g. due to an impact when maneuvering), fold the mirror with the rotary knob and wait for an audible folding noise.

Settings

The activation or deactivation of the automatic folding of the exterior mirrors, the synchronous adjustment of the mirror surfaces and the lowering of the passenger mirror surface when reversing takes place in the infotainment in the following menu.

CAR > >

Or:

MENU > > >

Troubleshooting

Electric mirror control disrupted

› Adjust the mirror surface by lightly pressing your finger.

⚠ **CAUTION**

Risk of burns!

▶ Do not touch heated exterior mirror surfaces.

Restraint systems and airbags

Seat belts

Functionality

Seat belts that are fastened correctly offer very good protection in the event of an accident. They reduce the risk of an injury and increase the chance of survival in the event of a major accident.

⚠ **WARNING**

▶ The seat belts must not be removed or altered in any other way.

▶ Do not attempt to repair the seat belts yourself. Have a damaged seat belt replaced immediately by a specialist garage.

Automatic belt retractor

The automatic retractor locks the belt in the event of a jerky pull on the belt. The belts lock, for example, when brakes are applied fully, when the car accelerates, when taking turns as well as when being close to a vehicle.

⚠ **WARNING**

▶ If the seat belt does not lock when pulled jerkily, have the retractor checked by a specialist garage.

Belt tensioners

The safety for the driver, front passenger and the two passengers on the outer seats of the second row of seats **who are wearing seat belts** is enhanced by the belt tensioners fitted to the inertia reels of the front seats and the outer seats of the second row of seats.

If there is a collision with a certain severity, the seat belt is tightened by the belt tensioner so that unwanted body movement is prevented.

The belt tensioner can also be deployed when the seat belt is not fastened.

Belt tensioners are **not activated** in the event of a roll-over, **minor** collisions or in accidents in which no major forces are produced.

ℹ Smoke is released when the belt tensioner is deployed. This does not indicate a vehicle fire.

Reversible belt tensioner

Vehicles with a proactive occupant protection system include reversible belt tensioners » page 186.

The reversible belt tensioners increase safety for the belted driver and front passenger by automatically tightening the seat belt tightly over the body in critical driving situations and then releasing it again.

Status display in the instrument cluster display

Depending on the display type, the display can be as follows.

 illuminated – unfastened front or rear seat belt

Illuminates - unoccupied rear seat

illuminated – a rear seat belt is not fastened

illuminated – a rear seat belt is not fastened

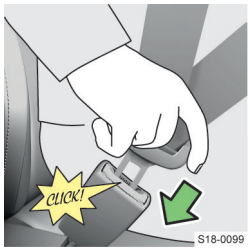
illuminated – a rear seat belt is fastened.

illuminated – a rear seat belt is fastened.

illuminated – a rear seat belt is fastened.

service

Fastening the seat belt



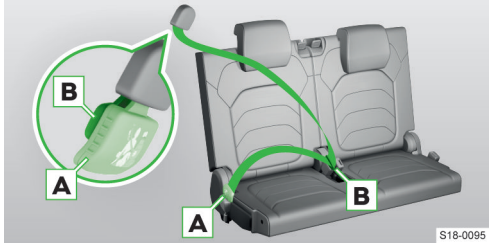
› Grasp the buckle latch and slowly pull the belt over the chest and pelvis towards the buckle.
› Insert the buckle latch into the buckle until there is an audible click.
› Carry out a tensile test to determine whether the lock tongue is securely engaged.

Unfastening the seat belt



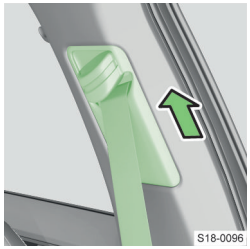
› Grab the lock tongue and release it by pressing the red button.
› Hold the belt so it does not twist when rolling up.

Put on belt with two buckle latches and put down

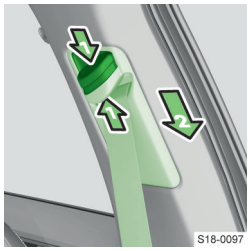


› **To fasten** the belt pull slowly on the tongue A .
› Insert lock tongue A into the buckle until you hear it click into place.
› Slowly pull the webbing on the tongue B over chest and pelvis.
› Insert lock tongue B into the second buckle until you hear it click into place.
› Carry out a tensile test to ensure that the lock tongues are securely engaged.
› **To remove** grab the tongue B and release by pressing the red button.
› Insert lock tongue A and release by pressing the red button.
› Hold the belt so it does not twist when rolling up.

Settings



› Move the seat belt height adjuster upwards to increase the height.



› Press the safety button and move the seat belt height adjuster down to reduce the height.
› After adjustment, firmly pull on the belt to ensure that the seat belt height adjuster has correctly locked in place and that the belt is locked securely.

Troubleshooting

Blocked automatic belt retractor



› Grasp the strap in the middle and pull quickly in the direction of the arrow.
› Hold the strap and let it roll up slowly.
› Pull on the strap to see if the retractor is working properly.
› If the strap is still blocked, repeat the unlocking procedure once or twice.
› If the strap is still blocked, seek the help of a specialist garage.

Child seat

What you should be mindful of

For how to install and use the child seat, please note the instructions in this Owner's Manual as well as the instructions of the child seat manufacturer.

For safety reasons, we always recommend that children are transported on the back seats. Carry children on the front passenger seat only in exceptional cases.

Child seats according to the standard ECE-R 44 of the European Economic Commission.

Child seats according to standard ECE-R 44 are marked with the test symbol: large E in a circle, with the test number under it.

We recommend using child seats from the ŠKODA Genuine Accessories range. These child seats have been developed and tested for use in ŠKODA vehicles. They comply with the standard ECE-R 44.

⚠ WARNING

- When installing the child seat on a seat in the second or third row of seats, adjust the corresponding seat in front so that there is no contact between the child seat and the seat in front, or the child being carried in the child seat.
- Before installing a forward-facing child seat, adjust the headrest so that it is as low as possible.
- If the head restraint prevents the child seat from being fitted, then the head restraint must be removed.

  After removing the child seat, reinstall the headrest.
- When installing the child seat, avoid contact with the area of the roof and the rear pillar. There is a risk of injury when the head airbag is deployed.
- If using a separate child seat cushion, adjust the headrest so that the child's head is flush with, but not protruding above the height of the top edge of the headrest.

Using a child seat on the front passenger seat

When using a child seat on the passenger seat, any country-specific regulations must be observed.

Never use a child seat in which the child is carried with his or her back to the direction of travel on a seat protected by an active airbag placed in front of the seat. This could cause serious injury to the child, even death.

This is also indicated by the following stickers.



Sticker on the passenger sun visor.



Stickers on the middle body pillar on the passenger side.

The following instructions must be followed when using a child seat on the front passenger seat.

- When using a rear-facing child seat, the front passenger airbag must be deactivated.
- If possible, adjust the front passenger seat backrest so that it is vertical, to ensure that there is secure contact between the backrest and the child seat.
- If possible, move the front passenger seat backwards so that there is no contact between the front passenger seat and the child seat behind it.
- Adjust the height-adjustable front passenger seat as much as possible.
- Set the front passenger seat belt as high up as possible.

⚠ WARNING

Risk of the seat belt causing a neck injury to the transported child!

- For child seats in groups 2 and 3, ensure that the guide fitting attached to the child seat headrest is positioned in front of or at the same height as the seat belt height adjuster on the central body pillar.
- Adjust the height of the front passenger seat belt so that the belt passes through the guide fitting without kinking and is not bent over the edge of the guide fitting.

⚠ WARNING

- As soon as the rear-facing child seat is no longer being used on the front passenger seat, activate the front passenger airbag again.

Recommended child seats

Grouping of child seats according to standard ECE-R 44.

Group	Weight of the child
0	up to 10 kg
0+	up to 13 kg
1	9-18 kg
2	15-25 kg
3	22-36 kg

Recommended child seats

Group	Manufacturer	Type	Attachment	Order number	Approval number (E1 ...)
0+ up to 13 kg	Britax Römer	Baby Safe Plus	Isofix base frame	1ST019907	04 301146
1 9-18 kg	Britax Römer	Duo Plus TT	ISOFIX and TOP TETHER	DDA000006	04 301133
2-3 15-36 kg	Britax Römer	Kidfix XP [a)]	Safety belt and ISOFIX/safety belt [b)]	000019906K	04 301198
	Britax Römer	Kidfix II XP	Safety belt and ISOFIX/safety belt [b)]	000019906L	04 301323

[a)] For optimum protection, especially in the event of a side impact, it is recommended that you use this child seat complete with the backrest.

[b)] Only use the fastening means of the seat belt if the seat is not equipped with the ISOFIX system.

Fasteners for child seats

Use of child seats

Overview of the usability of child seats according to the standard ECE-R 16.

Child seats with the ISOFIX-System

group	Size class of the child seat [a)]	Passenger seat with activated front airbag [b)]	Passenger seat with deactivated front airbag [b)]	Second row of seats - outer seats [c)]	Second row of seats - middle seat	Third row of seats
0 up to 10 kg	E	X	X	IL	X	X
0+ up to 13 kg	E	X	X	IL	X	X
	D					
	C					
1 9-18 kg	D	X	X	IL IUF	X	X
	C					
	B					
	B1					
	A					
2 15-25 kg	-	X	X	IL	X	X
3 22-36 kg	-	X	X	IL	X	X

[a)] The size category of the child seat is indicated on the child seat plate.

[b)] If the passenger seat with the eyelets ISOFIXSystem is equipped for the installation of a ISOFIX-Child seat with approval “Semi-universal” suitable.

[c)] The seat is suitable for the fixing system. ISO / R3 suitable.

IL The seat is for that ISOFIX-Child seats with approval “Semi-universal” suitable.

IUF The seat is suitable for forward-facing child seats and is permitted for use in this weight category.

X The seat is not equipped with eyelets for the ISOFIX System. ISOFIXSystem.

i-Size

Passenger seat with activated front airbag	Passenger seat with deactivated front airbag	Second row of seats - outer seats	Second row of seats - middle seat	Third row of seats
X	X	i-U	X	X

i-U The seat is for the forward and backward facing i-Size-Child seats in the category “Universal” suitable.

X The seat is for that i-Size-Child seats in the category “Universal” not suitable.

Child seats fastened with a seat belt

group	Passenger seat with activated front airbag	Passenger seat with deactivated front airbag	Second row of seats - outer seats	Second row of seats - middle seat [a]	Third row of seats [a] [b]
0 up to 10 kg	X	U [c]	U	U	X
0+ up to 13 kg	X	U [c]	U	U	X
1 9-18 kg	UF	U	U	U	X
2 15-25 kg	UF	U	U	U	L
3 22-36 kg	UF	U	U	U	L

[a] It is prohibited to install a child seat with a foot support on the middle seat of the second row and on the seats of the third row.

[b] To get to the third row of seats, follow the instructions in these operating instructions. When using recommended child seats on the third row of seats, adjust the second row as far forward as possible in a longitudinal direction. » page 37, *Adjust the second row of seats*

[c] Adjust the height-adjustable front passenger seat as much as possible.

U The seat is not suitable for the child seat of the category Universal. “Universal” suitable that are approved for use in this weight group.

UF The seat is for the forward facing child seats of the category “Universal” suitable that are approved for use in this weight group.

L The seat is only suitable for recommended child seats in category 2-3 » page 44.

X The seat is not suitable for children in this weight group.

Overview

ISOFIX

⚠ WARNING

- On the retaining eyelets that are used to install the child seat with the ISOFIXSystem provided, do not attach any other child seats, belts or objects.

The ISOFIXSystem enables the child seat to be attached quickly and securely. The Holding eyes for installing the child seat using the ISOFIXSystem are located on the outer seats of the second row of seats, and possibly also on the front passenger seat.

A child seat with the ISOFIX-System can only be installed in the vehicle if it is approved for this vehicle type. More information is available by asking a ŠKODA partner or from a vehicle list that comes with the child seat.

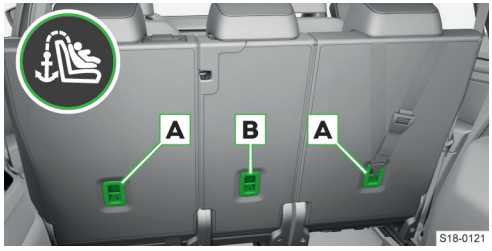


Holding eyes for installing the child seat using the ISOFIX-System.

TOP TETHER

⚠ **WARNING**

- Child seats with the TOP TETHER- Only use the system on the seats with the eyelets TOP TETHERSymbol are provided.
- Only attach one belt from the child seat to a locking eye TOP TETHER-Fasten the system.
- When attaching the child seat with the TOP TETHER- No other object may be attached to the eyelet TOP TETHERSystem.



Retaining eyes on the rear seats of the second row

The attached belt of the TOP TETHERSystem restricts movements of the child seat top. The holding eyelets for attaching the belt are located on the outer rear seats on the second row A, as well as on the middle rear B seat B.

Airbags

Usage

The airbag system offers additional occupant protection in the event of severe frontal and side collisions, as a supplement to the seat belts.

The best possible protective effect of the airbag is achieved only when the seat belt is also worn. The airbag system is no substitute for the seat belts.

Functionality

When sinking into the inflated airbag, the forward movement of the body is damped and the risk of injury is reduced.

As the airbags inflate, smoke is released. This does not indicate a vehicle fire.

Airbag deployment in the event of an accident
Airbag deployment is influenced by many factors. The decisive factor is the deceleration curve that occurs on impact.

⚠ **WARNING**
Danger of serious or fatal injuries!

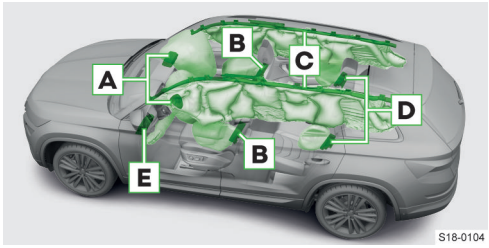
- Maintain the correct seating position.
- Do not keep your limbs in the deployment area of the airbags.

The airbag is not deployed **in the following** situations.

- Minor frontal and side collisions.
- Rear collision.
- Vehicle rollover.

If the measured deceleration rate is below the reference values programmed in the control unit, the airbags are not deployed despite possible serious damage to the vehicle.

Airbag overview



A Front airbags
B Side airbags - front
C Head airbags
D Side airbags - rear
E Driver's knee airbag

The installation location of the airbags is marked with the lettering AIRBAG.

⚠ **WARNING**
Danger of a functional restriction of the side airbags!

- Do not exert excessive forces, e.g. impacts, on the seat backs.
- Do not use seat covers that have not been approved by ŠKODA.
- Have damaged seat covers at the installation location of the side airbags repaired by a specialist garage.

Deactivating the airbags
We recommend having airbags other than the front passenger airbag deactivated » page 48, *service* by a ŠKODA service partner.

Deactivation of the airbags should be considered in cases such as the ones below.

- If the driver's seat adjustment is correct, the distance of at least 25 cm between the centre of the steering wheel and the sternum cannot be maintained.
- Additional operating controls for a physically disadvantaged driver are installed in the vehicle.
- The vehicle has special seats, e.g. orthopaedic seats without side airbags.

illuminates for 4 seconds after the ignition is switched on and then flashes for 12 seconds - Airbag or belt tensioner deactivated with the diagnostic device
Message regarding the deactivated airbag or belt tensioner

⚠ **WARNING**
If an airbag is deactivated during the sale of the vehicle, inform the buyer!

Conditions

✓ The ignition is switched on.

Troubleshooting

Airbag system faulty
illuminates
Message regarding an airbag fault

› Seek the help of a specialist garage.

Key switch for the front passenger airbag

Usage

Deactivation of the front passenger airbag is provided for the following cases, for example.

- A rear-facing child seat is mounted on the front passenger seat.
- The vehicle has special seats, e.g. orthopaedic seats without side airbags.

What you should be mindful of

⚠ **WARNING**
Danger of fault in the passenger airbag deactivation system!

- Only deactivate the airbag when the ignition is switched off!

⚠ **WARNING**
Danger of unexpected deployment of the passenger airbags in an accident!
- If the front passenger airbag has been deactivated with the key, do not leave the key in the key switch while driving. Vibrations can cause the key to turn in the slot and activate the airbag!

service

Before switching off/switching on the front passenger airbag
Depending on the key type:

› Fold out the key bit completely.

Or:

› Take out the key bit.

Switch off/on front passenger airbag



› Switch off the ignition.
› Open the passenger door.
› Insert the key bit into the slot in the key switch as far as it will go.
› to **Switch off** the key switch carefully into position **OFF** rotate.
› to **turn on** the key switch carefully into position **ON** rotate.
› Remove the key bit from the slot.
› Close the passenger door.
› Turn on the ignition and check that the front passenger airbag indicator lights are lit up.

Indicator lights



- After switching on the ignition, the two indicator lights light up briefly.
- If the system is OK, the two indicator lights go out.
- One of the indicator lights then lights up again depending on the position of the key switch.

OFF lights up - front passenger airbag switched off

ON lights up 65 secs after the ignition is switched on – passenger front airbag switched on

Troubleshooting

Key switch for airbag deactivation is faulty

ON flashes together with OFF
The front passenger airbag will not be deployed in the event of an accident!

› Have the airbag system checked immediately by a specialist company.

Lighting, windscreen wipers and washers

Exterior lighting

functionality

Unless otherwise stated, the light works when the ignition is switched on.

Daylight running lights
The daytime running lights illuminate the area in front of the vehicle.

In vehicles for certain markets, this also provides lighting for the rear area of the vehicle.

Functional conditions
✓ The lights switch is in position **0**, **AUTO** or .

Automatically switch the low beam on/off
The low beam is automatically switched on or off depending on the lighting conditions.

Functional conditions
✓ The light switch is in the **AUTO** position.

The automatic driving light switch is activated by the symbol lighting up displayed in the light switch.

Automatically switch the low beam on/off when it rains
Functional conditions
✓ The light switch is in the **AUTO** position.
✓ The function is activated.
✓ The windscreen wipers are switched on for longer than 30 seconds.

The automatic driving light switch is activated by the symbol lighting up displayed in the light switch.

Full LED front headlights
When the light switch is in position **AUTO**, the headlights provide the best possible beam of light in front of the vehicle.

The **Dynamic cornering light** function ensures the best possible illumination of the curve area.

CORNER function
The CORNER function is intended for turning or manoeuvring (e.g. when parking).

The function illuminates the vicinity of the vehicle front in the direction of travel.

Functional conditions
✓ The turn signal is switched on or the front wheels are steered sharply.
✓ The low beam is switched on.
✓ The fog lights are not switched on.
✓ The driving speed is lower than 40 km/h.

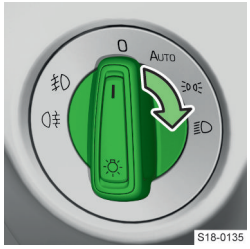
When no light is switched on

The symbol ☼ in the light switch may also light up in the instrument cluster, indicating that it is necessary to switch on the light.

☼ illuminates

› Switch on the light.

service



0 Switching off the lights except the daytime running lights

AUTO Automatically switch the low beam on/off

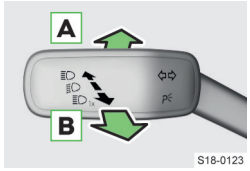
Switching on the parking lights

Switch on the low beam

ⓘ Use the position as the basic position of the light switch **AUTO**.

Main beam

The high beam works when the low beam is on.



A Switch on the high beam - the warning light in the instrument cluster illuminates

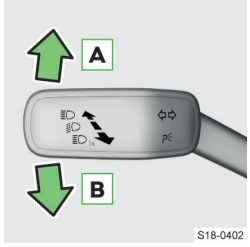
B Switch off the main beam - the indicator lamp in the instrument cluster goes out / Switch on the flasher - the indicator lamp lights up

⚠ **CAUTION**

Risk of accident!

▸ Do not dazzle other road users with the high beam.

Turn signal



A Switching on the turn signal light on the right - the warning light flashes in the instrument cluster

B Switching on the turn signal light on the left - the warning light flashes in the instrument cluster

Turn signal - convenience signalling

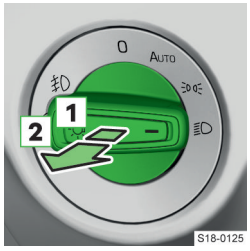
Convenience signalling enables three flashes of the turn signal lights without having to move the lever up or down.

› Tap the control lever up or down.

The corresponding direction indicators flash three times.

Tap the lever in the opposite direction ahead of time to stop signalling.

Fog light



Positions for pulling out the light switch

1 Fog lights - the warning light in the instrument cluster illuminates

2 Rear fog light - the warning light in the instrument cluster illuminates

› Turn the light switch to position **AUTO**, or .

› Pull the light switch into the appropriate position.

ⓘ The rear fog light does not illuminate when an accessory is connected to the trailer socket.

Hazard warning lights

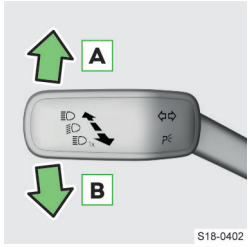
› Press the button to switch it on or off ⚠ Press in the middle part of the control panel.

When the hazard warning system is on and the turn signal is switched on, the hazard warning lights will be switched off temporarily and only the turn signal will flash on the relevant side of the vehicle.

The hazard warning lights can be switched on automatically in the event of a violent braking manoeuvre. The hazard warning lights are switched off automatically when starting or accelerating.

Parking light on one side

The one-sided parking light enables the illumination of one side of the parked vehicle by switching on the corresponding parking light.



A Switch on the parking light on the right

B Switch on the parking light on the left

› Switch off the ignition.

› Move the lever to the appropriate position.

› Lock the vehicle.

When the parking light is switched on, an acoustic warning signal sounds and the driver's door is

opened. After a few seconds or after the driver's door is closed, the warning signal will stop.

Parking lights on both sides
The two-sided parking light allows the parked vehicle to be illuminated through activation of the sidelights.

› Turn on the ignition.
› The light switch in position rotate.
› Switch off the ignition.
› Lock the vehicle.

The light may switch off automatically if the battery is low. If the two-sided parking light is switched on when the ignition is switched off, the light will not switch off automatically.

When the parking light is switched on, an acoustic warning signal sounds after the ignition is switched off and the driver's door is opened. After a few seconds or after the driver's door is closed, the warning signal will stop.

Settings

Activate/deactivate automatic driving lights when it rains
The function is activated or deactivated in the following menu in the Infotainment system.

CAR > >

Or:

MENU > > >

Activate/deactivate comfort flashing
The function is activated or deactivated in the following menu in the Infotainment system.

CAR > >

Or:

MENU > > >

Headlight range adjustment of the halogen headlights
The headlight range control is carried out in the Infotainment system in the following menu.

CAR > >

Or:

MENU > > >

› Select the position of the control according to the vehicle's current load status.

0	Front seats occupied, boot empty
2	All seats occupied, boot empty
4	All seats occupied, luggage space loaded
6	Driver's seat occupied, boot loaded

In the event of another vehicle loading condition, the positions 1, 3, 5 can be used.

For the Full LED headlights, the headlight range control is adjusted automatically.

⚠ WARNING
Risk of accident!
An incorrectly set headlight range leads to inadequate road lighting or dazzling of other road users.
▶ Adjust the headlight range correctly.

Switch full LED headlights for the opposite direction of traffic - driving abroad
› Switch on travel mode in the Infotainment in the following menu.

CAR > >

Or:

MENU > > >

Troubleshooting

Turn signal light defective
flashes faster - right turn signal lamp failed
› Check the right turn signal.

flashes faster - left turn signal lamp failed
› Check the left turn signal.

does not flash when the trailer is coupled - trailer flashing light has failed
› Check the trailer lighting.

Light bulb or LED bulb is defective
or illuminates
Information appears in the display regarding the affected lights.

› Replace the defective bulb.
› In the event of a defective LED lamp, seek the help of a specialist company.

Headlights are fogged from the inside
Moisture can condense inside the headlights. This is not a defect.

Malfunction of the automatic headlight circuit
› Clean the windscreen in the area of the rain/light sensor.

Beam of light in front of the vehicle has shortened
Headlights defective.

› Get the help of a specialist company.

Driving lights failed
If a message regarding the failed driving lights is displayed, the light will work in emergency mode.

› Continue driving with appropriate caution.
› Get the help of a specialist company.

COMING HOME, LEAVING HOME exterior lighting

Functionality

The COMING HOME function turns on the light after turning off the ignition and opening the driver's door. The light switches off automatically after the set lighting time has elapsed.

The LEAVING HOME function switches on the light when unlocking the vehicle with the wireless remote control.

Functional conditions

✓ Visibility has worsened.
✓ The light switch is in the **AUTO** position.

Settings

This function is set in the following menu in the Infotainment system.

CAR > >

Or:

MENU > > >

Light Assist high-beam assist system

Functionality

The high beam assist system automatically switches the high beam on and off.

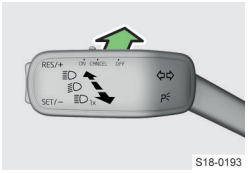
⚠ **WARNING**
Risk of accident!
▸ If necessary, manually switch the high beam on or off.

Functional conditions

✓ The system is activated.
✓ The light switch is in the position **AUTO**.
✓ The driving speed is higher than 60 km/h (for some countries, higher than 40 km/h).
✓ The low beam is switched on.

service

turn on



› Push the lever in the direction of the arrow.

Lights up in the instrument cluster from the isolation box.

Turn off
› Manually switch the high beam on or off.

Settings

Activation / deactivation
The function is activated or deactivated in the following menu in the Infotainment system.

CAR > >

Or:

MENU > > >

Replace light bulbs

What you should be mindful of

DIY replacement of the following bulbs is possible. Have the remaining light sources replaced by a specialist garage.

The new bulb must conform to the specification of the original light bulb. The name of the bulb is marked on the bulb socket.

After changing a bulb in the low beam light, the main beam or fog light, have the headlights adjusted by a specialist garage.

⚠ **CAUTION**
Halogen lamps are pressurised and can burst during replacement!
▸ Wear gloves and safety goggles.

ⓘ **NOTICE**
Contamination of the halogen lamp reduces the life of the lamp!
▸ Do not touch the glass of the light bulb with your bare fingers.

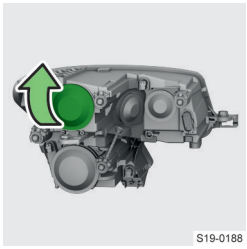
ⓘ **NOTICE**
Danger of headlight damage due to the ingress of water and dirt!
▸ Always fit the protective cap on the headlight correctly after changing a bulb.

Conditions for changing a bulb

✓ Ignition switched off.

✓ Light switched off.

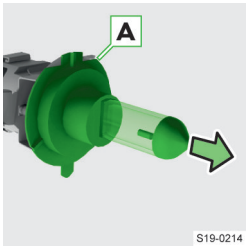
Low beam



› Remove the protective cap from the headlight.



› Turn and remove the socket with the bulb.

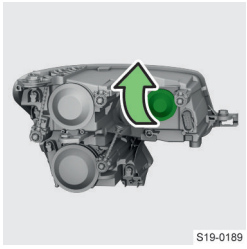


› Remove the bulb from the socket.
› Insert a new bulb into the socket so that the fixing lug A snaps into the recess on the bulb.
› Insert the socket with the light bulb into the headlight and turn it clockwise ↻ to secure.

› Fit the protective cap on the headlight again.

Main beam and side lights

Remove protective cap from headlight

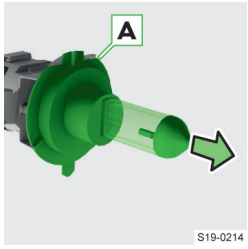


› Remove the protective cap.

Changing the bulb for the main beam

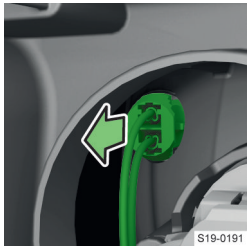


› Turn and remove the socket with the bulb.

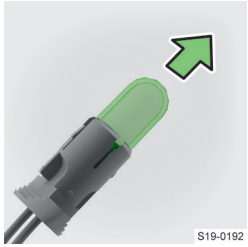


› Remove the bulb from the socket.
› Insert a new bulb into the socket so that the fixing lug A snaps into the recess on the bulb.
› Insert the socket with the light bulb into the headlight and turn it clockwise ↻ to secure.

Change the light bulb for the parking light



› Remove the base with the bulb.

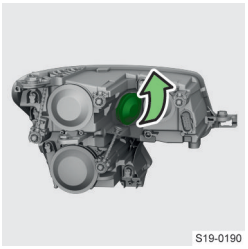


› Change the bulb in the socket.
› Push the base with the bulb into the headlight as far as it will go.

Insert the protective cap on the headlight

› Reinstall the protective cap.

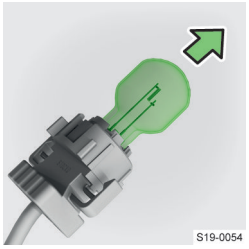
Front turn signal



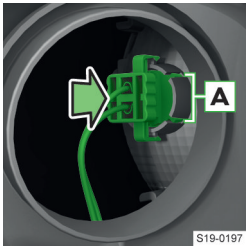
› Remove the protective cap from the headlight.



› Remove the base with the bulb.



› Change the bulb in the socket.



› Push the base with the light bulb into the lamp so that the fixing lugs A fit into the recesses on the headlight.
› Reinstall the protective cap on the headlight.

Fog lights

Removing the cover cap from the wheel housing

› Adjust the front wheels so that the cover cap is accessible.



› Insert the bracket from the tool kit into the recess in the cover cap.
› Remove the cover by pulling on the bracket.

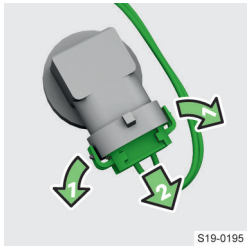
Removing the defective light bulb



› Remove the rubber protective cap from the headlight.



› Turn the bulb and remove it.



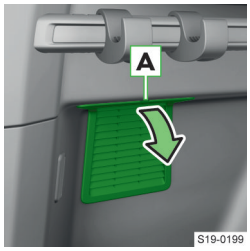
› Release the connector and remove it from the bulb.

Inserting a new bulb and cover cap in the wheel arch

› Insert the plug into the new bulb until it clicks into place.
› Insert the new bulb into the headlight so that the guide lugs on the bulb are aligned with the corresponding openings in the headlight.
› Turn the bulb clockwise ↷ to secure.
› Replace the rubber protective cap on the headlight.
› Insert the cover in the wheel arch and lock into place.

Rear turn signal

Loosen and remove the lamp



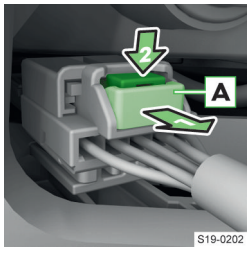
› Loosen and remove the grid in the area A .



› Unscrew the screw.



› Take out the lamp.



› Pull A somewhat out of the plug.

› Press the safety button and pull out the plug.

Replacing the light bulb



› Turn and remove the socket with the bulb.



› Change the bulb in the socket.

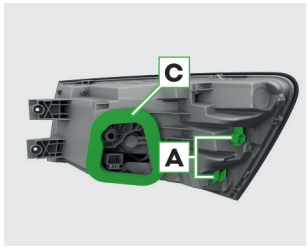
› Push the base with the new light bulb into the luminaire so that the guide lugs on the base and the associated openings in the luminaire are flush.

› Turn the socket clockwise ↻ to secure.

Insert and fix the lamp

› Insert the connector into the light until it clicks into place.

› Press in the slightly pulled out latch on the connector.





› Stick the lamp with the openings A on the bolts B in the body.

NOTICE

Risk of damage to the electrical system due to water ingress!

▸ Make sure that the seal is used correctly when installing the lamp C .

NOTICE

Risk of damage to the electrical system!

▸ Make sure that the lines between the lamp and the body are not pinched when the lamp is inserted.

› Screw on the lamp.

› Reinstall the grille.

Interior lighting

service

Operation of the lighting

Lighting in front and rear

Back lighting

REAR

Reading lights

Automatic switching on and off
When the front light is set to , the rear light is automatically switched on or off.

Automatic switch on
The light switches on when one of the following events occurs.

- The vehicle is unlocked.
- One of the doors is opened.
- The ignition is switched off.

Automatic switch off
The light switches off when one of the following events occurs.

- The vehicle is locked.
- The ignition is switched on.
- About 30 seconds after all the doors have been closed.

If a door remains open and the ignition is switched off, the lights will turn off automatically after 10 minutes.

Automatic switching on/off of the footwell lighting
The lighting only works when the dipped or parking lights are on.

The lighting is also switched on automatically after opening the door (e.g. when getting in or out).

Switch on the lighting of the makeup mirrors in the sun visors on the windscreen
› Slide on the cover of the makeup mirror.

Settings

The brightness level of the footwell lighting when the dipped or parking lights are switched on is set in the infotainment in the following menu.

CAR > >

Or:

MENU > > >

Interior ambient light

Usage

The ambient lighting ensures a comfortable atmosphere in the vehicle interior.

The lighting only works when the dipped or parking lights are on.

The lighting is also switched on automatically after opening the door.

Settings

The background lighting brightness settings are set in the Infotainment system, in the following menu.

CAR > >

Or:

MENU > > >

Windscreen wipers and washers

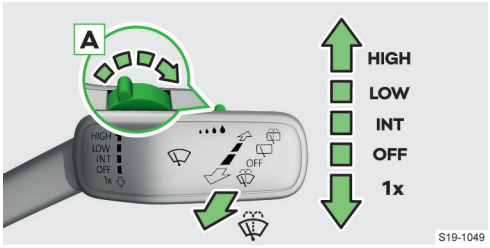
Functional conditions

✓ Engine compartment lid closed.
✓ Luggage compartment lid closed.
✓ Ignition is switched on.

service

⚠ **WARNING**
Risk of accident!
At low temperatures, windscreen washer fluid can freeze on the windscreen and restrict visibility.
- Only use the windscreen washer when the windscreen is warm.

Wipe and wash the front screen



HIGH Quick wipe

LOW Slow wiping

INT Depending on the equipment:
- Intermittent wiping
- Automatic wiping controlled by the rain sensor

OFF Turn off

1x Tip wiping (sprung position)

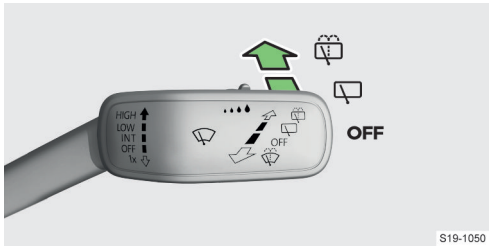
A Setting the wiping speed for the position **INT**

Washing and wiping (sprung position)

Depending on the vehicle equipment, the windscreen washer nozzles of the windscreen can be heated automatically after starting the engine.

Clean headlights
Headlights that are switched on are cleaned the first time and after every tenth wash of the windscreen. The cleaning interval can be set by a specialist company.

Wipe and wash the rear window



Washing and wiping the window (sprung position)

Washing the rear view camera (sprung position)

Wipe

OFF Turn off

Automatic rear window wiping
If the windshield wiping is carried out without interruption, then the automatic regular wiping of the rear window takes place.

When the windscreen wipers are switched on, the rear window is automatically wiped when the reverse gear is engaged.

Settings

Activate/deactivate automatic wiping
The functions for automatic rear window wiping and automatic wiping in the rain can be activated and deactivated in the following menu in the Infotainment system.

CAR > >

Or:

MENU > > >

Add windshield washer fluid

⚠ **WARNING**
Risk of accident!
▸ Use a suitable windshield washer fluid according to the weather conditions.

ⓘ **NOTICE**
Risk of damage to the windscreen washer system!
▸ When refilling the washer fluid, do not remove the strainer from the neck of the container.

ⓘ **NOTICE**
Risk of damage to the headlights!
▸ Only use washer fluid that does not attack polycarbonates.

ⓘ **NOTICE**
Risk of damage to the parts of the engine compartment!
▸ Close the container after refilling the windscreen washer fluid.

The windscreen washer tank is located in the engine compartment » page 11.

The container can hold a volume of 3 litres and 5 litres for vehicles with a headlight cleaning system. For some countries where vehicles have the headlamp cleaning system, the volume is 7 litres.

› Open the bonnet » page 195 .
› Carefully open the upper area of the lid.
› Refill the windshield washer fluid.

Troubleshooting

Windscreen washer fluid level too low
illuminates together with ⚠

or

illuminates together with ⚠

› Refill the windshield washer fluid.

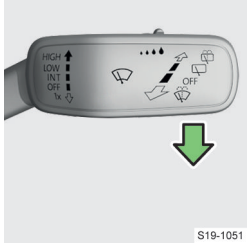
Frozen wipers
› Carefully remove frozen windscreen wipers from the windscreen before switching on the ignition and free them from snow and ice.

Fold down the wiper arms and replace the wiper blades

To fold the windscreen wipers off the windscreen, the windscreen wiper arms must first be set to the fold-down position.

ⓘ **NOTICE**
Risk of damage to the windscreen wipers and the engine compartment lid!
▸ Close the bonnet before lowering the wiper arms from the window.
▸ Do not turn on the ignition when the windscreen wiper arms are folded away.

Set the wiper arms to the fold-down position
› Switch the ignition on and off again.



› Within 10 seconds, press the control lever down and hold for about 2 seconds.

The windshield wiper arms assume the folded position.

Replace the windscreen wiper blade

⚠ **CAUTION**
Risk of accident!
▸ Change the windscreen wiper blades once or twice a year.

› Fold the windscreen wiper arm away from the windscreen.



› Press the fuse and remove the wiper blade.
› Insert the new wiper blade until it clicks into place.
› Fold the windscreen wiper arm back onto the windscreen.
› Turn on the ignition and push the control lever down.

Heating and air conditioning system

Manual air conditioning

What you should be mindful of

▸ We recommend a difference of max. 5°C between the outside temperature and the interior temperature.
▸ Annual disinfection of the air conditioning is recommended.

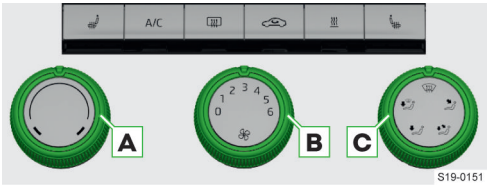
⚠ **WARNING**
Danger of misting!
▸ Always keep the fan on.

⚠ **WARNING**
Risk of accident!
In recirculation mode, there is no fresh air supply from the outside. This can result in loss of driver attention and fogging up of windows.
▸ Keep the recirculation mode switched on for a short time only.

Operating conditions for the cooling system

✓ The outside temperature is below 2 °C.
✓ The engine is running.
✓ The blower is switched on.

Overview of the controls of the manual air conditioning system



A Set the temperature
B Set the blower speed
C Set the direction of the air outlet
Switch seat heating on / off » page 63
A/C Switch cooling system on / off
Switch window heating on / off » page 63
Switch recirculated air mode on/off
Switch auxiliary heating and ventilation on/off » page 61

Cooling system
When the cooling system is switched on, the temperature and humidity in the vehicle will drop.

Switching on the cooling system prevents the windows from misting up.

After pressing the A/C button, the indicator light in the button illuminates, even if the conditions for switching on the cooling system are not met. The cooling system switches on when the conditions for switching on the cooling system are met.

Automatic switching on of the cooling system
The cooling system switches on automatically to stop the windows from fogging up. The system switches on in the following cases.

- When the fan is on and the air distribution controller is in the position.

  In this case, the recirculation mode is switched off.
- When the air distribution controller is not in the position, and recirculated air mode is switched on.

Recirculated air mode
The recirculation mode prevents contaminated outside air getting into the interior of the vehicle.

Switching recirculation mode on briefly can increase the cooling effect.

Circulating air mode may be switched on or off automatically under certain circumstances.

When the air conditioner is operating, the engine idle speed may increase automatically.

Troubleshooting

Water under the vehicle
When the cooling system is switched on, water can drip off the air conditioning system. This is not a leak.

Fogging
› Increase the blower speed, switch on the cooling system, and set the air distribution to the windscreen.

Automatic switch-off of the cooling system
If the coolant temperature is too high, the cooling system may switch off automatically. This ensures sufficient engine cooling.

Climatronic automatic air conditioning system

What you should be mindful of

- We recommend a difference of max. 5°C between the outside temperature and the interior temperature.
- Annual disinfection of the air conditioning is recommended.

⚠ **WARNING**
Danger of misting!

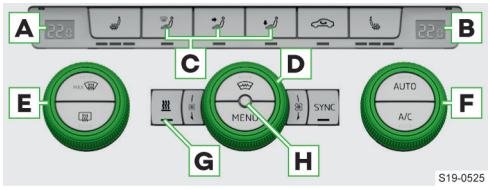
- Always keep the fan on.

⚠ **WARNING**
Risk of accident!
In recirculation mode, there is no fresh air supply from the outside. This can result in loss of driver attention and fogging up of windows.
- Keep the recirculation mode switched on for a short time only.

Operating conditions for the cooling system

✓ The outside temperature is below 2 °C.
✓ The engine is running.
✓ The blower is switched on.

Operation



A Set the temperature for the left side
B Set the temperature for the right side
C Set the direction of the air outlet
D Set the blower speed
E Set the temperature for the left side
F Set the temperature for the right side
G Depending on the equipment:
- Switch auxiliary heating and ventilation on/off » page 61
- REST Use of residual engine heat for maintaining heat in the vehicle interior

  It is possible to switch on within 30 minutes of switching off the ignition.

  Switching off the function takes about 30 minutes.

H Interior temperature sensor

Switch seat heating / ventilation on / off » page 63

Switch recirculated air mode on/off
The recirculation mode prevents contaminated outside air getting into the interior of the vehicle.

MAX Switch the windscreen ventilation/defrosting mode on/off

Switch window heating on / off » page 63

Switch window heating on / off » page 63

MENU Operate Climatronic in the Infotainment system

SYNC Switch on / off maintenance of the interior temperature according to the temperature setting for the driver's side

AUTO **Press** - Switch on automatic mode

This function keeps the temperature constant and prevents the windows from misting.

Hold - Switch on maintenance of interior temperature according to the temperature setting for the driver's side (function SYNC)

A/C Switch cooling system on / off

When the cooling system is switched on, the temperature and humidity in the vehicle will drop.

Switching on the cooling system prevents the windows from misting up.

The rear temperature can also be set on the display in the rear centre console.

If the temperature is set outside the numerical range, one of the following symbols is shown in the Climatronic display.

LO Maximum cooling capacity
HI Maximum heating output

When the air conditioner is operating, the engine idle speed may increase automatically.

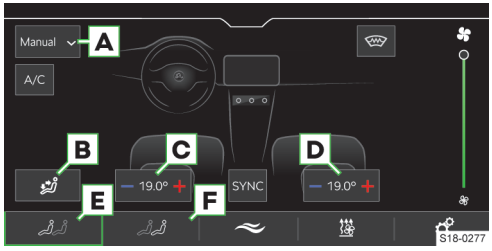
Settings

Show settings menu

› Tap the **MENU** button on the Climatronic.

Or:

› **MENU** > ❄ on the Infotainment screen.



A Select Climatronic mode

B Set the direction of the air outlet in manual mode

C Set the temperature for the left side

D Set the temperature for the right side

E Show settings menu at the front

F Show settings menu at the back

A/C Switch cooling system on / off

When the cooling system is switched on, the temperature and humidity in the vehicle will drop.

Switching on the cooling system prevents the windows from misting up.

Switch windscreen heating on / off » page 63

According to the selected Climatronic mode:

- Manual mode - Set the blower speed
- Automatic mode - set operating performance

SYNC Switch on / off maintenance of the interior temperature according to the temperature setting for the driver's side

The Air Care function reduces the penetration of pollutants into the vehicle interior. At the same time, the air is both circulated and cleaned.

The air purification process is displayed in the Infotainment.

For proper operation, the doors and windows must be closed.

› To switch on / off, tap *Active* .

Switch auxiliary heating and ventilation on/off » page 61

REAR Lock the heating output of the rear seat heating » page 64

The function is displayed after tapping the function surface F.

Further Climatronic settings

› To make further settings, press the **MENU** button on the Climatronic >, tap on ⚙ in the Infotainment screen.

- *Automatic circulating air* - Switching the automatic air recirculation on / off.
- *Automatic auxiliary heater* - Switching the fast interior heating on / off.
- *Automatic windscreen heating* - Switching the automatic windscreen heating on / off.

Troubleshooting

Water under the vehicle

When the cooling system is switched on, water can drip off the air conditioning system. This is not a leak.

Fogging

› Switch on automatic mode.

Or:

› Increase the blower speed, switch on the cooling system, and set the air distribution to the windscreen.

Automatic switch-off of the cooling system
If the coolant temperature is too high, the cooling system may switch off automatically. This ensures sufficient engine cooling.

Auxiliary heating and ventilation

Usage

The auxiliary heater heats the vehicle interior and the engine.

The auxiliary ventilation makes it possible to supply fresh air to the vehicle interior when the engine is switched off. As a result, the interior temperature is lowered, e.g. when the vehicle is parked in the sun.

What you should be mindful of

⚠ **DANGER**
Risk of poisoning!
▸ The auxiliary heater must not be operated in enclosed spaces.

⚠ **DANGER**
Risk of fire!
▸ Switch off the auxiliary heater before refuelling.
▸ The exhaust pipe for the auxiliary heater is located on the underside of the vehicle. Therefore, do not stop the vehicle in places where the exhaust gases could come into contact with easily flammable materials, e.g. dry grass, spilled fuel etc.

Functionality

The system heats or ventilates the vehicle interior depending on the temperature settings of the air conditioning system and the air outlet nozzles before the ignition is switched off.

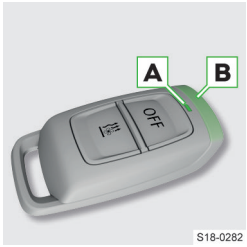
The system consumes fuel from the fuel tank when operating the heating.

Operating conditions

✓ The battery charge is sufficient.
✓ The fuel supply is sufficient, the instrument cluster does not light up.

Operation

Switch on/off with the radio remote control
› Hold the corresponding key.



A Indicator light
B Antenna
OFF Switch off:
Switch on

Hold the radio remote control with the antenna facing upwards.

NOTICE
▸ Protect the radio remote control from moisture, strong vibrations and direct sunlight.

Indicator light on the radio remote control
▸ Lit up green for 2 seconds - switch on.
▸ Lit up red for 2 seconds - switch off.

Range of the radio remote control
The range of the wireless remote control is a few hundred meters when the battery is full. For example, obstacles or weather conditions can reduce the range.

Switching on/off via the control panel of the air conditioning system
› Press the button.

Set automatic switch-on

Show menu for vehicles with manual air conditioning
The automatic switching on is set in the following menu in the Infotainment system.

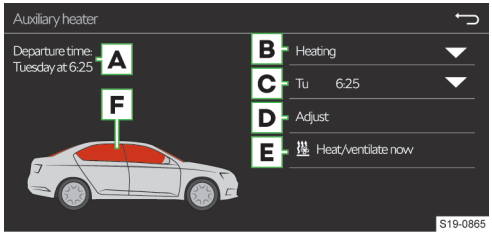
CAR >

Or:

MENU > >

Show menu for vehicles with Climatronic
› Press the button MENU on the Climatronic control panel >, tap in the Infotainment screen.

Settings and information in the Infotainment screen



A Day and time when the vehicle is to be ready for use

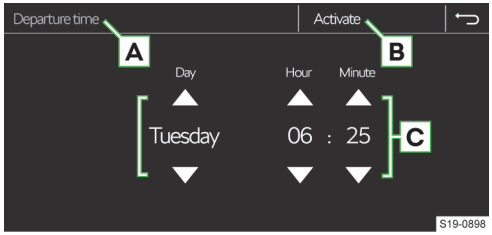
B Setting the heating/ventilation

C List of pre-set times, activation / deactivation of the pre-set time

D Set the selected choice of time and the duration (10-60 minutes)

E Switch on immediately

F When the heating is running, the windows are displayed in red
When ventilation is running, the windows are displayed in blue



A Pre-set time currently displayed

B Activation of the currently displayed pre-set time

C Setting the departure time

When automatic switching on is activated, the warning light in the button lights up after the ignition is turned off.

Only one preset time can be active. The activated preset time will be deactivated again after it has started automatically. To start the next preset time, this preset time must be activated.

When selecting the day in the preset time, there is an option between Sunday and Monday without the specified day. When this position is selected, the system is switched on at the next set time.

Troubleshooting

Smoke in the engine compartment
In the engine compartment, smoke and odours may form during the operation of the auxiliary heater. This is not a defect.

Running the auxiliary heater after stopping the engine
After switching off the system, the coolant pump and the auxiliary heating will continue running a little while longer in order to burn the remaining fuel in the heating.

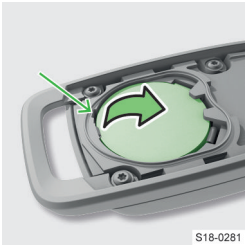
Indicator light in the radio remote control

- ▸ Flashes green in a slow sequence - the switch-on signal was not received.
- ▸ Flashes red in a slow sequence - the switch-off signal was not received.
- ▸ Flashes green in an irregular pattern – the parking heater is locked, e.g. because the fuel tank is almost empty or there is an error.
  - › Check the level of fuel.
  - › If the fuel quantity is OK, seek the help of a specialist company.
- ▸ Lights up orange first, then green/red – the battery is weak, the on/off signal has been received.
- ▸ Lights up orange first, then flashes green/red – the battery is weak, the on/off signal has not been received.
- ▸ Flashing orange – the battery is nearly discharged, the on/off signal has not been received.
- ▸ Not lit up – the battery is discharged, the on/off signal has not been received.
  - › Replace the battery.

Change the battery in the remote control



- › Use a thin flat-blade screwdriver to loosen the cover in the marked area.
- › Open the cover and slide it out.



- › Use a screwdriver to loosen the battery in the marked area.
- › Replace the battery.
- › Insert the cover and push it until it audibly locks into place.

Heated windscreen

Usage

Windscreen heating is used for defrosting or ventilating the windscreen.

Conditions

✓ The engine is running.

✓ The outside temperature is below about 35ºC.

Operation

Rear window heating
› Press the button.

Windscreen heating
› Tap the button on the Climatronic.

Or:

› Press the MENU key on the Climatronic panel >, tap in the Infotainment screen.

Windscreen heating switches off automatically after some time.

If the engine is switched off with the heating switched on and started again within approximately 10 minutes, the heating will continue.

Settings

Automatic windscreen heating
The windscreen heater switches on automatically if the windscreen could fog up.

This function is set in the following menu in the Infotainment system.

› Press the MENU button on the Climatronic control panel >, tap in the Infotainment screen.

Or:

› MENU > > > on the Infotainment screen.

Troubleshooting

The indicator light in the button or below the button flashes
The heating does not work as the battery charging level is low.

Seat heating and ventilation

What you should be mindful of

⚠ **WARNING**
Risk of burns!
▶ Do not switch on the seat heater for persons with limited perception of pain or temperature.

ⓘ **NOTICE**
Risk of seat damage!
▶ Do not kneel on the seats or otherwise puncture them.
▶ Do not turn on the heater in the following situations.
  ▶ The seat is not occupied.
  ▶ There are objects on the seat, such as a child seat.
  ▶ There are additional seat covers or protective covers on the seat.

Conditions

✓ The engine is running.

Operation

Depending on the equipment, the front seats can be heated or heated and ventilated. Outer rear seats can only be heated.

Variant without seat ventilation
› Press the or button.

The seat heating is switched on with maximum heating power. By repeatedly pressing the button, the heating output is reduced until it is switched off.

The output level of the heating is indicated by the number of illuminated indicator lights in the button or in the Infotainment screen.

Variant with seat ventilation
› Press the or button.

The Infotainment screen displays a menu for operating the front seat heater and ventilation.

› Set the heating output / ventilation level.

ⓘ If the seat heating and ventilation are switched on at the same time, the heating output / ventilation level can only be set in the infotainment screen.

Display of the heating output / ventilation level in the button

–	Seat heating switched on
–	
–	
–	Seat ventilation switched on
–	
–	
–	Seat heating and ventilation switched on
–	
–	

If the engine is switched off with the heating / ventilation switched on and started again within approximately 10 minutes, the heating / ventilation will continue according to the setting before the engine was switched off.

Settings

Lock the heating output of the rear seat heating

› To turn the function on or off, press the MENU button on the Climatronic > REAR/REAR in the Infotainment screen.

Or:

› MENU > ❄ > REAR/Tap on REAR in the Infotainment screen.

When the function is switched on, the heating output can only be reduced.

The function also blocks the possibility of setting the temperature in the display in the rear centre console.

Heated steering wheel

Conditions

✓ The engine is running.

Operation

› Press the button on the multifunction steering wheel.

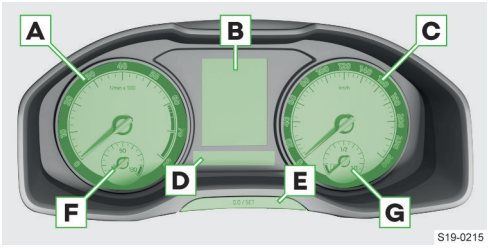
The seat heating is switched on with maximum heating power. By repeatedly pressing the button, the heating output is reduced until it is switched off.

Driver information system

Analogue instrument cluster

Overview

Overview of the instrument cluster display



A Tachometer with indicator lights

B Display

C Speedometer with indicator lights

D Bar with indicator lights

E Multifunction button:
- ▸ Set the time.
- ▸ Reset (trip) odometer.
- ▸ Display the distance travelled and the days until the next service date.

F Coolant temperature display

G Fuel level indicator

NOTICE

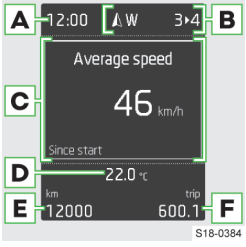
Risk of serious damage to the engine and the exhaust system!

▸ **Never run the fuel tank completely empty!**

In poor visibility and with dipped headlights off, the brightness of the instrument cluster lighting is reduced to remind the driver to turn on the light.

Display overview

Depending on the equipment, the following information is shown on the display.



A Time

B Directional display
Gear engaged / gear recommendation
Selector lever positions of the automatic transmission
Traffic signs detected

C Menu, indicator lights and information

D Outside temperature
❄ or ❄ - low outside temperature

E Total distance travelled

F Trip - Distance travelled after resetting the memory

Overview of the main menu items

- Driving data » page 67.
- Assistants - Activate / deactivate assistance systems.
- Navigation - e.g. show driving recommendations, compass, destination list.
- Audio - Using radio and media.
- Telephone - call list, accept or reject incoming call.
- Vehicle - Vehicle condition » page 68.
- Lap timer - stopwatch » page 69 .

Operation

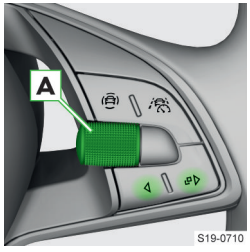
Operation via the control lever



A **Press** - Switch between menu items / set values
Hold - Display the main menu

B **Press** - Confirm menu item

Operation via the multifunction steering wheel



A **Turn** - Switch between menu items / set values
Press - Confirm menu item

◁ **Press** - Return one level higher in the menu
Hold - Display the main menu

Press - Show previous menu (if one was selected) / Show phone menu

Settings

Set language

The language is set in the following menu in the Infotainment system.

MENU > ⚙

Reset the odometer

0.0/SET › Briefly press the button in the instrument cluster.

Setting the time

0.0/SET › Press and hold the button in the instrument cluster until the menu item *Time* is displayed.

› Release the button, the display shows the hour setting.
› Press the button repeatedly and set the hours.
› Wait 4 seconds, the display shows the minute setting.
› Press the button repeatedly and set the minutes.
› Wait 4 seconds, the display shows the initial setting.

The time is set in the Infotainment system in the following menu.

MENU > ⚙

Set the brightness of the instrument cluster lighting

The brightness of the instrument lighting is automatically adjusted depending on the given lighting conditions.

When low beam is switched on, the brightness of the instruments lighting can be adjusted in the following menu in the Infotainment system.

CAR > ⚙ > ☼

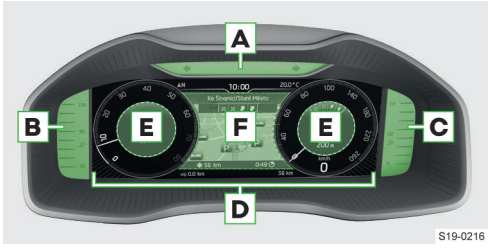
Or:

MENU > 🚗 > ⚙ > ☼

Digital instrument cluster

Overview

Overview of the instrument cluster display



A Bar with indicator lights

B Coolant temperature display

C Fuel level indicator

D Display

E Additional information

F Central display area

NOTICE

Risk of serious damage to the engine and the exhaust system!

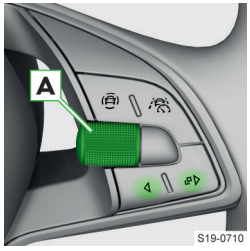
▸ **Never run the fuel tank completely empty!**

Overview of the main menu items

- Driving data » page 67.

- Assistants - Activate / deactivate assistance systems.
- Navigation - e.g. show driving recommendations, compass, destination list.
- Audio - Using radio and media.
- Telephone - call list, accept or reject incoming call.
- Vehicle - Vehicle condition » page 68.
- Lap timer - stopwatch » page 69 .

Operation



A **Rotate** - Switch between menu items / set values / change map scale manually

Press - Confirm menu item

Turn and press - Switch on automatic change of map scale

◁ **Press** - Return one level higher in the menu

Hold - Display the main menu

Depending on the equipment:

- **Press** - Change the version of the display
- **Hold** - Display the pre-set options menu with additional information

Settings

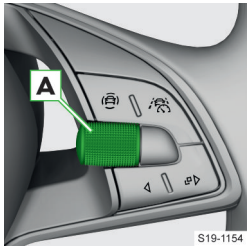
Set language

The language is set in the following menu in the Infotainment system.

MENU > ⚙

Reset the odometer in the instrument cluster

› Select *Trip* in the menu in the instrument cluster display



A **Rotate** - Select entry

Press - Confirm entry

Hold - Reset counter

Setting the time

The time is set in the following menu in the Infotainment system.

MENU > ⚙

Set the brightness of the instrument cluster lighting

The brightness is adjusted automatically according to the given lighting conditions.

The brightness is adjusted with the dipped beam switched on in the infotainment in the following menu.

CAR > ⚙ > ☼

Or:

MENU > 🚗 > ⚙ > ☼

Set the variant of the display

› Press the ▱▷ button on the multifunction steering wheel to change the variant of the display presentation.

Select the variants shown

› Press and hold the ▱▷ button on the multifunction steering wheel.

› Select and confirm the menu item for the display variants.

› Select and confirm one of the following variants of the display.



A Classic display

B Extended display

C Modern display

D Basic display

E Sporty display (depending on equipment)

Select to display additional information

› Press and hold the ▱▷ button on the multifunction steering wheel.

› Select and confirm one of the following pre-selection options (the scope of the pre-selection options depends on the infotainment type).

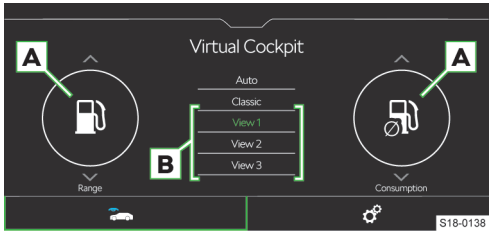
- **Auto** - Information depending on the selected driving mode
- **Classic** - Information about the gear selected and the current speed.
- Adjustable pre-selection options.

Setting the pre-selection option for the display of additional information
The pre-selection option for displaying additional information is set in the Infotainment system in the following menu.

CAR › 🚗 › Menu item for the virtual cockpit

Or:

MENU › 🚗 › 🚗 › Menu item for the virtual cockpit



› Select the desired additional information in areas A.
› Hold the desired function area for the pre-selection option in the area B to save the selection (the scope of the pre-set options depends on the type of Infotainment).

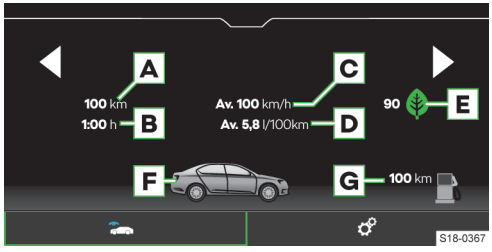
Driving data

Overview

The driving data display works with the ignition switched on.

In the instrument cluster display
Depending on the equipment, the display of the instrument cluster shows information such as speed, fuel consumption, range, etc.

In Infotainment



A Travelled distance
B Driving time
C Average speed
D Average fuel consumption
E Driving economy evaluation - **DriveGreen** function (depending on the Infotainment type) » page 172
F Graphic fuel gauge - If the expected range is less than 300 km, the vehicle slowly approaches the symbol ⛽
G Range

Storage
The system saves the driving data in the following memories.

Since start
▸ Driving data from the time of switching on the ignition until the ignition is switched off again is stored in the memory. If the journey is interrupted for more than 2 hours, the memory will be reset.

Long-term
▸ The driving data of all trips up to a total of 99 hours and 59 minutes driving time or 9999 km driving distance are stored in the memory. If one of the listed values is exceeded, the memory is reset.

Since refuel
▸ Driving data from the last fuel tank are stored in the memory. The memory is reset the next time the tank is filled.

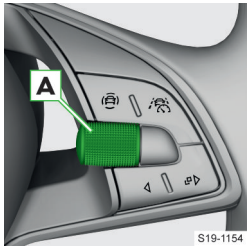
Operation

Display driving data in the display of the instrument cluster via the operating lever
› Select the menu item for the driving data in the main menu in the instrument cluster display.



A **Press** - Select entry / set values
B **Press** - Confirm entry

Display driving data in the display of the instrument cluster via the multi-functional steering wheel
› Select the menu item for the driving data in the main menu in the instrument cluster display.



A **Turn** - Select entry / set values
Press - Confirm entry

Display drive data in the Infotainment
The driving data is displayed in the following menu in the infotainment system.

CAR › 🚗 › Menu item for driving data

Or:

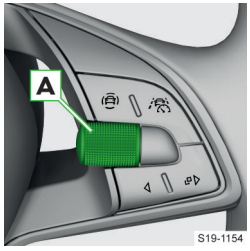
MENU > > > Menu item for driving data

Select and reset the memory for driving data in the display of the instrument cluster using the control lever



› To **select** the memory for the displayed driving data, press button A repeatedly.
› To **reset** the memory, hold down the A button.

Select memory for driving data in the display of the instrument cluster via the multifunction steering wheel and reset it



› To **select** the memory for the displayed driving data, press the setting wheel A repeatedly.
› To **reset** the memory, hold the setting wheel A.

Select memory in infotainment
To select the memory, use the functional areas ◀ ▶ in the following menu in the infotainment system.

CAR > > Menu item for driving data

Or:

MENU > > > Menu item for driving data

Reset memory in infotainment
The memory is reset in the following menu in the infotainment system.

CAR > >

Or:

MENU > > >

Settings

Select the driving data to be displayed
The driving data to be displayed is selected in the following Infotainment menu.

CAR > >

Or:

MENU > > >

Set units
The units are set in the following Infotainment menu.

CAR > >

Or:

MENU > > >

Speed limit warning

Usage

The system offers the possibility to set a speed limit beyond which an acoustic warning signal will sound and the following warning message appears in the display of the instrument cluster.

Settings

Setting the speed limit
› Select and confirm the menu item *Warning at* or (depending on display type).
› **When the vehicle is stationary**, set the desired speed limit and confirm.
› **While driving**, drive at the desired speed and confirm it as the speed limit.

Resetting the speed limit
› Select and confirm the menu item *Warning at* or (depending on display type).
› To reset the speed limit, confirm the stored value.

If the journey is interrupted for more than 2 hours, the set limit is deactivated, but the set value remains stored.

Vehicle status

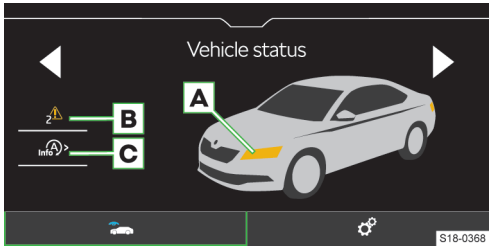
Display

The vehicle status is displayed in the following menu in the infotainment system.

CAR > > Menu item for vehicle status

Or:

MENU > > > Menu item for vehicle status



A Vehicle areas shown in colour indicate associated warning messages

B ✓ No notification
⚠ Warning messages regarding the vehicle condition and their quantity

C Display of information about the status of the START-STOP system

- Activation / deactivation of the information regarding the messages of the START-STOP system in another screen display

Functionality

In the event of a system fault, messages relating to the relevant fault are shown on the instrument cluster display when the ignition is switched on.

Malfunctions can also be displayed in infotainment.

As long as the malfunctions have not been remedied, the warning messages are displayed again and again. After the first display of the message, only the indicator lights remain on (Hazard) or (Warning) is displayed.

Stopwatch in the instrument cluster

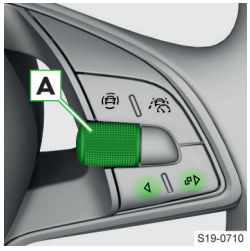
Usage

The function Laptimer offers the possibility to use up to 11 lap times, e.g. when driving on a race track, to measure and display in the display of the instrument cluster.

Operation

› Select *Lap timer* in the menu item in the instrument cluster display.

Displaying functions via the multifunction steering wheel



A **Turn** - Select entry / set values
Press - Confirm entry

Displaying functions via the control lever



A **Press** - Select entry / set values
B **Press** - Confirm entry

Overview of functions

- **Start** - Start the time measurement manually / continue the interrupted measurement
- **Since start** - Start the timer automatically upon start-up
- **Statistics** - Evaluate and reset the measured times
  - Fastest - The fastest lap
  - Slowest - The slowest lap
  - Average - the average lap time
  - Overall time - the total of all the lap times
  - Reset - Reset all measured times
- **New lap** - Start measuring the next lap time
- **Split time** - show the split time
- **Stop** - Interrupt the time measurement
  - Continue - Continue measurement of the current lap time
  - New lap - Start measuring the next lap time
  - Abort lap - Cancel the time measurement without saving the measured time
  - Exit - Cancel the time measurement and save the measured time

Stopwatch in the Infotainment

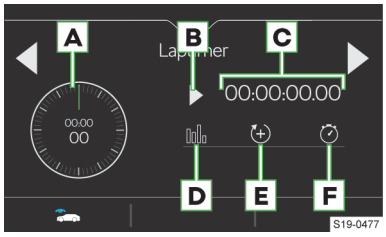
Overview

The stopwatch display is shown in the menu in the Infotainment.

CAR > > *Sport*

Or:

MENU > > > *Sport*



A Overall time

B ▶ Start the measurement
Stop the measurement

C Current lap time

D Evaluate/reset split times
End the measurement (the current lap time is not stored)

E Start measurement of the next lap time

F The split time is briefly shown in the display A
End the measurement (the current lap time is stored)

Information Sport

Settings

The Sport information display is shown in the menu in the Infotainment.

CAR > > Sport

Or:

MENU > > > Sport

A swipe of the finger vertically across the screen allows three of the following displays to be shown.

- Charge pressure.
- Acceleration.
- Output.
- Coolant temperature.
- Oil temperature.

Personalization

Usage

The personalization feature allows each vehicle key to be assigned a user account.

In the user account, settings can be assigned regarding e.g. light function, driver's seat and exterior mirror position, assistance systems, radio, navigation, etc.

Functionality

After opening the driver's door, the personalized functions are set according to the user account assigned to the key with which the vehicle was unlocked.

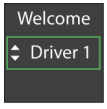
There are three user accounts and a guest account.

A change in the set personalized functions is automatically saved in the active user account.

Change user account

⚠ **WARNING**
Risk of accident!
- Carry out the account change while the vehicle is stationary.

In the instrument cluster display



› Switching to a different user account is in the instrument cluster display within 10 seconds after turning on the ignition.

In Infotainment

› The system settings are made in the Infotainment in the following menu.

CAR > > Vehicle status >

Or:

MENU > > > Vehicle status >

The account changes e.g. when changing drivers while traveling. This prevents unwanted resetting of the personalized functions in the active user account.

Settings

This function is set in the following menu in the Infotainment system.

CAR > >

Or:

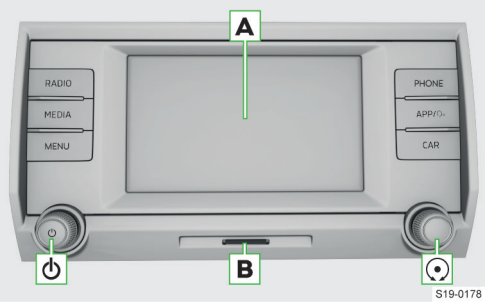
MENU > > >

- **Key assignment** - Options for assigning the recognized key to the active user account
  - Manual - the key must be assigned to the active account manually
  - Automatic - detected key automatically assigned to a different account of the active account
- **Assign key to current user account** - Manual assignment of the key to the active account

To maintain the assignment of the selected user account to the selected key, we recommend that you select the manual key assignment.

Infotainment Swing

Infotainment overview



A Touchscreen

B SD card slot

⏻ Control dial left
- ▸ **Press:** Switch Infotainment on/off
- ▸ **Turn:** Set volume

⊙ Control dial right
- ▸ **Press:** Confirm menu item
- ▸ **Turn:** select menu item/set value

RADIO **Radio** menu

MEDIA **Media** menu

MENU Overview of Infotainment menus

PHONE **Phone** menu

APP/ **SmartLink** menu
- ▸ **Press:** Display menu
- ▸ **Hold:** Switch voice control of the SmartLink application on / off

CAR Information about vehicle settings

System

Limitation

For safety reasons, operation of some Infotainment functions while driving is not possible or is restricted.

The Infotainment system indicates this by means of a message in the screen.

Basic settings

Set basic functions
The following Infotainment functions are set in the menu **SETUP**.

- ▸ Time and date.
- ▸ Language.
- ▸ Units.
- ▸ Restore factory settings.

Sound settings
The Infotainment sound is set in the menu **SETUP** > *Sound*.

The following menu items can be set up.

- ▸ Setting the maximum volume when switching on the Infotainment.
- ▸ Volume setting of the individual Infotainment functions.
- ▸ Setting the equalizer.
- ▸ Adjusting the volume ratio.

Depending on the equipment, the following advanced sound settings can be set.

- ▸ Setting the sound system.
- ▸ Setting the sound space optimisation for the driver.
- ▸ Switch on / off and set the sub-woofer volume.

Configuration wizard
The configuration wizard helps to set certain Infotainment functions.

The configuration wizard is automatically displayed if the ignition is switched on and if there are at least two menu items that have not been set after switching on the Infotainment or if a new user account has been selected.

› To **switch off the automatic display**, when the configuration wizard is displayed tap *Don't show again* .

› For **manual display**, tap **SETUP** > *Configuration wizard* .

Disconnect the connected USB device safely

NOTICE
Risk of damage to the data on the connected device! To safely disconnect/remove the device, proceed as follows.

› **SETUP** > *Tap Remove safely* .

› Select the desired device.

› Disconnect/remove the device.

If it is not possible to safely disconnect the device, switch off the Infotainment and disconnect the device.

Troubleshooting

Infotainment not responding
The Infotainment system must be restarted.

› Press ⏻ for more than 10 s.

› Wait for the restart to complete.

System update

We recommend having the system update carried out by a specialist company.

The system update ensures optimal function of the Infotainment system, e.g. compatibility with new phones.

Determine system version

› **SETUP** > *Tap System information* .

Manual update

Information about available updates can be found on the ŠKODA website.

http://go.skoda.eu/updateportal

› Check for available updates.
› Save the update to a USB source.
› Insert the USB source into the front USB input.
› **SETUP** > *Tap System information* > *Tap Update software* .
› Select the connected USB device as the update source.
› Go to the update file and confirm the update.
› Confirm any messages and wait for the update process to complete.

Screen

Overview



A Status bar
B Bar with the functional surfaces of the displayed menu
C Other pages of the menu

Operation

NOTICE
Danger of screen damage!
▸ The Infotainment screen is operated **by touching it lightly with your finger**.

In principle, operation by touch is identical to the operation of a mobile phone.

The following operating modes are specific to the Infotainment system.

Settings

The following basic screen functions are set up in the menu **SETUP** >. *Screen*.

▸ Screen brightness level.
▸ Turning off the screen.
▸ Display the time.
▸ Confirmation tones and animations.

Infotainment keyboard

Keypad overview

The arrangement of the keypad characters depends on the Infotainment language that has been set.

In Infotainment, the following types are used, depending on the context.

▸ Alphanumeric.
▸ Numeric.
▸ Keypad for input.
▸ Keypad for search.

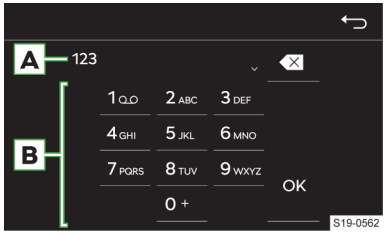


Keypad example

A Input line
- ▸ ⌫ Delete characters before the cursor
  - ▸ **Tap:** delete the last character
  - ▸ **Hold:** delete all characters in sequence
- ▸ ☰ Show list of searched entries

B Keypad functional surfaces
- ▸ ⇧ Change to lowercase
- ▸ ⇧ Switch to the first capital letter, followed by lowercase letters
- ▸ **ABC/АБВ** Switch to the language keypad
- ▸ **123** Switch to the numeric and character keypad
- ▸ 🌐 Show additional keypad languages
- ▸ ␣ Insert a space
- ▸ **Hold:** Show additional character variants
- ▸ < Move cursor to the left
- ▸ > Move cursor to the right
- ▸ OK Confirm the characters that have been entered

Numeric keypad



Keypad example

A Input line

- ⌫ Delete characters before the cursor
  - **Tap:** delete the last character
  - **Hold:** delete all characters

B Keypad functional surfaces

- OK Confirm the characters that have been entered

ⓘ If context-sensitive, alphanumeric characters can be entered by holding a functional surface with a digit.

Operation

The Infotainment keypad is used to enter characters, letters and numbers.

The keypad will be **automatically displayed** when Infotainment prompts for characters.

Find
During the character input, a search for corresponding entries takes place.

The entry to be searched can be entered, including diacritics.

The keypad will only provide characters that match the stored entries.

› To **display the searched entries**, tap ≔.

Show additional keypad languages
To use the additional keypad languages, the desired languages must be set first.

› Tap 🌐 or repeatedly tap the flag symbol until the desired language keypad is displayed.

Further character variants
› Press and hold the sign with the symbol A.
› Select the desired symbol.

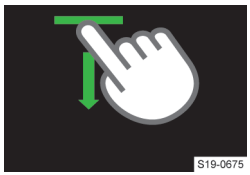
Setting up additional keyboard languages

› **SETUP** > *Additional keyboard languages* .

Control centre

Overview

Display of the control centre



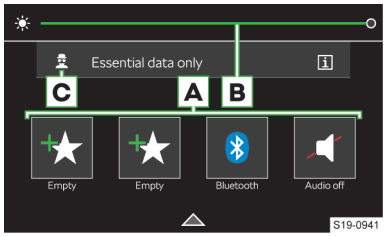
› Press the bar at the top of the screen and drag down.

Closing the control centre
› Tap on ▲.

Or:

› Wait 5 seconds.

Control Centre
The Infotainment control centre can be used for quick access to the following functions.



A Preferred features

B Setting up the instrument and key lighting

C Setting up the level of protection for personal data

Settings

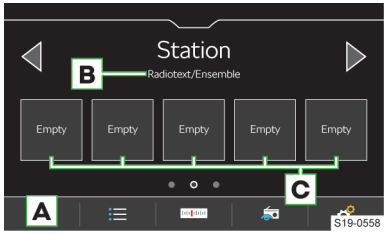
› To **display** editing mode hold any function surface of the preferred feature.
› To **add** the preferred feature, move the desired feature from the top of the screen to the functional surface at the bottom of the screen.
› To **close** edit mode, tap on ×.

Radio

Overview

Display main menu
› Tap **RADIO**.

Analogue and digital radio reception



A Select frequency range

B Depending on the frequency range
FM: Radio text
DAB: Name of the station group

C Station buttons for preferred stations

List of available stations

Manual station search

Display information about the station (applies to DAB)

Settings

Infotainment supports digital radio reception in DAB and DAB+ formats.

List of available stations

› To **display** tap .

Played station

★ Stations stored on the station buttons

TP A traffic radio station is set

DAB signal is not available

The DAB station reception is not stable

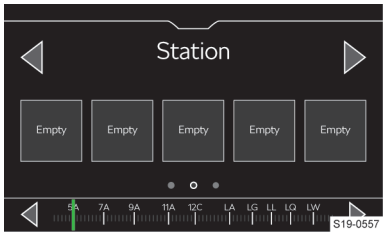
Filtering the stations in the list according to the programme type.
To filter the FM stations, the RDS and AF function must be switched on.
To filter the DAB stations, the alphabetical sorting function of the stations must be activated.

Update station list manually

Information about the program type being broadcast and the type of regional station can be displayed in the FM station list.

Operation

Select station



› Tap ◁ or ▷ at the top of the screen.

SCAN function
The function plays receivable stations of the selected frequency range in succession for a few seconds each.

› To **start automatic play** press > Scan or the right rotary control .

› To **end automatic play** press SCAN or the right rotary control .

Find stations manually

› In the Radio main menu, tap .

› To **search in sequence**, tap ◁ or ▷ next to the displayed frequency range scale.

Or:

› Hold down the scroll mark on the frequency range scale and move it to the desired value.

Or:

› Turn the right rotary control .

Limitation

▸ Infotainment supports digital radio reception in DAB and DAB+ formats.

▸ Parking garages, tunnels, tall buildings or mountains can restrict radio reception.

▸ In the rear side windows, there are antennas for receiving the radio signal.

Covering the windows with foils or metal-coated stickers can impair the reception of the radio signal.

▸ The ŠKODA AUTO company does not assume any responsibility for the availability, correct function or broadcast information of the RDS service.

Settings

Save the station currently being listened to as a favourite from the Radio main menu

› Hold the desired station key for preferred stations until the station is stored.

Save station to favourites from the list of available stations
Applies to AM, FM and DAB frequency ranges.

› Hold the line with the name of the desired station.
› Tap the desired preset button.

Delete favourites
› In the **Radio** main menu , tap ⚙ › *Delete presets*.
› To delete **one** preset button for preferred stations, tap the desired station button and confirm the deletion.
› To delete **all** preset buttons for preferred stations, tap *All* and confirm the deletion.

Buttons ◁ ▷
Applies to AM, FM and DAB frequency ranges.

The variant for **changing stations** using buttons ◁ ▷ in the **Radio** main menu is set as follows.

› In the **Radio** main menu, tap ⚙ › *Arrow buttons:*.
› Choose the change variant.

Traffic reception (TP) for FM stations on/off
Applies to the FM frequency range.

› In the **Radio** main menu, tap ⚙ › *Traffic program (TP)*.

Switch traffic reception for DAB stations on/off
Applies to the DAB frequency range.

› In the **Radio** main menu, turn on menu item ⚙ › *Traffic Radio (TP)*.
› In the **Radio** main menu, tap ⚙ › *Advanced settings* › *DAB traffic programme announcements (TP)* on/off.

Assign the station logo from an external source
Applies to AM, FM and DAB frequency ranges.

Infotainment offers the option to assign logos from the pictures on an external source to the station buttons.

For station logos, images in jpg, png format with a maximum resolution of 400x240 pixels can be used.

› In the main menu **Radio** tap on ⚙ › *Station logos* .
› Tap the desired station button.
› Select the external source with the logo.
› Find the desired logo and confirm.

Delete station logos
Applies to AM, FM and DAB frequency ranges.

› In the **Radio** main menu, tap ⚙ › *Station logos:*.
› To delete **a logo**, tap the desired preset button and confirm the deletion.
› To delete **all** logos, tap on *All* and confirm the deletion.

Turn on/off radio text reception
Applies to the FM and DAB frequency ranges.

When the function is switched on and station presets are displayed, detailed information about the broadcast content of the FM station being listened to, or the name of the station group for the DAB station, is displayed.

› In the **Radio** main menu, tap ⚙ › *Radio text*.

Switch automatic frequency control (AF) on/off
Applies to the FM frequency range.

When the function is switched on and the signal of the FM station currently being listened to is weak, Infotainment automatically sets the same station to a different frequency with a better signal.

› In the **Radio** main menu, tap on ⚙ › *Advanced settings* › *Automatic frequency control (AF)*.

Sort stations in the list of available stations
Applies to the FM frequency range.

▶ In the **Radio** main menu, tap on ⚙ › *Advanced settings* › *Sort station list:*.
▶ Select the sorting of stations in alphabetical order or by group.

Automatic change of frequency to a regionally linked FM station
Applies to the FM frequency range.

Infotainment provides the option of automatically switching to a regionally linked FM station in case of signal loss of the FM station being listened to.

› In the **Radio** main menu, tap on ⚙ › *Advanced settings* › *RDS Regional:*.
› Select one of the following menu items.
▶ *Fixed* - If there is a loss of signal, another station must be set manually.
▶ *Automatic* - automatic selection of the station with the best signal reception.

If reception is lost in the given region, Infotainment will automatically set another available region.

Switch RDS on/off
Applies to the FM frequency range.

The menu item is only available for some countries.

› In the main menu **Radio** tap on ⚙ › *Advanced settings* › *Radio Data System (RDS)* .

If the **RDS function is disabled**, the following menu items in **FM station** settings are not available.

▶ Traffic programme (TP).
▶ Radio text.
▶ RDS Regional.
▶ Automatic frequency change (AF).

Switch additional DAB announcements on/off
Applies to the DAB frequency range.

When the function is switched on, other announcements are received as traffic announcements. For example, weather news, sports reports, financial news, etc.

› In the **Radio** main menu, tap on ⚙ > *Advanced settings* > *Other DAB announcements*.

Switch automatic program tracking of a DAB station on / off
Applies to the DAB frequency range.

When the function is switched on and the DAB station is lost, Infotainment automatically changes to the same station with a better signal in a different DAB station group.

› In the main menu **Radio** tap on ⚙ > *Advanced settings* > *DAB - DAB program tracking* .

Turn on/off automatic switching from a DAB station to the same FM station
Applies to the DAB frequency range.

When the function is switched on and the DAB station being listened to is lost, Infotainment automatically changes to the same FM station. The symbol (FM) is displayed after the station name.

When the corresponding DAB station can be received again, the station automatically changes from FM to DAB.

› In the main menu **Radio** tap on ⚙ > *Advanced settings* > *Automatic DAB - FM switching* .

Media

What you should be mindful of

- Do not save any important data or that which has not been backed up on the connected audio sources. ŠKODA assumes no responsibility for lost or damaged files or connected audio sources.
- When changing or connecting an audio source, this may cause sudden changes in volume. Reduce the volume before changing or connecting an audio source.
- When connecting an audio source, the source information messages can be displayed. These messages must be observed and, if necessary, confirmed.
- The national copyright laws that apply in your country must be observed.

Overview

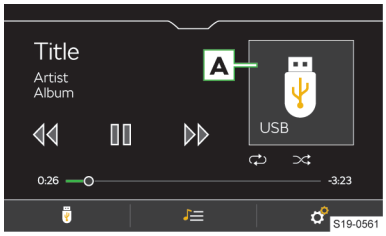
Display menu
› Tap **MEDIA**.



A Select source
Manage files / multimedia database
⚙ Settings

Operation

Operation - Basics



A Album image / symbol of the connected source
Tap: display available albums
▷ **Tap:** start playback
▯▯ **Tap:** pause
◁◁ **Within 3 seconds of starting playback, tap:** play the previous song
◁◁ **After 3 seconds from the start of playback, tap** to play the current title from the beginning
◁◁ **Hold:** fast rewind within the title
▷▷ **Tap:** play the next song
▷▷ **Hold:** fast forward within the title

Movement within the title is also possible by dragging the finger over the timeline.

Extended operation
↻1 Turn repeat playback of the current track on/off
↻ Turn repeat playback of the current album/folder on/off
⤮ Turn random playback of the current album/folder on/off

Limitation

NOTICE
The availability of some media operation functions is dependent on the connected source and the software being used, e.g. Bluetooth®.

Settings

Switch track playback including subfolders on / off
› In the main menu, tap **Media** ⚙ › *Mix / repeat including subfolders* .

Traffic
› To **turn on/off** the traffic monitoring during the playback of media files, go to the **Media** main menu and tap on ⚙ › *Traffic programme (TP)*.

Safely disconnect the connected device

NOTICE
Risk of damage to the data on the connected device! To safely disconnect/remove the device, proceed as follows.
› In the main menu, tap **Media** ⚙ › *Remove safely:* .
› Select the desired device.
› Disconnect/remove the device.

If it is not possible to safely disconnect the device, switch off the Infotainment and disconnect the device.

Bluetooth® player
Infotainment allows audio files of a connected Bluetooth® player to play using the A2DP and AVRCP audio profile.

With Infotainment, multiple devices can be paired using Bluetooth®, but only one of them can be used as a Bluetooth® player.

› For **connecting the Bluetooth® player**, pair and connect the device via Bluetooth®.
› In the **Media** main menu , tap on ⚙ › *Bluetooth* › *paired devices*.
› In the list, choose the device with the symbol ♫.

If a device is connected to Infotainment using Apple CarPlay or Android Auto, then it cannot be connected using Bluetooth®.

SD card

NOTICE
Risk of damaging the SD card reader!

▸ Do not use SD cards with a broken slide for write protection.

› To **insert** the SD card, with the bevelled corner to the right, push into the slot in the external module until it snaps into place.
› To **remove**, first disconnect the SD card safely. To do so, in the main menu tap **Media** ⚙ › *Remove safely:* and select the SD card.
› Press on the inserted SD memory card.

The SD card moves to the eject position.

NOTICE
When using an SD card with an adapter, vehicle vibrations might cause the card to fall out of the adapter.

USB device
› To **connect**, insert the USB device into the appropriate port.

Use USB ports that support data transfer to play audio files.

› To **disconnect** disconnect the USB device first. To do so, in the main menu tap **Media** ⚙ › *Remove safely:* and select the USB device.
› Disconnect the USB device.

A USB device can be connected directly to the USB port or via a connection cable.
We recommend that you use extension cords from ŠKODA original accessories.
USB extension cables or reducers can impair the playback function of the connected device.

Load USB audio source
After connecting the USB device, charging will start automatically when the following conditions are met.

✓ The ignition is switched on.
✓ The USB device allows charging.

The charging efficiency can be different compared to the charging from the usual mains power supply.

Depending on the type of the connected USB device and the frequency of use, the charging current may not be sufficient to charge the battery of the connected device.

Some connected audio sources may not be recognised and cannot be charged.

Supported sources and files

Supported sources

Source	Interface	Type	Specification	File system
SD card	SD card reader	Standard size	SD SDHC SDXC	FAT16 FAT32 exFAT
USB	USB 1.x; 2.x 3.x or higher with USB 2.x support	MSC	USB stick	
			HDD (without special software)	
			USB devices that support the USB Mass Storage protocol	
		MTP	Devices running the Android or Windows Phone operating system that support the Media Transfer Protocol	
		Apple	Devices with an iOS operating system	HFS+
Bluetooth® player	Bluetooth®	-	Bluetooth® protocols A2DP and AVRCP (1.0 - 1.5)	-

The GPT standards (GUID partition table) method structured audio sources are not supported by Infotainment.
Viewing images on the Infotainment screen is not supported by connected Apple devices.

Mobile device compatibility
It is possible to check the ŠKODA web pages to see if Infotainment is compatible with the selected mobile device being tested. This check is carried out by using the following reference or by reading the QR code.

http://go.skoda.eu/compatibility

All information given is incidental and serves as information.

The ŠKODA AUTO company cannot guarantee full functionality and compatibility, e.g. due to a software update of the Infotainment and the mobile devices.

Supported audio files

Compression format	Codec type	File suffix	Max. bit rate [kbps]	Max. sampling rate [kHz]	Multi-channels
MPEG	MPEG 1 Layer 3	mp3	32 - 320	32, 44, 48	Mono, Dual Mono, Stereo, Joint Stereo
	MPEG 2 Layer 3	mp3	8 - 160	16, 22, 24	Mono, Stereo, Joint Stereo
	MPEG 2.5 Layer 3			8, 11, 12	
WMA	Windows Media Audio 9 and 9.1	wma	8 - 384	8, 11, 12, 16, 22, 32, 44, 48	Mono, Stereo, Joint Stereo
	Windows Media Audio 9.2		8 - 320		
	Windows Media Audio 10		8 - 384	32, 44, 48, 96	

Files that are protected by **DRM**- and **iTunes®** methods are not supported by Infotainment.

Supported playlists

Codec type	File suffix
M3U	m3u
PLS	pls
WPL	wpl
ASX	asx

Mobile device management

Overview

Mobile device management

› In the **Telephone** main menu, tap on the function surface ⚙ › *Bluetooth* › *Paired devices* .

The following icons can appear in the list of paired mobile devices for the individual devices.

White icon - the device can be connected as a telephone.
Green icon - the device is connected as a telephone.

White icon - the device can be connected as a Bluetooth® player.
Green icon - the device is connected as a Bluetooth® player.

Possible functions of the connected mobile device

The functions of a device connected via over the **HFP** Bluetooth profile depends on the following connection types.

First device Main telephone	Second device Additional phone
Incoming / outgoing calls Telephone contacts Bluetooth® player	Bluetooth® player

With Infotainment only **a mobile device** can be connected as a Bluetooth® player.

Mobile device and application limitations

Availability of features

The availability of certain features depends on the type of mobile device, as well as that of the applications installed.

Connection restrictions

- With Infotainment, a max. of 20 mobile devices are paired.
- The range of the connection of the mobile device to Infotainment is limited to the passenger compartment.
- After reaching the maximum number, the pairing of the next mobile device will replace that of the device that has not been used for the longest period of time.

Mobile device compatibility

It is possible to check the ŠKODA web pages to see if Infotainment is compatible with the selected mobile device being tested. This check is carried out by using the following reference or by reading the QR code.

http://go.skoda.eu/compatibility

All information given is incidental and serves as information.

The ŠKODA AUTO company cannot guarantee full functionality and compatibility, e.g. due to a software update of the Infotainment and the mobile devices.

Bluetooth® compatibility of mobile devices
Due to the large number of mobile devices, it is not possible to guarantee total Bluetooth® compatibility with Infotainment. Bluetooth® compatibility depends on the Bluetooth® version as well as the implementation of Bluetooth® protocols by the manufacturer of the mobile device.

Applications in mobile devices
Mobile devices can be used to install applications that allow you to view additional information on the Infotainment screen, or to operate the Infotainment system.

Due to the variety of applications, as well as their ongoing development, the available applications may not function on all mobile devices. ŠKODA AUTO assumes no liability for their proper functioning.

The scope of available applications and their functionality is dependent on the type of Infotainment, as well as the vehicle and country.

Information about the ŠKODA applications
Detailed information on the ŠKODA applications can be found on the website after reading the following QR code or using the link.

http://go.skoda.eu/mobile-apps

Connection set-up

Connect a mobile device to Infotainment
› Turn on the ignition.
› Turn on the Bluetooth® on the mobile device.
› Turn on the Infotainment Bluetooth® **SETUP** > *Bluetooth* > *Bluetooth* .
› Switch on Bluetooth® visibility of the Infotainment **SETUP** > *Bluetooth* > *Visibility:* > *Visible.* .
› Find the Bluetooth® devices available in the mobile device.
› Select the Infotainment Bluetooth® unit.

The name of the unit can be found by tapping **SETUP** > *Bluetooth* > *Name:* .
› Confirm the PIN; enter it if necessary and then confirm.

The mobile device is connected to the Infotainment or just paired, depending on the number of devices that are already connected.

Connect Infotainment to a non-paired mobile device
› Turn on the ignition.
› Turn on the Bluetooth® on the mobile device.
› Turn on the Infotainment Bluetooth® **SETUP** > *Bluetooth* > *Bluetooth* .
› **SETUP** > *Bluetooth* > *Tap Search devices* .
› Ensure the visibility of the device to be connected.
› Select the desired device from the list of Bluetooth® devices.
› Confirm the PIN; enter it if necessary and then confirm.
› If two devices are connected to the Infotainment, select the device to be replaced.

Connect Infotainment to an already paired mobile device
The connection with an already paired mobile device is made automatically after switching on the ignition; if necessary the device can be connected manually as follows.
› Turn on the ignition.
› Turn on the Bluetooth® on the mobile device.
› Turn on the Infotainment Bluetooth® **SETUP** > *Bluetooth* > *Bluetooth* .
› **SETUP** > *Bluetooth* > *Paired devices* .
› In the device list, select the desired device and the Bluetooth® profile.
› Confirm the PIN; enter it if necessary and then confirm.
› If two devices are connected to the Infotainment, select the device to be replaced.

Disconnect from a mobile device
› **SETUP** > *Bluetooth* > *Paired devices* .
› Tap the icon of the Bluetooth® profile of the desired mobile device.

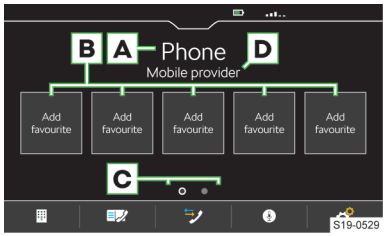
Delete a paired mobile device
› **SETUP** > *Bluetooth* > *Paired devices* .
› To **delete one** mobile device tap 🗑 and confirm the deletion.
› To **delete all** mobile devices tap *Clear all* and confirm the deletion.

Telephone

Phone menu

Display menu
› Tap **PHONE**.

If the menu **Telephone** is not displayed, check whether the mobile device is connected.



A Name of the connected phone
▶ **Tap:** View the list of previously connected phones

B Station buttons for preferred contacts

C Select storage group of the preferred contacts

D Name of the telephone service provider
▶ If the symbol ▷ is displayed in front of the name, roaming is active.

Enter phone number

Contact list

Call lists

Switch on voice control of the connected phone

Settings

Conditions for connecting a telephone with Infotainment

✓ The ignition is switched on.
✓ The Bluetooth® function of the Infotainment and the telephone needs to be switched on.

The Bluetooth® function of the Infotainment is switched on in the menu item **SETUP** > *Bluetooth* > *Bluetooth*.

✓ Visibility of the Infotainment is switched on.

The visibility of the Infotainment is switched on in the menu item **SETUP** > *Bluetooth* > *Visibility:*> *Visible*.

✓ The telephone is within signal range of the Infotainment's Bluetooth® unit.
✓ The telephone is compatible with Infotainment.
✓ Through Infotainment, no mobile device can be connected using Apple CarPlay.

Telephone operation

Enter telephone number
› In the **Telephone** main menu, tap .
› Enter the telephone number using the numeric keypad that is displayed.

The displayed numeric keypad can also be used for searching for contacts.

If, for example, the digits 32 are entered, contacts with the letter sequence DA, FA, EB etc. are displayed next to the numeric keypad.

List of telephone contacts
The list of telephone contacts is imported from the connected main telephone.

› To **display** the contact list in the **telephone** main menu, tap .
› To **find** details within the list, tap *Find*.
› Enter the details you wish to find.
› To **establish a connection** with a contact, tap the functional area showing the desired contact.

If a contact has multiple telephone numbers, select the telephone number from the displayed list.

› To display the **details** for a contact, tap >.

Telephone call
Depending on the context of the telephone conversation, the following functions can be selected.

End connection set-up / reject incoming call / end call
Answer an incoming call / Return to the call on hold
Switch the ringer off / on
Hold a call
Switch the microphone off / on
Show details of the caller

› To **switch the call from the speakers to the telephone**, go to the **Telephone** main menu and tap on > *Hands-free* .
› To **switch the call tone from the telephone to the speakers**, tap .

Settings of the Infotainment telephone functions

Manage preset buttons for preferred contacts
› To **save** the desired preset button, press and hold.
› Select a contact from the displayed list.
› If the contact contains multiple telephone numbers, choose the desired telephone number.
› To **delete** tap on **Telephone** > *User profile* >*Manage favourites* in the main menu.
› To delete **one** preset, tap on the list entry and confirm the deletion.

Or:

› To delete **all** presets, tap on *Delete all* and confirm the deletion.

Import phone contacts
After first connecting the main telephone with Infotainment, telephone contacts will start to be imported into the Infotainment memory.

Infotainment can import up to 2000 telephone contacts. Each contact can have max. 5 phone numbers included.

Depending on the phone type, it might be necessary to confirm the import.

Update phone contacts
When re-connecting the telephone with Infotainment, an **automatic** update of the list is carried out.

› To update the lists **manually** in the **Telephone** main menu, tap on ⚙ › *User profile* › *Import contacts* .

Sort contacts in the phone book
› In the **Telephone** main menu, tap on ⚙ › *User profile* › *Sort by:*.
› Select the type by which to sort.

Ringer
Some phones do not allow the use of the telephone ringtone; instead, the Infotainment ringtone is used.

› To **set the Infotainment ringer** in the **Telephone** main menu, tap on ⚙ › *User profile* › *Select ringtone*.
› Select the ringtone.

Simultaneous calls
This applies to some countries.

Depending on the connected telephone, it is possible to answer the next incoming call and hold the previous call.

› To **switch on/off** simultaneous calls, tap on **Telephone** ⚙ › *Simultaneous calls* .

SmartLink

Functionality

SmartLink offers the ability to display and operate certified applications from a connected mobile device in the Infotainment screen.

Certification may be conditional upon the use of the latest update to the particular SmartLink application.

Applications include, for example, apps for route guidance, telephoning, listening to music, etc.

Mobile devices can be connected via a USB cable.

Supported connection types
SmartLink supports the following connection types.

▸ Android Auto.
▸ Apple CarPlay.
▸ MirrorLink.

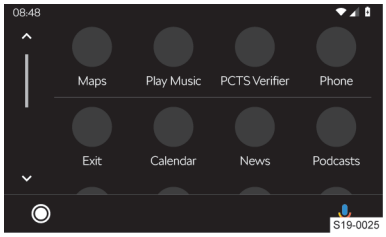
Overview of the SmartLink connection

Menu SmartLink
› Tap **APP**/.



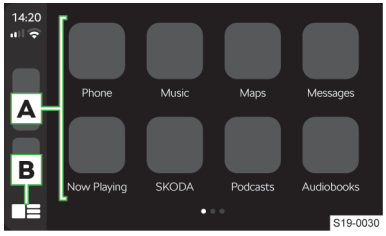
A Previously connected device
B Currently connection device
ⓘ Display information about SmartLink
⊗ Disconnection of the active connection
♫ Disconnection of the active connection
⚙ Settings in SmartLink menu

Android Auto



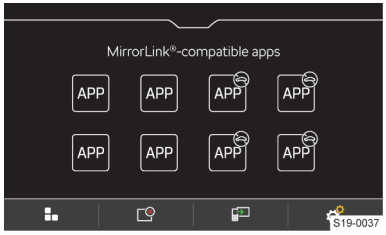
○ Overview of running applications, phone calls, received text messages and the like.
🎙 Switching on voice control (Google Voice)

Apple CarPlay



A List of available applications
B Depending on the duration of operation:
▸ **Tap:** Return to the Apple CarPlay main menu
▸ **Hold:** Turn on voice control (Siri)

MirrorLink



- It is not possible to operate the application while driving
- Return to the SmartLink main menu
- List of running applications
- Display the last running application in the connected mobile device
- Settings

Connection conditions

General connection conditions

✓ The mobile device supports the following SmartLink connection types: Android Auto. Apple CarPlay and MirrorLink.

✓ Mobile devices, as well as the type of SmartLinkconnection, are supported in the respective market.

✓ Some connected mobile devices require the mobile device to be “unlocked”.

Conditions for Android Auto

✓ The device to be connected must have Android AutoSupport.

A list of devices, supported regions and applications that the Android Auto connection supports can be found on the websites of Google Inc..

✓ The Android Auto application needs to be installed on the mobile device.

✓ Some applications require the data connection in the mobile device to be turned on.

Conditions for Apple CarPlay

✓ The device to be connected must have Apple CarPlaySupport.

A list of devices, supported regions and applications that the Apple CarPlay connection supports can be found on the websites of Apple Inc..

✓ Siri voice control is on.

✓ The data connection is switched on in the mobile device.

Conditions for MirrorLink

✓ The device to be connected must have MirrorLinkSupport.

A list of devices and applications that the MirrorLink connection supports can be found on the websites of Car Connectivity Consorcium®.

✓ The MirrorLink application needs to be installed on the mobile device.

✓ Some applications require the data connection in the connected mobile device to be turned on.

Operation

Operation of the running MirrorLink application

< Move the functional areas to the left edge of the screen

> Move the functional areas to the right edge of the screen

∧ Move the functional areas to the top of the screen

∨ Move the functional areas to the bottom of the screen

Return to the MirrorLink main menu

Limitation

Restriction of SmartLink applications while driving

For safety reasons, operation of some SmartLinkapplications while driving is not possible or is restricted.

Functionality restriction of Infotainment with an Android Auto connection

▸ For the duration of the connection, the external device cannot be used as an audio source in the **Media** menu.

▸ By connecting the device, all currently connected Bluetooth® devices will be disconnected and the device will automatically be connected as the main telephone.

▸ For the duration of the connection, no other Bluetooth® devices can be connected to the Infotainment system.

Functionality restriction of Infotainment with an Apple CarPlay connection

▸ For the duration of the connection, the external device cannot be used as an audio source in the **Media** menu.

▸ Connecting the device disconnects all currently connected Bluetooth® devices.

▸ For the duration of the connection, no Bluetooth® devices can be connected to the Infotainment system.

Functionality restriction of Infotainment with an MirrorLink connection

▸ For the duration of the connection, the external device cannot be used as an audio source in the **Media** menu.

▶ By connecting the device, all currently connected Bluetooth® devices will be disconnected and the device will automatically be connected as the main telephone.

Depending on the device to be connected, a connection confirmation may be required.

Settings

Apple CarPlay - Connection via USB
› Turn on the Infotainment.
› Turn on the mobile device.
› Connect the mobile device to the front USB input using a cable.
› Choose to connect via Apple CarPlay.

Apple CarPlay – Disconnection
› In the Apple CarPlay main menu, tap on the “ŠKODA” functional area.
› Tap on ⊗.

Android Auto - Connection via USB
› Turn on the Infotainment.
› Turn on the mobile device.
› Connect the mobile device to the front USB input using a cable.
› Choose to connect via Android Auto.

Android Auto - Disconnection
› In the main menu of Android Auto ⚙ › tap on “Return to ŠKODA”.
› Tap on ⊗.

MirrorLink - Connection via USB
› Turn on the Infotainment.
› Turn on the mobile device.
› Connect the mobile device to the front USB input using a cable.
› Choose to connect through MirrorLink.

MirrorLink - Disconnection
› In the MirrorLink main menu, tap ▪▪.
› Tap on ⊗.

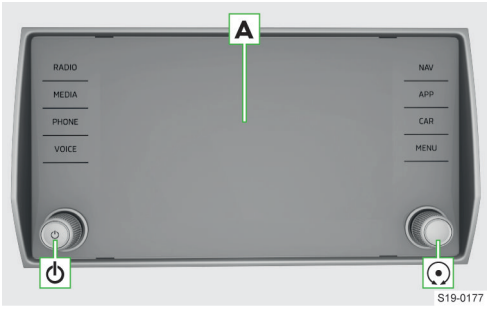
Change to another device / connection type
Infotainment allows you to switch between currently connected devices and the connection type.

› Tap **APP/**.
› Select the desired device or connection type.

Infotainment Bolero

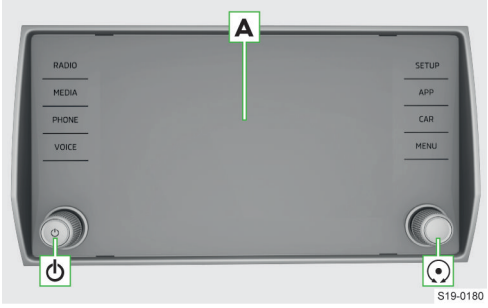
Infotainment overview

Bolero Infotainment system with navigation function



A Touchscreen
⏻ Control dial left
▶ **Press:** Switch Infotainment on/off
▶ **Turn:** Set volume
⊙ Control dial right
▶ **Press:** Confirm menu item
▶ **Turn:** select menu item/set value
RADIO **Radio** menu
MEDIA **Media** menu
PHONE **Phone** menu
VOICE Voice control
NAV **Navigation** menu
APP **SmartLink** menu
CAR Information about vehicle settings
MENU Overview of Infotainment menus

Bolero Infotainment without the navigation function



A Touchscreen
⏻ Control dial left
▶ **Press:** Switch Infotainment on/off

- ▶ **Turn:** Set volume

⊙ Control dial right
- ▶ **Press:** Confirm menu item
- ▶ **Turn:** select menu item/set value

RADIO **Radio** menu

MEDIA **Media** menu

PHONE **Phone** menu

VOICE Voice control

SETUP Infotainment settings

APP **SmartLink** menu

CAR Information about vehicle settings

MENU Overview of Infotainment menus

System

Limitation

For safety reasons, operation of some Infotainment functions while driving is not possible or is restricted.

The Infotainment system indicates this by means of a message in the screen.

Basic settings

Setting basic functions
The following Infotainment functions are set in the MENU > menu.

- ▶ Time and date.
- ▶ Language.
- ▶ Units.
- ▶ Restore factory settings.

Sound settings
The Infotainment sound is set in the menu MENU > .

The following menu items can be set.

- ▶ Setting the equalizer.
- ▶ Adjusting the volume ratio.
- ▶ Volume adjustment of individual Infotainment functions.

  Some are adjustable, for example the following menu items.
  - ▶ Volume adjustment of voice commands.
  - ▶ Setting the maximum volume when Infotainment is turned on.
  - ▶ Speed-dependent volume setting.
  - ▶ Setting the Infotainment to mute with the parking aid switched on.

Depending on the equipment, the following advanced sound settings can be set.

- ▶ Setting space optimisation.
- ▶ Setting the audio profiles according to genre.
- ▶ Adjusting the subwoofer volume.

Configuration wizard
The configuration wizard helps to set certain Infotainment functions.

The configuration assistant is automatically displayed if the ignition is switched on and if there are at least two menu items that have not been set up after switching on the Infotainment.

› To **switch off the automatic display**, when the configuration assistant is displayed tap *Don't show again* .

› For **manual display** tap MENU > > *Configuration wizard* .

Setting the HOME menu

› To **display another page** of the HOME menu, press the screen with two fingers and drag it to the left or right.

To **add the preferred menu**, proceed as follows.

› Tap on an empty functional surface.

Or:

› Press and hold an occupied functional surface and then tap on an empty functional area.

› Select a menu with the desired dimension of the functional surface.

› Tap on × to exit edit mode.

To **remove the preferred menu**, proceed as follows.

› Press an occupied functional surface.

› Tap on .

› Tap on × to exit edit mode.

Setting the MENU
The position of the functional surfaces in the MENU menu can be customized as follows.

› Press and hold the desired functional surface until it is free.

› Move the functional surface to a different position.

Troubleshooting

Infotainment not responding
The Infotainment system must be restarted.

› Press for more than 10 s.

› Wait for the restart to complete.

System update

We recommend having the system update carried out by a specialist company.

The system update ensures optimal function of the Infotainment system, e.g. compatibility with new phones.

Determine system version

› Tap MENU > ⚙ > *System information*.

Install the navigation function

In some countries it is possible to use the Infotainment to extend the function of **Navigation**.

The function is available through the online service **Shop** or from a specialist company.

Screen

Overview



A Status bar

B Bar with the functional surfaces of the displayed menu

C Display of the control centre

D Other pages of the menu

Operation

NOTICE

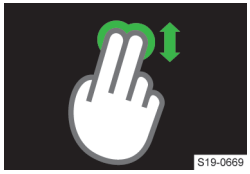
Danger of screen damage!

▸ The Infotainment screen is operated **by touching it lightly with your finger**.

In principle, operation by touch is identical to the operation of a mobile phone.

The following operating modes are specific to the Infotainment system.

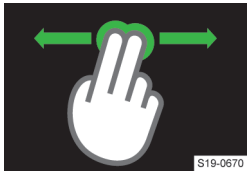
Dragging up or down with two fingers



▸ Quickly review the list of phone contacts.

▸ Change 2D/3D map display.

Dragging left or right with two fingers



▸ Display next page of the HOME menu.

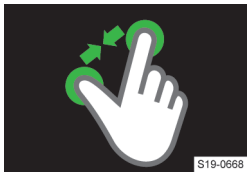
Pulling apart with two fingers



▸ Enlarge image.

▸ Zoom in to the map.

Pulling together with two fingers



▸ Minimize image.

▸ Zoom out of the map.

Turn two fingers

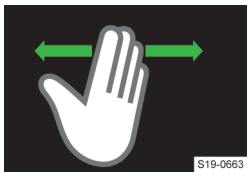


▸ Rotate image.

▸ Rotate the map.

Contactless gesture control

The Infotainment menus marked with the ✋ symbol can be controlled by hand gestures.



› Gesture control is achieved by slowly moving the hand back and forth approximately 8 cm above the lower edge of the screen.

Depending on the setting, a recognized gesture can be confirmed acoustically and animated.

Displaying operation help

› Tap on MENU > ⓘ > ↘.

Settings

The following basic screen functions are set in the MENU > ⚙ > *Screen* menu.

▸ Brightness level of the screen.

▸ Switch off the screen.

- Display the time.
- Confirmation sounds and animations.

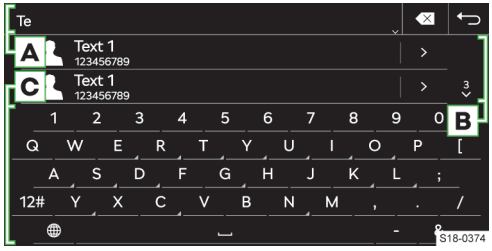
Infotainment keyboard

Keypad overview

The arrangement of the keypad characters depends on the Infotainment language that has been set.

In Infotainment, the following types are used, depending on the context.

- Alphanumeric.
- Numeric.
- Keypad for input.
- Keypad for search.



Keypad example

A Input line
- Delete characters before the cursor
  - **Tap:** delete the last character
  - **Hold:** delete all characters one after the other
- Display functional surfaces for moving the cursor in the input line
  - < Move cursor to the left
  - > Move cursor to the right

B Entries found
- Show list

C Keypad functional surfaces
- Change to lowercase
- Switch to first having an upper-case letter, followed by lower-case letters
- Switch to uppercase
- ABC/АБВ Switch to the language keypad
- 12# Switch to the numeric and character keypad
- 1/2/2/2Switch to other character variants
- Show additional keyboard languages
- Insert spaces
- The next line
- **Hold:** Show more character variants
- Show password
- OK Confirm the entered characters

Numeric keypad



Keypad example

A Input line
- Delete characters before the cursor
  - **Tap:** delete the last character
  - **Hold:** delete all characters

B Keypad functional surfaces

- OK Confirm the entered characters

If it is possible depending on the context, alphanumeric characters can be entered by holding a function area with the number.

Operation

The Infotainment keypad is used to enter characters, letters and numbers.

The keypad will be **automatically displayed** when Infotainment prompts for characters.

Find
When entering characters, corresponding entries are searched for.

The entry to be searched for can be entered including diacritics.

The keyboard will only provide characters that match the stored entries.

› To **display searched entries** tap .

Show additional keypad languages
To use the additional keypad languages, the desired languages must be set first.

› Tap or repeatedly tap the flag symbol until the desired language keypad is displayed.

Further character variants
› Press and hold the sign with the symbol .
› Select the desired symbol.

Setting up additional keyboard languages

› Tap MENU > ⚙ > *Additional keypad languages*.

Voice control

Functionality

Voice control principle
Voice control works according to the principle of dialogue between the user and the Infotainment system.

The user says a voice command. The Infotainment system responds or executes the voice command.

Advanced voice control
The vehicle's advanced voice control enables the vehicle functions to be searched and operated online.

Advanced voice control understands fluent whole sentences. You do not need to use set commands or phrases.

The advanced voice control can, for example, search for special destinations or dictate SMS messages if the connected telephone makes this possible.

This function allows you to combine the search in the online and offline data of the Infotainment. The transition between online and offline search is seamless and imperceptible to the user.

Functional conditions

✓ Ignition is switched on.
✓ Infotainment is switched on.

Functional conditions of the advanced voice control
To use the advanced voice control, the following conditions must also be met.

✓ The vehicle supports the function.
✓ The vehicle has Infotainment and functions that can be controlled by the advanced voice control.
✓ The ŠKODA Connect services are active.
✓ The vehicle is within range of a contractual mobile network, through which the connection to ŠKODA Connect Services is ensured.
✓ The level of protection of personal data is set to *Share my location* .

Operation

Voice control process
› To **switch on** voice control on the multifunction steering wheel, press the 🎙 button.

Or:

› Say the **"OK Laura"** activation command.

The prerequisite for recognising the activation command is the switched on menu item MENU > ⚙ > *voice control* > *active*.

After switching on, the 🎙 icon is displayed.

› Say a voice command.

During recognition of the voice command, the 🎙 icon is displayed.

The Infotainment system then executes the voice command or plays the message. During the message, the 🔊 icon is displayed.

After the execution of the voice command, voice control is switched off.

Correcting a voice command
› During voice command input, press the 🎙 button on the multifunction steering wheel and say a new voice command.

Stopping voice control
Stopping leaves more time for voice command input, e.g. for searching for a phone contact.

› Move your finger up or down over the Infotainment screen.

Or:

› Say the voice command **"pause"**.

Resuming stopped voice control
› Press the 🎙 button on the multifunction steering wheel.

Or:

› Tap on ⏸ in the Infotainment screen.

Stopping the played back message
› Press the 🎙 button on the multifunction steering wheel.

Ending voice control
› Press the 🎙 button on the multifunction steering wheel twice.

Or:

› Say the voice command **"cancel"** during voice command input.

Limitation

For some Infotainment languages, no voice control is available. The Infotainment system will indicate this.

The messages are generated by the Infotainment system. Flawless clarity (e.g. road or city name) cannot always be guaranteed.

You cannot use voice control while a phone call is in progress.

Settings

The following voice control functions are set in the menu MENU > ⚙ > *Voice control*.

- Confirmation tones.
- Enable/disable use of the activation word.

Self help

Starting acoustic help

› If the Infotainment system is expecting a voice command, say *"Help"*.

The *"Help"* voice command can be issued repeatedly for further tips on voice control.

Displaying the help

› Tap on MENU > ⓘ > 🔊.

Or:

› If Infotainment is expecting a voice command, say *"Overview"*.

Switch example voice commands display on / off

The system offers the option of displaying example voice commands after switching on the voice control in the Infotainment screen.

› To **turn** MENU > ⚙ > *voice control* on/off, tap > *Show in Infotainment system*.

Control centre

Overview

Display of the control centre



› Press the bar at the top of the screen and drag down.

Closing the control centre

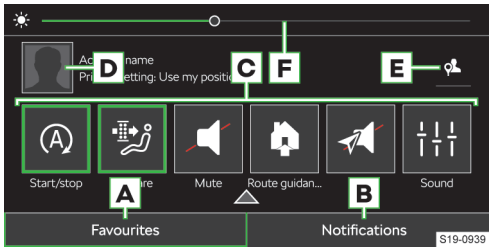
› Tap on ▲.

Or:

› Wait 5 seconds.

Control Centre

The Infotainment control centre can be used for quick access to the following functions.



A Display and management of the functional areas of preferred features

B Display list of information messages

C Preferred features

D Display of user account management

E Setting up the level of protection for personal data

F Setting up the instrument and key lighting

Set functional areas of preferred features

› To **display** editing mode hold any function surface of the preferred feature.

› To **add** the preferred feature, move the desired feature from the top of the screen to the functional surface at the bottom of the screen.

› To **close** edit mode, tap on ×.

Radio

Overview

Display menu

› Tap RADIO.

Or:

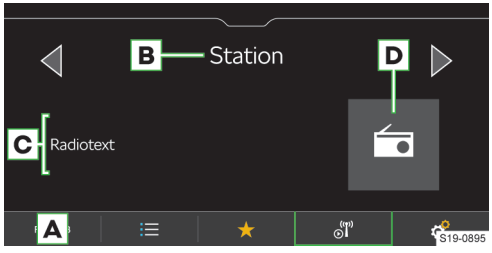
› Tap MENU > 📻.

Analogue and digital radio player

› A Tap and select the desired frequency range.

› Tap ☰ and search for or select the desired station.

› Tap on 🔊.



A Select source

B Station name
C Information about the broadcast content
D Station logos
List of available stations
★ Show favourites
Information about the station
Search stations manually (valid for AM and FM)
Settings

List of available analogue and digital radio stations
› Tap on .

Played station
★ Station stored on the presets
TP A traffic radio station is set
The DAB transmitter emits images which are displayed in the information to the station
Manual update of the station list

In the station list, information about the programme type and the channel identification of the regional channel can be displayed.

Web radio player
› A tap and select a web radio station.
› Tap and search or select web radio.
› Tap on .



A Select source
B Station name
C Information about the broadcast content
D Station logos
List of web radio and podcasts
★ Show favourites
Information about the programme as well as the broadcast content of the web radio
Settings

Podcast player
› Tap A and select an online radio station.
› Tap and search for or select the desired pocast.
› Tap .



A Select source
B Podcast name
C Information about the broadcast content
D Podcast logo with the symbol
Tap: Start playback
Tap: Pause
Tap: Go back 15 secs
Tap: Go forward 15 secs
View episodes of the podcast being played
List of web radio stations and podcasts
★ Show favourites
Show information about the podcast
Settings

List of online radio stations and podcasts
› Tap on .



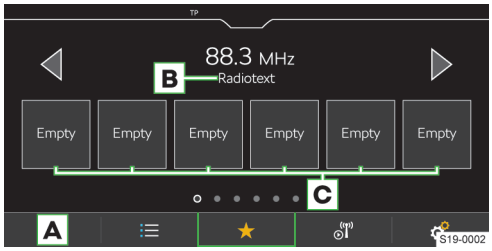
Search for online radio stations and podcasts
Recently heard web radio and podcasts
100 most popular web radio stations depending on the Infotainment language that has been set
Go to podcasts and select
Search and select web radio stations and podcasts for the selected country
Search for and select web radio stations and podcasts according to the selected language
Search and select web radio stations and podcasts by genre of choice
See list of related podcasts based on content listened to

See list of related web radio stations based on content listened to

The podcasts are shown in the displayed lists with the icon .

List of favourite stations and podcasts

› In the menu Radio, tap on ★.



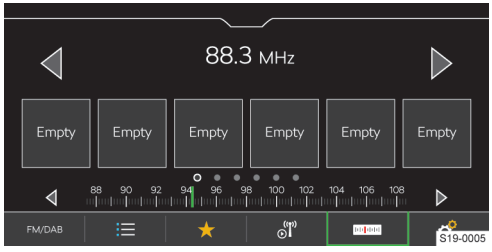
A Select source

B Radio text

C Station buttons for favourite stations and podcasts

Operation

Select station



› Tap ◁ or ▷ at the top of the screen.

SCAN function

The function plays receivable stations of the selected frequency range in succession for a few seconds each.

› To **start automatic play** > , tap *Scan*.

› To **stop automatic play**, tap SCAN.

Find stations manually

Manual search is available for AM and FM stations.

› To display the functional surface for the FM station, turn on the > *Advanced settings* > *Show stations:* turn on > *FM*.

› In the Radio main menu, tap .

› To **search in sequence**, tap ◁ or ▷ next to the displayed frequency range scale.

Or:

› Hold down the scroll mark on the frequency range scale and move it to the desired value.

Limitation

- Infotainment supports digital radio reception in DAB and DAB+ formats.
- Car parks, tunnels, tall buildings or mountains can restrict radio reception.
- In the rear side windows, there are antennas for receiving the radio signal.

  Covering the panes with foils or metal-coated labels may affect the reception of the radio signal.
- The ŠKODA AUTO company assumes no responsibility for the availability, correct functioning and broadcast information of the RDS service.

Settings

Save the station currently being listened to as a favourite from the Radio main menu

› Hold the desired station key for preferred stations until the station is stored.

Save station to favourites from the list of available stations

Applies to AM, FM and DAB frequency ranges.

› Hold the line with the name of the desired station.

› Tap the desired preset button.

Save channels from the list of web radio stations and podcasts

Valid for web radio stations and podcasts

› Select a web radio station as the playback source.

› Tap on .

› Go to the desired web radio station or podcast and select it.

› Hold the line with the name of the desired station or podcast.

› Tap the desired preset button.

With podcasts, it is not possible to save the individual episodes.

Deleting favourites

› In the **Radio** main menu, tap > *Delete presets*.

› To delete **a** station button for preferred stations, tap the desired station button and confirm the deletion.

› To delete **all** presets for preferred stations, tap *Delete all* and confirm the deletion.

Functional surfaces ◁ ▷ for analogue and digital radios

Applies to AM, FM and DAB frequency ranges.

The variant for **changing stations** using the function surface ◁ ▷ in the **Radio** main menu is set as follows.

› In the **Radio** main menu, tap ⚙ › *Arrow buttons:*.
› Select the variant for switching between the stations stored on the station buttons or the stations stored in the list of available stations.

Function surfaces ◁ ▷ for web radio stations and podcasts
Valid for web radio stations and podcasts

The variant for **changing stations** using the function surface ◁ ▷ in the **Radio** main menu is set as follows.

› In the **Radio** main menu, tap ⚙ › *Arrow buttons:*.
› Select the variant for switching between the stations stored on the station keys or the last web stations and podcasts listened to.

Switch traffic reception (TP) for stations on/off
Applies to FM and DAB frequency range.

› In the **Radio** main menu, tap ⚙ › *Traffic program (TP)*.

Assign station logo from the Infotainment memory
Applies to the FM and DAB frequency ranges.

Infotainment offers the option of assigning logos, which are stored in the Infotainment memory, to the stations.

› In the **Radio** main menu, tap ⚙ › *Station logos*.
› Select the desired station and logo.

Switching off the station logo display
Applies to the FM and DAB frequency ranges.

› In the **Radio** main menu, tap ⚙ › *Station logos*.
› Select the desired station and *No station logo*.

Activating / deactivating automatic station logo assignment
Applies to the FM and DAB frequency ranges.

When the function is switched on, a station logo from the Infotainment memory is assigned when the station is stored on a preset.

› In the **Radio** main menu, tap ⚙ › *Advanced settings* › *Auto-select station logos*.

Turn on/off radio text reception
Applies to the FM and DAB frequency ranges.

When the function is switched on and the station buttons are displayed, you can see more information about the content broadcast from the station to which you are listening.

› In the **Radio** main menu, tap ⚙ › *Radio text*.

Regional FM station logo
Applies to the FM frequency range.

Infotainment provides the option of using country-specific FM station logos.

› In the **Radio** main menu, tap on ⚙ › *Advanced settings* › *Region for station logo:*.
› Choose the country.

Switching additional announcements of the DAB transmitter on / off
Applies to the DAB frequency range.

When the function is switched on, other announcements are received as traffic announcements. E.g. weather news, sports reports, financial news etc.

› In the **Radio** main menu, tap ⚙ › *Advanced settings* › *Additional DAB announcements*.

Switch RDS on/off
Applies to the FM frequency range.

The menu item is only available for some countries.

› In the **Radio** main menu, tap ⚙ › *Advanced settings* › *Radio Data System (RDS)*.

If the **RDS function is disabled**, the following menu items in **FM station** settings are not available.

▸ Traffic programme (TP).
▸ Radio text.
▸ RDS Regional.
▸ Automatic frequency change (AF).
▸ Regional station logo.

Switch automatic switching to a similar DAB transmitter on / off
Applies to the DAB frequency range.

When the function is switched on and there is signal loss from the DAB station being listened to, Infotainment automatically sets another DAB station with similar content.

› In the **Radio** main menu, tap ⚙ › *Advanced settings* › *Switch to a similar station if reception is poor*.

Displaying FM / DAB stations or FM stations in the list of available stations
Applies to the FM and DAB frequency ranges.

Depending on the following setting, the stations of the selected frequency range are displayed in the list of available stations.

› In the **Radio** main menu, tap ⚙ › *Advanced settings* › *Show stations:*.
› Select one of the following menu items.

▸ *FM / DAB* - the list shows available FM and DAB stations.
▸ *FM* - the list shows available FM stations.

Sound quality of web radio stations and podcasts
Valid for web radio stations and podcasts.

› To adjust the sound quality in the main menu, tap **Radio** ⚙ › *Audio Quality:*.
› Choose low or high quality.

The quality you set affects the amount of data used in the data connection.

Quality also depends on the speed and availability of the data connection.

If playback failure occur, reduce the sound quality.

Media

What you should be mindful of

- Do not save any important data or that which has not been backed up on the connected audio sources. ŠKODA assumes no responsibility for lost or damaged files or connected audio sources.
- When changing or connecting an audio source, this may cause sudden changes in volume. Reduce the volume before changing or connecting an audio source.
- When connecting an audio source, the source information messages can be displayed. These messages must be observed and, if necessary, confirmed.
- The national copyright laws that apply in your country must be observed.

Overview

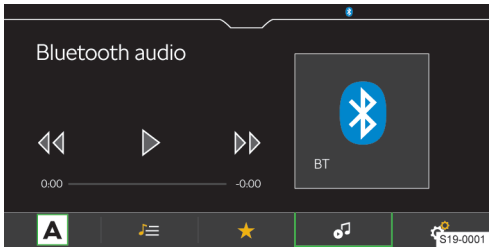
Display menu

› Tap **MEDIA**.

Or:

› Tap **MENU** > ♫.

Music player



A Choose source

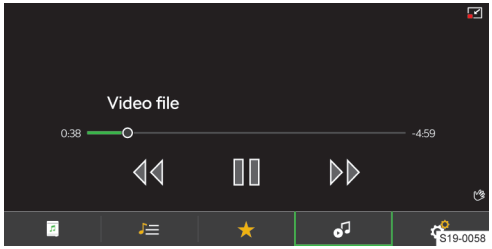
Manage files / multimedia database

★ Show favourites

Details about the track being played

Settings

Video player



Manage files / multimedia database

★ Show favourites

Show video

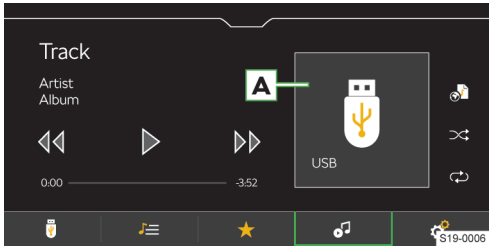
Reduce image display

Enlarge image display

Settings

Operating the Player

Operation - Basics



A Album image / symbol of the connected source

- **Tap:** list available albums

Tap: Start playback

Tap: Pause

Within 3 seconds of starting playback, tap: play the previous song

After 3 seconds from the start of playback, tap: to play the current title from the beginning

Hold: fast rewind within the track

Tap: play the next track

Hold: fast forward within the track

Movement within the title is also possible by dragging the finger over the timeline.

Advanced operation

Turn on / off repeat playback of the current track

Turn on / off repeat playback of the current album / folder

Turn on / off random playback of the current album / folder

Save the played track in the "*My playlist*" playlist

"My playlist" management

▸ To **display the playlist**, tap ♫ › ▯ › ▯ › .

▸ To **manage the playlist** tap ✎ in the displayed playlist.

The following activities can be carried out in playlist management.

▸ Control playback.

▸ Change the order of a title in the list by holding and moving ≡ to the desired position.

▸ Delete title.

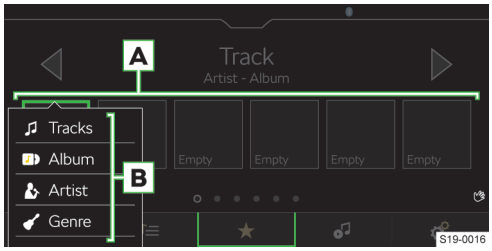
Limitation

NOTICE

The availability of some media operation functions is dependent on the connected source and the software being used, e.g. Bluetooth®.

Settings

Manage favourites



› To **save** the desired functional area for favourites, hold A.

› Select one of the list entries available B.

› To **clear** in the main menu **Media** tap ⚙ › *Manage favourites* .

› To delete **a favourite**, tap the desired list entry and confirm the deletion.

Or:

› To delete **all favourites** *Clear all* and confirm the deletion.

Traffic

› To **turn on/off** the traffic monitoring during the playback of media files, go to the **Media** main menu and tap on ⚙ › *Traffic programme (TP)*.

Supported sources and files

Supported sources

Source	Interface	Type	Specification	File system
USB	USB 1.x; 2.x 3.x or higher with USB 2.x support	MSC	USB stick	VFAT FAT16 FAT32 exFAT NTFS
			HDD (without special software)	
			USB devices that use the USB mass storage support protocol	
		MTP	Devices running the Android or Windows Phone operating system that support the Media Transfer Protocol	
		Apple	Devices with the iOS operating system and the iAP2 protocol	HFS+
Bluetooth® player	Bluetooth®	-	Bluetooth® protocols A2DP and AVRCP (1.0 - 1.6)	-

Mobile device compatibility

It is possible to check the ŠKODA web pages to see if Infotainment is compatible with the selected mobile device being tested. This check is carried out by using the following reference or by reading the QR code.

http://go.skoda.eu/compatibility

All information given is incidental and serves as information.

The ŠKODA AUTO company cannot guarantee full functionality and compatibility, e.g. due to a software update of the Infotainment and the mobile devices.

Supported audio files

Compression format	Codec type	File extension	Max. bit rate [kbps]	Max. sampling rate [kHz]	Multi channels
MPEG	MPEG 1 Layer 2	mp2	32 - 384	32, 44, 48	Mono, stereo, Joint stereo
	MPEG 2 Layer 2		8 - 160	16, 22, 24	
	MPEG 1 Layer 3	mp3	32 - 320	32, 44, 48	Mono, dual mono, Stereo, Joint Stereo
	MPEG 2 Layer 3		8 - 160	16, 22, 24	
	MPEG 2.5 Layer 3			8, 11, 12	

Compression format	Codec type	File extension	Max. bit rate [kbps]	Max. sampling rate [kHz]	Multi channels
WMA	Windows Media Audio 7	wma	6 - 192	8, 16, 22, 32, 44, 48, 96	Mono, stereo, Joint stereo
	Windows Media Audio 8		8 - 384	8, 11, 16, 22, 32, 44, 48, 96	
	Windows Media Audio 9 and 9.1		8 - 768		
	Windows Media Audio 9.2		8 - 320		
	Windows Media Audio 10		32 - 768	32, 44, 48, 96	
ADTS	AAC LC	aac	16 - 2048	22, 24, 32, 44, 48	Stereo
	AAC HE			16, 22, 24, 32, 44, 48	
	AAC HEv2				
MP4	M4A LC	m4a	16 - 400	22, 24, 32, 44, 48	Stereo
	M4A HE			16, 22, 24, 32, 44, 48	
	M4A HEv2		16 - 64		
OGG	OGG-Vorbis	ogg	8 - 576	8, 11, 12, 16, 22, 24, 32, 44, 48, 96	Mono, Stereo
FLAC	FLAC	flac	-	8, 11, 12, 16, 22, 24, 32, 44, 48, 64, 88, 96, 192	Mono, stereo, Joint stereo
RIFF	WAV	wav	64 - 3072	8, 11, 12, 16, 22, 24, 32, 44, 48, 96	Mono, Stereo
Monkey's	Monkey's	ape	8 - 192		
SBC	Bluetooth A2DP	-	8 - 345	8, 11, 12, 16, 22, 24, 32, 44, 48	Mono, stereo, Joint stereo
OPUS	OPUS	opus	6 - 2000	8 - 48	Mono, stereo, Multichannel

Files that are protected by **DRM**- and **iTunes®** methods are not supported by Infotainment.

Supported video files

Codec type	File extension	Max. recordings per second bit rate [Mbit/s]
MPEG 1	mpg mpeg m1v mPV	1.5
MPEG 2	mpg mpeg ps m2v	15
MPEG 4 (H.264)	m4p mp4 m4v mp4v mov	50
MPJEG		
MPEG 4 (ISO)		
Xvid	Xvid	20

Codec type	File extension	Max. recordings per second bit rate [Mbit/s]
WMV9	wmv asf	50

Supported playlists

Codec type	File extension
M3U	m3u
M3U8	m3u8
PLS	pls
WPL	wpl
ASX	asx

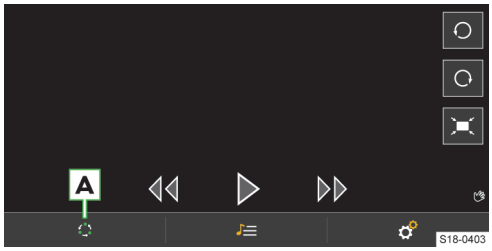
Images

Overview

Display menu

› Tap MENU > .

Image viewer



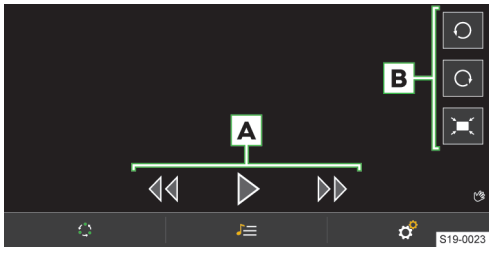
A Select source

Manage files

Settings

Operation

Operation using functional areas



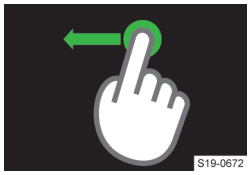
A View images

- ▶ Show the next image
- ▶ Show the previous image
- ▶ Start slideshow
- ▶ Stop slideshow

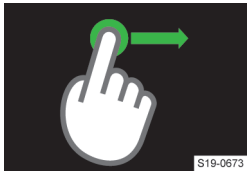
B View image

- ▶ Turn left
- ▶ Turn right
- ▶ Show in output size

Gesture control



▶ Show the next image.



▶ Show the previous image.



▶ Enlarge view.



▶ Zoom out.



▶ Turn 90 °.

Settings

The following Infotainment functions are set in the MENU > > menu.

▶ Display image size.
▶ Display image duration during the slideshow.
▶ Slideshow repeat.

Supported sources and files

Supported sources

Source	Interface	Specification	File system
USB	USB 1.x; 2.x 3.x or higher with USB 2.x support	USB stick	VFAT FAT16 FAT32 exFAT NTFS
		HDD (without special software)	

Supported files

Codec type	File extension	Max. resolution [Mpx]
BMP	bmp	4
JPG; JPEG	jpg; jpeg	4 (Progressive Mode) 64
GIF	gif	4
PNG	png	4

The maximum supported image size is 20 MB.

Mobile device management

Cybernetic security

Your vehicle contains components that are used to exchange information and data between the vehicle and the connected mobile devices or the Internet.

These components have security mechanisms that minimise the risk of unauthorised access to the vehicle systems.

Regular software updates help reduce the risk of unauthorised access to vehicle systems and vehicle functions. The following guidelines must therefore be observed.

› Use only media carriers, Bluetooth® devices, and mobile devices that contain no harmful data or malware.

› Regularly update the software provided by ŠKODA AUTO.

We recommend having the system software and components updated by a specialist company.

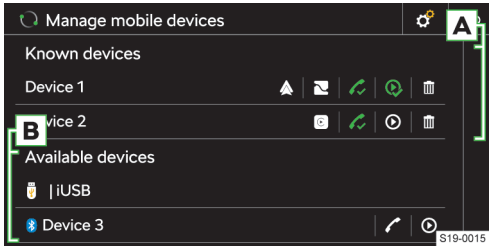
⚠ WARNING
Risk of an accident!
Malware in the vehicle can influence certain vehicle functions or deactivate them if necessary.
› If the vehicle reacts in an unusual way, immediately reduce speed or stop the vehicle.
› Seek the help of a specialist garage.

⚠ WARNING
Malware in the vehicle may gain unauthorised access to the information and data of the vehicle, and on occasion, to connected mobile devices.

Overview

Using mobile device management, devices can be connected, disconnected, and interchanged.

Display mobile device management
› Tap on MENU > > *Manage mobile devices*.



- The device enables a connection via the Bluetooth®"hands-free profile"
- The device is connected via the Bluetooth®"hands-free profile"
- The device enables a connection via the Bluetooth® audio profile
- The device is connected via the Bluetooth® audio profile
- Remove the device from the list **previously connected devices**
- The device enables a SmartLinkconnection to be made via Android Auto
- The device enables a SmartLinkconnection to be made via Apple CarPlay
- The device enables a SmartLinkconnection to be made via MirrorLink

A Connected / Previously connected devices
B Available devices

Mobile device and application limitations

Availability of features
The availability of certain features depends on the type of mobile device, as well as that of the applications installed.

Mobile device compatibility
It is possible to check the ŠKODA web pages to see if Infotainment is compatible with the selected mobile device being tested. This check is carried out by using the following reference or by reading the QR code.

http://go.skoda.eu/compatibility

All information given is incidental and serves as information.

The ŠKODA AUTO company cannot guarantee full functionality and compatibility, e.g. due to a software update of the Infotainment and the mobile devices.

Bluetooth® compatibility of mobile devices
Due to the large number of mobile devices, it is not possible to guarantee total Bluetooth® compatibility with Infotainment. Bluetooth® compatibility depends on the Bluetooth® version as well as the implementation of Bluetooth® protocols by the manufacturer of the mobile device.

Applications in mobile devices
Mobile devices can be used to install applications that allow you to view additional information on the Infotainment screen, or to operate the Infotainment system.

Due to the variety of applications, as well as their ongoing development, the available applications may not function on all mobile devices. ŠKODA AUTO assumes no liability for their proper functioning.

The scope of available applications and their functionality is dependent on the type of Infotainment, as well as the vehicle and country.

Information about the ŠKODA applications
Detailed information on the ŠKODA applications can be found on the website after reading the following QR code or using the link.

http://go.skoda.eu/mobile-apps

Connection set-up

Connect a mobile device to Infotainment
› Find available Bluetooth® devices in the mobile device.
› Select the Infotainment Bluetooth® unit.

The unit name can be determined by tapping **MENU** > > *Manage mobile devices* > > *device name:*.

› Confirm the PIN; enter it if necessary and then confirm.

Connect Infotainment to a non-paired mobile device
› Tap on **MENU** > > *Manage mobile devices*.
› Select the desired device from the list of **available devices**.
› Select the desired Bluetooth® profile.
› Confirm the PIN; enter it if necessary and then confirm.
› If two devices are connected to the Infotainment, select the device to be replaced.

Connect Infotainment to a previously connected mobile device
› **MENU** > > *Manage mobile devices* .

Or:

› **PHONE** > > *Select mobile phone* .
› Select the desired device in the list of **previously connected devices**.
› Select the desired Bluetooth® profile.
› If two devices are connected to the Infotainment, select the device to be replaced.

SmartLink connection
Infotainment offers the option to establish the SmartLink connection with compatible mobile devices using the following connection types.

- Android Auto
- Apple CarPlay
- MirrorLink

Mobile devices can be connected to the Infotainment via USB cable or Wi-Fi, as long as the mobile device supports it.

› Connect the mobile device to the Infotainment via a USB cable or browse and connect to a wireless network.
› Tap the icon of the supported connection.

Telephone

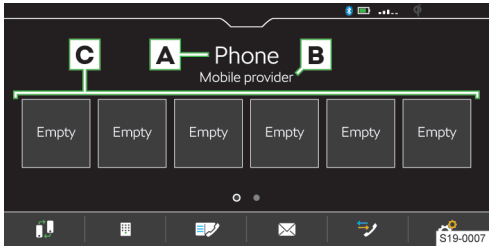
Overview

Display menu
› Tap **PHONE**.

Or:

› Tap MENU > .

If the menu **Telephone** is not displayed, check whether the mobile device is connected.



A Name of the connected telephone
▶ **Tap:** Show list of previously connected phones

B Name of telephone service providers
▶ If the symbol ▷ is displayed in front of the name, roaming is active.

C Preset buttons for preferred contacts

Change the main telephone with the additional telephone

Enter telephone number

Contact list

Text messages / emails

Call lists

Settings

Conditions for connecting a telephone with Infotainment

✓ The Bluetooth® function of the Infotainment and the telephone needs to be switched on.

The Bluetooth® function of the Infotainment is switched on in the menu item MENU > > *Manage mobile devices* > > *Bluetooth*.

✓ Visibility of the Infotainment is switched on.

The visibility of the Infotainment is switched on in the menu item MENU > > *Manage mobile devices* > > *Visibility:*.

✓ The telephone is within signal range of the Infotainment's Bluetooth® unit.

✓ The telephone is compatible with Infotainment.

Telephone operation

Enter telephone number

› In the **Telephone** main menu, tap .

› Enter the telephone number using the numeric keypad that is displayed.

The displayed numeric keypad can also be used for searching for contacts.

If, for example, the digits 32 are entered, contacts with the letter sequence DA, FA, EB etc. are displayed next to the numeric keypad.

List of telephone contacts

The list of telephone contacts is imported from the connected main telephone.

› To **display** the contact list in the **telephone** main menu, tap .

› To **search** within the list, tap *Enter contact*.

› Enter the details you wish to find.

› To **establish a connection** with a contact, tap the functional area showing the desired contact.

If a contact has multiple telephone numbers, select the telephone number from the displayed list.

› To display the **details** for a contact, tap >.

Establish a connection to the voice mailbox number

› In the **Telephone** main menu, tap > .

Telephone call

Depending on the context of the telephone conversation, the following functions can be selected.

End connection set-up / reject incoming call / end call

Answer an incoming call / Return to the call on hold

Switch the ringer off / on

Hold a call

Switch the microphone off / on

Show details of the caller

Reject an incoming call using an SMS message

Answer a call from the second telephone during a call on the first telephone
The ongoing call on the first telephone is terminated by accepting the call.

› To **switch the call from the speakers to the telephone**, go to the **Telephone** main menu and tap on > *Hands-free* .

› To **switch the call tone from the telephone to the speakers**, tap .

Conference call

A conference call is a joint telephone conversation with a minimum of three and a maximum of six participants.

› Make the next call during an ongoing conversation/ conference.

Or:

› Accept a new incoming call by tapping the function area .

› To **start** a conference call, tap on the functional area .

During an ongoing conference call, the following functions can be selected depending on the context.

- Hold the conference call and leave temporarily (the conference will continue in the background)
- Return to the conference being held
- Switch the microphone off / on
- End the conference
- Show details of the conference call

In the details of the conference call, depending on the connected telephone, the following functions can be selected.

- Show details of the conference call participants
- End conversation with the conference call participant
- Conversation with a participant outside of the conference call

Send a text message

› In the **Telephone** main menu, tap ✉ > ✉ *Messages* > ✎ *New text message*.

› Write a text message and confirm; a view of the message is displayed.

The message can be edited when the text area within the view is tapped.

› Search for or select the recipient of the message.

› Add more recipients or confirm selected recipients.

› Tap *Send*.

Display received text messages

› In the **Telephone** main menu, tap ✉ > ✉ *Messages* > ✉ or ✉.

› Messages that are received are displayed as individual messages or as messages in a conversation, depending on the following setting.

In order to **switch the display of messages in a conversation on or off**, go to the **Telephone** main menu and tap ⚙ > *Show messages as a conversation*.

› To **switch on or off a graphic notification** regarding the receipt of a new message, go to the **Telephone** main menu and tap ⚙ > *New message notifications*.

ⓘ Infotainment offers the possibility to read the text message (context-dependent) by means of the generated Infotainment voice if 💬 is tapped.

Send E-mails

› In the **Telephone** main menu, tap on ✉ > ✉ *E-mails* > ✎ *New e-mail*.

› Write an e-mail and confirm that an e-mail is displayed.

The text can be edited when the text area within the view is tapped.

› Search for or select the recipient of the email.

› Add more recipients or confirm selected recipients.

› Enter the subject of the e-mail.

› Tap *Send*.

Show received e-mails

› In the **Telephone** main menu, tap ✉ > ✉ *E-mails* > ✉.

› Select the desired e-mail.

› To **switch on or off**,**a graphic notification** regarding the receipt of a new e-mail, go to the **Telephone** main menu and tap ⚙ > *New message notifications*.

Settings of the Infotainment telephone functions

Telephone-Infotainment-Connection types

The way in which the telephone is connected depends on the number of phones currently connected to the Infotainment.

▸ **No telephone** - The telephone is connected as a main telephone.

▸ **One telephone** - The telephone is connected as an additional telephone.

▸ **Two telephones** - Select the telephone to be replaced.

› To **switch between the main telephone and the supplementary telephone** in the main menu, tap **telephone** 📳.

Connect the telephone to Infotainment

› Find available Bluetooth® devices on the phone.

› Select the Infotainment Bluetooth® unit.

The unit name can be determined by the menu item **MENU** > ⚙ > *Manage mobile devices* > ⚙ > *Device name:*.

› Confirm the PIN; enter it if necessary and then confirm.

Connect Infotainment to a non-paired telephone - no telephone is connected

› Tap on **PHONE**.

Or:

› Tap on **MENU** > ✆.

› Follow the instructions in the Infotainment screen.

Connecting Infotainment to a non-paired telephone - another telephone is connected

› Tap on **MENU** > ⚙ > *Manage mobile devices*.

› Select the desired device from the list of **available devices**.

› Select the desired Bluetooth® profile.

› Confirm the PIN; enter it if necessary and then confirm.

The telephone is connected as an additional telephone.

Or:

› If two telephones are connected to the Infotainment, select the telephone to be replaced.

Connect Infotainment to a previously paired telephone

› Tap on **MENU** > ⚙ > *Manage mobile devices*.

Or:

Tap on **PHONE** > ⚙ > *Select mobile phone*.

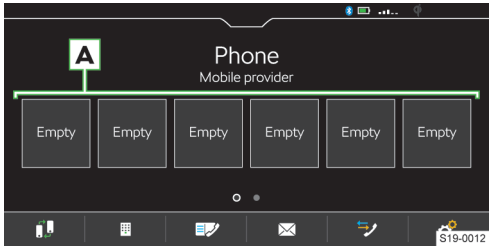
› Select the desired device from the list of **previously connected devices**.

The telephone is connected as an additional telephone.

Or:

› If two telephones are connected to the Infotainment, select the telephone to be replaced.

Manage station buttons for favourite contacts



› To **to save** the desired station button, hold A.

› Select a contact from the list displayed.

› If the contact contains several phone numbers, select the desired phone number.

› To **display the menu for deletion** go to the **Telephone** main menu and tap ⚙ > *Manage favourites* .

› To delete **one** station button, tap the desired list entry and confirm the deletion.

Or:

› To delete **all** station buttons, tap *Clear all* and confirm the deletion.

Import telephone contacts

After first connecting the main telephone with Infotainment, telephone contacts will start to be imported into the Infotainment memory.

Infotainment can import up to 5000 telephone contacts together with contact pictures. Each contact can include max. 5 telephone numbers.

Depending on the type of telephone, import confirmation may be required.

Update telephone contacts

When re-connecting the telephone with Infotainment, an **automatic** update of the list is carried out.

› For a **manual** update of the list in the **telephone** main menu, tap on ⚙ > *Import contacts*.

Sort contacts in the phone book

› In the **telephone** main menu, tap on ⚙ > *Sort by:* and select the sort type.

Ringer

Some phones do not allow the use of the telephone ringtone; instead, the Infotainment ringtone is used.

› To **set the Infotainment ring** go to the **Telephone** main menu and tap ⚙ > *Select ringtone*.

› Select the ringtone.

Number for the voice mailbox

› To **set the voice mailbox number** go to the **Telephone** main menu and tap on ⚙ > *Mailbox number:*.

› Enter the number of the voice mailbox.

Turn the graphic notice regarding receiving a new message/email on or off

When the feature is on, the new message icon appears on the status bar and in the feature area for the messages when a new message/e-mail is received.

› In the **Telephone** main menu, tap ⚙ > *New message notifications*.

Simultaneous calls

This applies to some countries.

Depending on the connected telephone, it is possible to answer the next incoming call and hold the previous call.

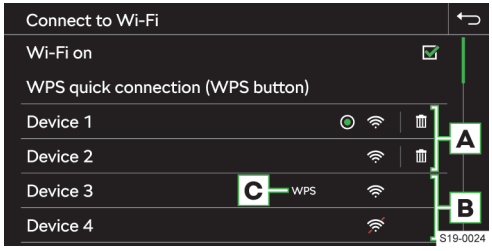
› To switch on simultaneous calls, tap on **telephone** ⚙ > *Parallel talks*.

Wi-Fi

Overview of available hotspots

Display available hotspots

› Tap **MENU** > ⚙ > *Wi-Fi* > *Wi-Fi:*.



A Previously connected hotspots

B Available hotspots

C The hotspot supports the WPS connection

⊙ Currently connected hotspot

🗑 Delete information about the hotspot connection

Wi-Fi signal strength of the hotspot

The Wi-Fi signal from the hotspot is not available

Functionality

The Wi-Fi can be used for the internet connection or for the SmartLinkConnection.

The Infotainment hotspot can connect up to 8 mobile devices. At the same time, the Infotainment can be connected to another hotspot.

› To display the list of connected mobile devices, tap MENU > ⚙ > *Wi-Fi* > *Infotainment system as hotspot* > *Connected devices*.

Settings

Connect a mobile device to the Infotainment hotspot

› Turn on the Infotainment's Wi-Fi hotspot in the menu item MENU > ⚙ > *Wi-Fi* > *Infotainment system as hotspot* > *Use as hotspot*.

› Turn on the Wi-Fi on the mobile device.

› In the list of available Wi-Fi devices, look for Infotainment Wi-Fi.

The name of the Infotainment is taken from the menu item MENU > ⚙ > *Wi-Fi* > *Infotainment system as hotspot* > *Network name:*.

› Select the Infotainment hotspot and enter the required password.

The password for connecting to the Infotainment hotspot is taken from the menu item MENU > ⚙ > *Wi-Fi* > *Infotainment system as hotspot* > *Network key*.

› Confirm the connection.

Connect Infotainment to the mobile device hotspot

› Turn on the Infotainment's Wi-Fi unit in the menu item MENU > ⚙ > *Wi-Fi* > *Wi-Fi:* Turn on > *Wi-Fi on*.

› Select the desired hotspot in the list of available hotspots.

› Enter the password for connecting to mobile devices.

ⓘ Infotainment stores passwords for previously connected hotspots.

Security level of the Infotainment hotspot

The security level is set at *WPA2* and cannot be changed.

Activate/deactivate data transfer between the Infotainment and the connected device

› To turn data transmission on or off, tap MENU > ⚙ > *Wi-Fi* > *Infotainment system as hotspot* > *Connected devices* > ⏻.

Change the name of the Infotainment hotspot

▸ Tap MENU > ⚙ > *Wi-Fi* > *Infotainment system as hotspot* > *Network name:*.

▸ Enter the name and confirm.

Change password for connection to Infotainment hotspot

The password must be a minimum of 12 and a maximum of 63 characters.

▸ MENU > ⚙ > *Wi-Fi* > *Infotainment system as a hotspot* > *Network key* .

▸ Enter and confirm the password.

Quick connection of Infotainment to the mobile device hotspot

› On the mobile device, turn on the hotspot, its visibility, and the option for WPS connection.

› MENU > ⚙ > *Wi-Fi* > *Wi-Fi:* Tap > *WPS quick connection (WPS button)*.

Automatic WPS connection

› Tap MENU > ⚙ > *Wi-Fi* > *Quick connection to Infotainment system*.

› In the mobile device, switch on the option for connection via WPS.

› Wait for the connection to be established and, if necessary, confirm the respective messages.

Manual WPS connection

› In the mobile device, switch on the option for connection via WPS PIN.

The mobile device display will show the WPS PIN for connecting to the Infotainment.

› Tap MENU > ⚙ > *Wi-Fi* > *Quick connection to Infotainment system* > ⚿ > *WPS PIN*.

› Enter the WPS PIN in the Infotainment and confirm.

› Wait for the connection to be established and, if necessary, confirm the respective messages.

Automatic connection using the QR code

› Tap MENU > ⚙ > *Wi-Fi* > *Quick connection to Infotainment system*.

› In the mobile device, switch on the option for connection via QR Code.

› With the mobile device, read the QR code displayed on the Infotainment screen.

› Wait for the connection to be established and, if necessary, confirm the respective messages.

Tips for a perfect connection

ⓘ

▸ Keep only the hotspot to be connected switched on and switch off the other hotspots.

▸ Delete unused hotspots. This shortens the time required to establish a connection.

▸ For some hotspots, the connection takes longer, so wait for the connection to finish.

▸ If the connection is interrupted, recheck the available hotspots and repeat the connection.

Functional restriction

The Infotainment system can only be connected to a hotspot with WPA2 access protection.

Restriction of the Wi-Fi connection
In some countries, the WiFi connection is restricted for legal reasons. When crossing the border of the country in question, the connection with a mobile device connected via Wi-Fi can be ended or restricted.

Find out about country-specific legal restrictions. If necessary, switch off the Wi-Fi manually.

SmartLink

Functionality

SmartLink offers the ability to display and operate certified applications from a connected mobile device in the Infotainment screen.

Certification may be conditional upon the use of the latest update to the particular SmartLink application.

Applications include, for example, apps for route guidance, telephoning, listening to music, etc.

Mobile devices can be connected via a USB cable or Wi-Fi.

Supported connection types
SmartLink supports the following connection types.

- Android Auto.
- Apple CarPlay.
- MirrorLink.

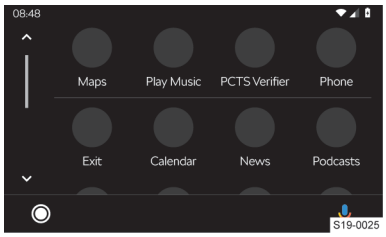
Overview of the SmartLink connection

Menu SmartLink
› Tap **MENU** > SMART LINK.



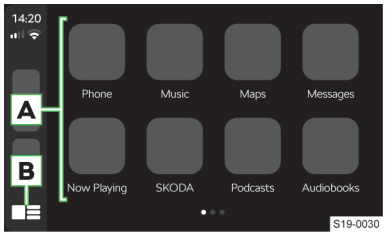
A Previously connected device
B Currently connection device
Display information about SmartLink
Disconnection of the active connection
Disconnection of the active connection
Settings in SmartLink menu

Android Auto



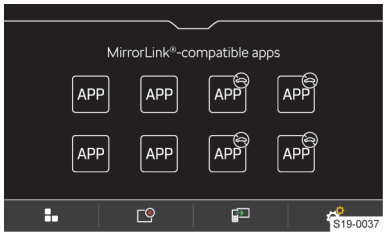
Overview of running applications, phone calls, received text messages and the like.
Switching on voice control (Google Voice)

Apple CarPlay



A List of available applications
B Depending on the duration of operation:
- **Tap:** Return to the Apple CarPlay main menu
- **Hold:** Turn on voice control (Siri)

MirrorLink



It is not possible to operate the application while driving
Return to the SmartLink main menu
List of running applications
Display the last running application in the connected mobile device
Settings

Connection conditions

General connection conditions

✓ The mobile device supports the following SmartLink connection types: Android Auto. Apple CarPlay and MirrorLink.

✓ Mobile devices, as well as the type of SmartLinkconnection, are supported in the respective market.

✓ Some connected mobile devices require the mobile device to be “unlocked”.

Conditions for Android Auto

✓ The device to be connected must have Android AutoSupport.

A list of devices, supported regions and applications that the Android Auto connection supports can be found on the websites of Google Inc..

✓ The Android Auto application needs to be installed on the mobile device.

✓ Some applications require the data connection in the mobile device to be turned on.

Conditions for Apple CarPlay

✓ The device to be connected must have Apple CarPlaySupport.

A list of devices, supported regions and applications that the Apple CarPlay connection supports can be found on the websites of Apple Inc..

✓ Siri voice control is on.

✓ The data connection is switched on in the mobile device.

Conditions for MirrorLink

✓ The device to be connected must have MirrorLinkSupport.

A list of devices and applications that the MirrorLink connection supports can be found on the websites of Car Connectivity Consorcium®.

✓ The MirrorLink application needs to be installed on the mobile device.

✓ Some applications require the data connection in the connected mobile device to be turned on.

Operation

Operation of the running MirrorLink application

Display of control surfaces at the bottom

Display of control surfaces at the top

Return to the MirrorLink main menu

Limitation

Restriction of the Wi-Fi connection

In some countries, the WiFi connection is restricted for legal reasons. When crossing the border of the country in question, the connection with a mobile device connected via Wi-Fi can be ended or restricted.

Find out about country-specific legal restrictions. If necessary, switch off the Wi-Fi manually.

Restriction of SmartLink applications while driving

For safety reasons, operation of some SmartLinkapplications while driving is not possible or is restricted.

Restriction of the navigation function

If route guidance is currently being carried out through Infotainment, this is ended when you start route guidance in the Apple CarPlay application.

If there is route guidance in the Apple CarPlay application, it is ended by starting the destination guidance using Infotainment.

SmartLink settings

Apple CarPlay - Connection via USB

› Turn on the Infotainment.

› Turn on the mobile device.

› Connect the mobile device to the front USB input using a cable.

› Choose to connect via Apple CarPlay.

Apple CarPlay - Connection via Wi-Fi from Infotainment

› Turn on Bluetooth® and Bluetooth® visibility in the Apple mobile device.

› Tap on MENU > > *Manage mobile devices*.

› In the displayed list, look for and select the desired device with the symbol .

› Follow the instructions on the Infotainment screen and confirm the Bluetooth® pairing.

› If another device is connected to the Infotainment, select the device to be replaced.

Apple CarPlay - Connection via Wi-Fi from mobile devices

To establish a connection, the following conditions must be met.

✓ The minimum iOS version is 9.

✓ No other mobile device can be connected via SmartLink.

✓ Wi-Fi and Bluetooth® functionality is switched on in the Infotainment system.

› In the mobile device, turn on the CarPlay function.

› Press and hold the button on the multifunction steering wheel.

The Infotainment screen displays a connection message with the name of the Bluetooth® unit of the Infotainment.

› Find available Bluetooth® devices on the phone.

› Select the Infotainment Bluetooth® unit.

› If necessary, confirm the PIN.
› In the Infotainment screen, select the connection type Apple CarPlay.

Apple CarPlay – Disconnection
› In the Apple CarPlay main menu, tap on the “ŠKODA” functional area.
› Tap on .

Android Auto - Connection via USB
› Turn on the Infotainment.
› Turn on the mobile device.
› Connect the mobile device to the front USB input using a cable.
› Choose to connect via Android Auto.

Android Auto - Connection via Wi-Fi from Infotainment
› Tap on MENU > > > *mobile devices*.
› Select the desired device from the list of **available devices**.
› Select the Bluetooth®hands-free profile.
› Confirm the PIN; enter it if necessary and then confirm.
› If another device is connected to the Infotainment, select the device to be replaced.
› From the list of **known devices**, select the desired device with the symbol.

Android Auto - Disconnection
› In the main menu of Android Auto > tap on “Return to ŠKODA”.
› Tap on .

MirrorLink - Connection via USB
› Turn on the Infotainment.
› Turn on the mobile device.
› Connect the mobile device to the front USB input using a cable.
› Choose to connect through MirrorLink.

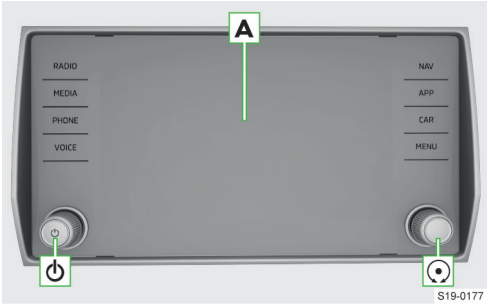
MirrorLink - Disconnection
› In the MirrorLink main menu, tap .
› Tap on .

Change to another device / connection type
Infotainment allows you to switch between currently connected devices and the connection type.

› Tap on MENU > .
› Select the desired device or connection type.

Infotainment Amundsen

Infotainment overview



A Touchscreen
Control dial left
▶ **Press:** Switch Infotainment on/off
▶ **Turn:** Set volume
Control dial right
▶ **Press:** Confirm menu item
▶ **Turn:** select menu item/set value
RADIO **Radio** menu
MEDIA **Media** menu
PHONE **Phone** menu
VOICE Voice control
NAV **Navigation** menu
APP **SmartLink** menu
CAR Information about vehicle settings
MENU Overview of Infotainment menus

System

Limitation

For safety reasons, operation of some Infotainment functions while driving is not possible or is restricted.

The Infotainment system indicates this by means of a message in the screen.

Basic settings

Setting basic functions
The following Infotainment functions are set in the MENU > menu.

▶ Time and date.
▶ Language.
▶ Units.
▶ Restore factory settings.

Sound settings
The Infotainment sound is set in the menu MENU > .

The following menu items can be set.

- Setting the equalizer.
- Adjusting the volume ratio.
- Volume adjustment of individual Infotainment functions.

  Some are adjustable, for example the following menu items.

  - Volume adjustment of voice commands.
  - Setting the maximum volume when Infotainment is turned on.
  - Speed-dependent volume setting.
  - Setting the Infotainment to mute with the parking aid switched on.

Depending on the equipment, the following advanced sound settings can be set.

- Setting space optimisation.
- Setting the audio profiles according to genre.
- Adjusting the subwoofer volume.

Configuration wizard
The configuration wizard helps to set certain Infotainment functions.

The configuration assistant is automatically displayed if the ignition is switched on and if there are at least two menu items that have not been set up after switching on the Infotainment.

› To **switch off the automatic display**, when the configuration assistant is displayed tap *Don't show again* .

› For **manual display** tap MENU > > *Configuration wizard* .

Setting the HOME menu

› To **display another page** of the HOME menu, press the screen with two fingers and drag it to the left or right.

To **add the preferred menu**, proceed as follows.

› Tap on an empty functional surface.

Or:

› Press and hold an occupied functional surface and then tap on an empty functional area.

› Select a menu with the desired dimension of the functional surface.

› Tap on × to exit edit mode.

To **remove the preferred menu**, proceed as follows.

› Press an occupied functional surface.

› Tap on .

› Tap on × to exit edit mode.

Setting the MENU
The position of the functional surfaces in the MENU menu can be customized as follows.

› Press and hold the desired functional surface until it is free.

› Move the functional surface to a different position.

Troubleshooting

Infotainment not responding
The Infotainment system must be restarted.

› Press for more than 10 s.

› Wait for the restart to complete.

System update

We recommend having the system update carried out by a specialist company.

The system update ensures optimal function of the Infotainment system, e.g. compatibility with new phones.

Determine system version

› Tap MENU > > *System information*.

Screen

Overview



A Status bar

B Bar with the functional surfaces of the displayed menu

C Display of the control centre

D Other pages of the menu

Operation

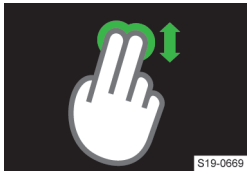
NOTICE
Danger of screen damage!

- The Infotainment screen is operated **by touching it lightly with your finger**.

In principle, operation by touch is identical to the operation of a mobile phone.

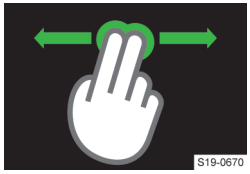
The following operating modes are specific to the Infotainment system.

Dragging up or down with two fingers



- Quickly review the list of phone contacts.
- Change 2D/3D map display.

Dragging left or right with two fingers



- Display next page of the HOME menu.

Pulling apart with two fingers



- Enlarge image.
- Zoom in to the map.

Pulling together with two fingers



- Minimize image.
- Zoom out of the map.

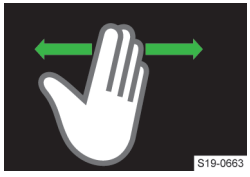
Turn two fingers



- Rotate image.
- Rotate the map.

Contactless gesture control

The Infotainment menus marked with the symbol can be controlled by hand gestures.



› Gesture control is achieved by slowly moving the hand back and forth approximately 8 cm above the lower edge of the screen.

Depending on the setting, a recognized gesture can be confirmed acoustically and animated.

Displaying operation help

› Tap on MENU > ⓘ > .

Settings

The following basic screen functions are set in the MENU > ⚙ > *Screen* menu.

- Brightness level of the screen.
- Switch off the screen.
- Display the time.
- Confirmation sounds and animations.

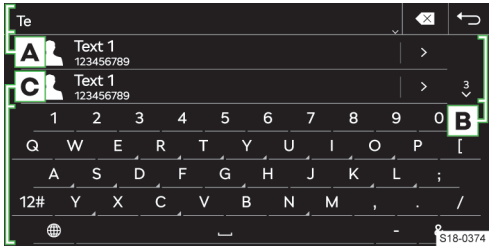
Infotainment keyboard

Keypad overview

The arrangement of the keypad characters depends on the Infotainment language that has been set.

In Infotainment, the following types are used, depending on the context.

- Alphanumeric.
- Numeric.
- Keypad for input.
- Keypad for search.



Keypad example

A Input line
- ⌫ Delete characters before the cursor
  - **Tap:** delete the last character
  - **Hold:** delete all characters one after the other
- ⌄ Display functional surfaces for moving the cursor in the input line
  - < Move cursor to the left
  - > Move cursor to the right

B Entries found
- ⌄ Show list

C Keypad functional surfaces
- ⬆ Change to lowercase
- ⇭ Switch to first having an upper-case letter, followed by lower-case letters
- ⬆ Switch to uppercase

- ABC/АБВ Switch to the language keypad
- 12# Switch to the numeric and character keypad
- 1/2/2/2Switch to other character variants
- Show additional keyboard languages
- Insert spaces
- The next line
- **Hold:** Show more character variants
- Show password
- OK Confirm the entered characters

Numeric keypad



Keypad example

A Input line
- Delete characters before the cursor
  - **Tap:** delete the last character
  - **Hold:** delete all characters

B Keypad functional surfaces

- OK Confirm the entered characters

If it is possible depending on the context, alphanumeric characters can be entered by holding a function area with the number.

Operation

The Infotainment keypad is used to enter characters, letters and numbers.

The keypad will be **automatically displayed** when Infotainment prompts for characters.

Find
When entering characters, corresponding entries are searched for.

The entry to be searched for can be entered including diacritics.

The keyboard will only provide characters that match the stored entries.

› To **display searched entries** tap ⌄.

Show additional keypad languages
To use the additional keypad languages, the desired languages must be set first.

› Tap or repeatedly tap the flag symbol until the desired language keypad is displayed.

Further character variants
› Press and hold the sign with the symbol .
› Select the desired symbol.

Setting up additional keyboard languages

› Tap **MENU** > > *Additional keypad languages*.

Voice control

Functionality

Voice control principle
Voice control works according to the principle of dialogue between the user and the Infotainment system.

The user says a voice command. The Infotainment system responds or executes the voice command.

Advanced voice control
The vehicle's advanced voice control enables the vehicle functions to be searched and operated online.

Advanced voice control understands fluent whole sentences. You do not need to use set commands or phrases.

The advanced voice control can, for example, search for special destinations or dictate SMS messages if the connected telephone makes this possible.

This function allows you to combine the search in the online and offline data of the Infotainment. The transition between online and offline search is seamless and imperceptible to the user.

Functional conditions

✓ Ignition is switched on.
✓ Infotainment is switched on.

Functional conditions of the advanced voice control
To use the advanced voice control, the following conditions must also be met.

✓ The vehicle supports the function.
✓ The vehicle has Infotainment and functions that can be controlled by the advanced voice control.
✓ The ŠKODA Connect services are active.
✓ The vehicle is within range of a contractual mobile network, through which the connection to ŠKODA Connect Services is ensured.
✓ The level of protection of personal data is set to *Share my location* .

Operation

Voice control process

› To **switch on** voice control on the multifunction steering wheel, press the button.

Or:

› Say the **"OK Laura"** activation command.

The prerequisite for recognising the activation command is the switched on menu item **MENU** > > *voice control* > *active*.

After switching on, the icon is displayed.

› Say a voice command.

During recognition of the voice command, the icon is displayed.

The Infotainment system then executes the voice command or plays the message. During the message, the icon is displayed.

After the execution of the voice command, voice control is switched off.

Correcting a voice command

› During voice command input, press the button on the multifunction steering wheel and say a new voice command.

Stopping voice control

Stopping leaves more time for voice command input, e.g. for searching for a phone contact.

› Move your finger up or down over the Infotainment screen.

Or:

› Say the voice command **"pause"**.

Resuming stopped voice control

› Press the button on the multifunction steering wheel.

Or:

› Tap on in the Infotainment screen.

Stopping the played back message

› Press the button on the multifunction steering wheel.

Ending voice control

› Press the button on the multifunction steering wheel twice.

Or:

› Say the voice command **"cancel"** during voice command input.

Limitation

For some Infotainment languages, no voice control is available. The Infotainment system will indicate this.

The messages are generated by the Infotainment system. Flawless clarity (e.g. road or city name) cannot always be guaranteed.

You cannot use voice control while a phone call is in progress.

Settings

The following voice control functions are set in the menu **MENU** > > *Voice control*.

- Confirmation tones.
- Enable/disable use of the activation word.

Self help

Starting acoustic help

› If the Infotainment system is expecting a voice command, say **"Help"**.

The **"Help"** voice command can be issued repeatedly for further tips on voice control.

Displaying the help

› Tap on **MENU** > > .

Or:

› If Infotainment is expecting a voice command, say **"Overview"**.

Switch example voice commands display on / off

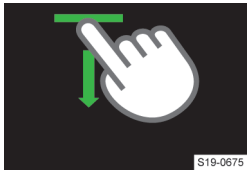
The system offers the option of displaying example voice commands after switching on the voice control in the Infotainment screen.

› To **turn** **MENU** > > *voice control* on/off, tap > *Show in Infotainment system*.

Control centre

Overview

Display of the control centre



› Press the bar at the top of the screen and drag down.

Closing the control centre

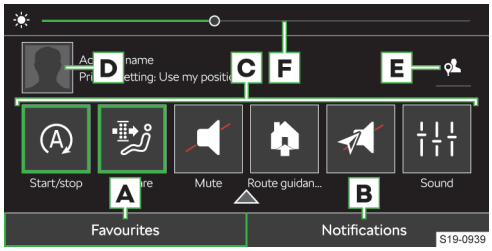
› Tap on ▲.

Or:

› Wait 5 seconds.

Control Centre

The Infotainment control centre can be used for quick access to the following functions.



A Display and management of the functional areas of preferred features

B Display list of information messages

C Preferred features

D Display of user account management

E Setting up the level of protection for personal data

F Setting up the instrument and key lighting

Set functional areas of preferred features

› To **display** editing mode hold any function surface of the preferred feature.

› To **add** the preferred feature, move the desired feature from the top of the screen to the functional surface at the bottom of the screen.

› To **close** edit mode, tap on ×.

Radio

Overview

Display menu

› Tap **RADIO**.

Or:

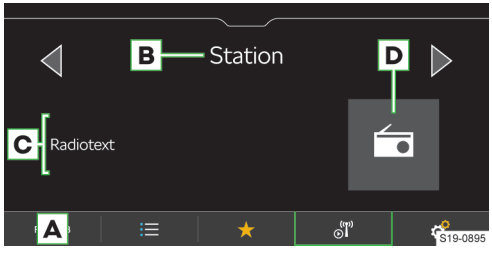
› Tap **MENU** > .

Analogue and digital radio player

› A Tap and select the desired frequency range.

› Tap and search for or select the desired station.

› Tap on .



A Select source

B Station name

C Information about the broadcast content

D Station logos

List of available stations

★ Show favourites

Information about the station

Search stations manually (valid for AM and FM)

Settings

List of available analogue and digital radio stations

› Tap on .

Played station

★ Station stored on the presets

TP A traffic radio station is set

The DAB transmitter emits images which are displayed in the information to the station

Manual update of the station list

In the station list, information about the programme type and the channel identification of the regional channel can be displayed.

Web radio player

› A tap and select a web radio station.

› Tap and search or select web radio.

› Tap on .



A Select source

B Station name

C Information about the broadcast content

D Station logos

List of web radio and podcasts

★ Show favourites

Information about the programme as well as the broadcast content of the web radio

Settings

Podcast player

› Tap A and select an online radio station.

› Tap and search for or select the desired pocast.

› Tap .



A Select source
B Podcast name
C Information about the broadcast content
D Podcast logo with the symbol
▷ **Tap:** Start playback
Tap: Pause
Tap: Go back 15 secs
Tap: Go forward 15 secs
View episodes of the podcast being played
List of web radio stations and podcasts
★ Show favourites
Show information about the podcast
Settings

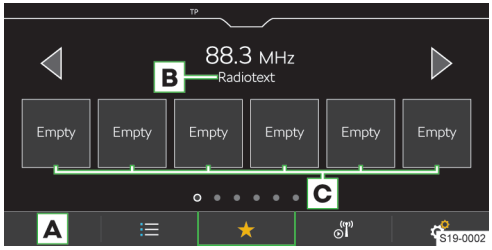
List of online radio stations and podcasts
› Tap on .



Search for online radio stations and podcasts
Recently heard web radio and podcasts
100 most popular web radio stations depending on the Infotainment language that has been set
Go to podcasts and select
Search and select web radio stations and podcasts for the selected country
Search for and select web radio stations and podcasts according to the selected language
Search and select web radio stations and podcasts by genre of choice
See list of related podcasts based on content listened to
See list of related web radio stations based on content listened to

The podcasts are shown in the displayed lists with the icon .

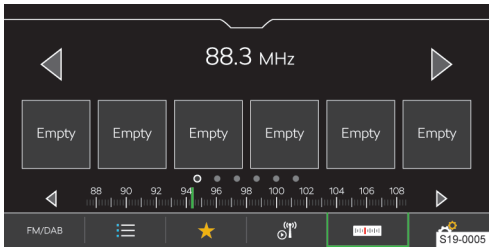
List of favourite stations and podcasts
› In the menu Radio, tap on ★.



A Select source
B Radio text
C Station buttons for favourite stations and podcasts

Operation

Select station



› Tap ◁ or ▷ at the top of the screen.

SCAN function
The function plays receivable stations of the selected frequency range in succession for a few seconds each.

› To **start automatic play** >, tap *Scan*.
› To **stop automatic play**, tap SCAN.

Find stations manually
Manual search is available for AM and FM stations.

› To display the functional surface for the FM station, turn on the > *Advanced settings* > *Show stations:* turn on > *FM*.
› In the Radio main menu, tap .
› To **search in sequence**, tap ◁ or ▷ next to the displayed frequency range scale.

Or:

› Hold down the scroll mark on the frequency range scale and move it to the desired value.

Limitation

- Infotainment supports digital radio reception in DAB and DAB+ formats.
- Car parks, tunnels, tall buildings or mountains can restrict radio reception.
- In the rear side windows, there are antennas for receiving the radio signal.

  Covering the panes with foils or metal-coated labels may affect the reception of the radio signal.
- The ŠKODA AUTO company assumes no responsibility for the availability, correct functioning and broadcast information of the RDS service.

Settings

Save the station currently being listened to as a favourite from the Radio main menu

› Hold the desired station key for preferred stations until the station is stored.

Save station to favourites from the list of available stations

Applies to AM, FM and DAB frequency ranges.

› Hold the line with the name of the desired station.

› Tap the desired preset button.

Save channels from the list of web radio stations and podcasts

Valid for web radio stations and podcasts

› Select a web radio station as the playback source.

› Tap on .

› Go to the desired web radio station or podcast and select it.

› Hold the line with the name of the desired station or podcast.

› Tap the desired preset button.

 With podcasts, it is not possible to save the individual episodes.

Deleting favourites

› In the **Radio** main menu, tap › *Delete presets*.

› To delete **a** station button for preferred stations, tap the desired station button and confirm the deletion.

› To delete **all** presets for preferred stations, tap *Delete all* and confirm the deletion.

Functional surfaces ◁ ▷ for analogue and digital radios

Applies to AM, FM and DAB frequency ranges.

The variant for **changing stations** using the function surface ◁ ▷ in the **Radio** main menu is set as follows.

› In the **Radio** main menu, tap › *Arrow buttons:*.

› Select the variant for switching between the stations stored on the station buttons or the stations stored in the list of available stations.

Function surfaces ◁ ▷ for web radio stations and podcasts

Valid for web radio stations and podcasts

The variant for **changing stations** using the function surface ◁ ▷ in the **Radio** main menu is set as follows.

› In the **Radio** main menu, tap › *Arrow buttons:*.

› Select the variant for switching between the stations stored on the station keys or the last web stations and podcasts listened to.

Switch traffic reception (TP) for stations on/off

Applies to FM and DAB frequency range.

› In the **Radio** main menu, tap › *Traffic program (TP)*.

Assign station logo from the Infotainment memory

Applies to the FM and DAB frequency ranges.

Infotainment offers the option of assigning logos, which are stored in the Infotainment memory, to the stations.

› In the **Radio** main menu, tap › *Station logos*.

› Select the desired station and logo.

Switching off the station logo display

Applies to the FM and DAB frequency ranges.

› In the **Radio** main menu, tap › *Station logos*.

› Select the desired station and *No station logo*.

Activating / deactivating automatic station logo assignment

Applies to the FM and DAB frequency ranges.

When the function is switched on, a station logo from the Infotainment memory is assigned when the station is stored on a preset.

› In the **Radio** main menu, tap › *Advanced settings* › *Auto-select station logos*.

Turn on/off radio text reception

Applies to the FM and DAB frequency ranges.

When the function is switched on and the station buttons are displayed, you can see more information about the content broadcast from the station to which you are listening.

› In the **Radio** main menu, tap › *Radio text*.

Regional FM station logo

Applies to the FM frequency range.

Infotainment provides the option of using country-specific FM station logos.

› In the **Radio** main menu, tap on ⚙ > *Advanced settings* > *Region for station logo:*.
› Choose the country.

Switching additional announcements of the DAB transmitter on / off
Applies to the DAB frequency range.

When the function is switched on, other announcements are received as traffic announcements. E.g. weather news, sports reports, financial news etc.

› In the **Radio** main menu, tap ⚙ > *Advanced settings* > *Additional DAB announcements*.

Switch RDS on/off
Applies to the FM frequency range.

The menu item is only available for some countries.

› In the **Radio** main menu, tap ⚙ > *Advanced settings* > *Radio Data System (RDS)*.

If the **RDS function is disabled**, the following menu items in **FM station** settings are not available.

▸ Traffic programme (TP).
▸ Radio text.
▸ RDS Regional.
▸ Automatic frequency change (AF).
▸ Regional station logo.

Switch automatic switching to a similar DAB transmitter on / off
Applies to the DAB frequency range.

When the function is switched on and there is signal loss from the DAB station being listened to, Infotainment automatically sets another DAB station with similar content.

› In the **Radio** main menu, tap ⚙ > *Advanced settings* > *Switch to a similar station if reception is poor*.

Displaying FM / DAB stations or FM stations in the list of available stations
Applies to the FM and DAB frequency ranges.

Depending on the following setting, the stations of the selected frequency range are displayed in the list of available stations.

› In the **Radio** main menu, tap ⚙ > *Advanced settings* > *Show stations:*.
› Select one of the following menu items.
▸ *FM / DAB* - the list shows available FM and DAB stations.
▸ *FM* - the list shows available FM stations.

Sound quality of web radio stations and podcasts
Valid for web radio stations and podcasts.

› To adjust the sound quality in the main menu, tap **Radio** ⚙ > *Audio Quality:*.
› Choose low or high quality.

The quality you set affects the amount of data used in the data connection.

Quality also depends on the speed and availability of the data connection.

If playback failure occur, reduce the sound quality.

Media

What you should be mindful of

▸ Do not save any important data or that which has not been backed up on the connected audio sources. ŠKODA assumes no responsibility for lost or damaged files or connected audio sources.
▸ When changing or connecting an audio source, this may cause sudden changes in volume. Reduce the volume before changing or connecting an audio source.
▸ When connecting an audio source, the source information messages can be displayed. These messages must be observed and, if necessary, confirmed.
▸ The national copyright laws that apply in your country must be observed.

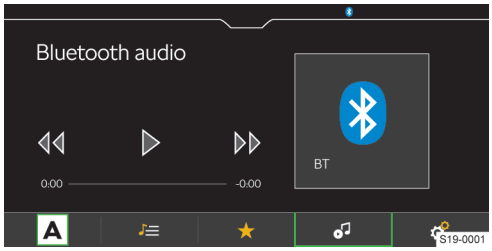
Overview

Display menu
› Tap **MEDIA**.

Or:

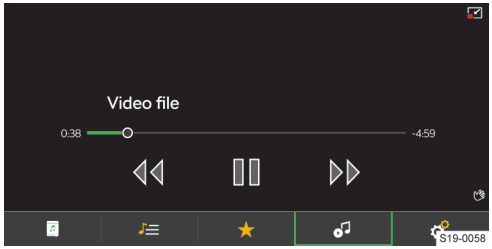
› Tap **MENU** > ♫.

Music player



A Choose source
Manage files / multimedia database
★ Show favourites
Details about the track being played
⚙ Settings

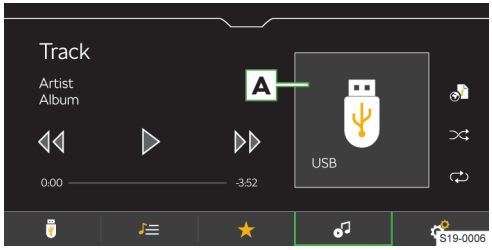
Video player



Manage files / multimedia database
★ Show favourites
Show video
Reduce image display
Enlarge image display
Settings

Operating the Player

Operation - Basics



A Album image / symbol of the connected source
▸ **Tap:** list available albums
▷ **Tap:** Start playback
Tap: Pause
Within 3 seconds of starting playback, tap: play the previous song
After 3 seconds from the start of playback, tap: to play the current title from the beginning
Hold: fast rewind within the track
Tap: play the next track
Hold: fast forward within the track

Movement within the title is also possible by dragging the finger over the timeline.

Advanced operation
Turn on / off repeat playback of the current track
Turn on / off repeat playback of the current album / folder
Turn on / off random playback of the current album / folder
Save the played track in the "*My playlist*" playlist

"My playlist" management
▸ To **display the playlist**, tap › › › .
▸ To **manage the playlist** tap in the displayed playlist.

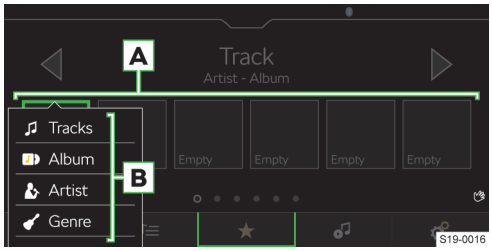
The following activities can be carried out in playlist management.
▸ Control playback.
▸ Change the order of a title in the list by holding and moving ≡ to the desired position.
▸ Delete title.

Limitation

NOTICE
The availability of some media operation functions is dependent on the connected source and the software being used, e.g. Bluetooth®.

Settings

Manage favourites



› To **save** the desired functional area for favourites, hold A.
› Select one of the list entries available B.
› To **clear** in the main menu **Media** tap › *Manage favourites* .
› To delete **a favourite**, tap the desired list entry and confirm the deletion.

Or:

› To delete **all favourites** *Clear all* and confirm the deletion.

Traffic
› To **turn on/off** the traffic monitoring during the playback of media files, go to the **Media** main menu and tap on › *Traffic programme (TP)*.

Supported sources and files

Supported sources

Source	Interface	Type	Specification	File system
USB	USB 1.x; 2.x 3.x or higher with USB 2.x support	MSC	USB stick	VFAT FAT16 FAT32 exFAT NTFS
			HDD (without special software)	
			USB devices that use the USB mass storage support protocol	
		MTP	Devices running the Android or Windows Phone operating system that support the Media Transfer Protocol	
		Apple	Devices with the iOS operating system and the iAP2 protocol	HFS+
Bluetooth® player	Bluetooth®	-	Bluetooth® protocols A2DP and AVRCP (1.0 - 1.6)	-

Mobile device compatibility
It is possible to check the ŠKODA web pages to see if Infotainment is compatible with the selected mobile device being tested. This check is carried out by using the following reference or by reading the QR code.

http://go.skoda.eu/compatibility

All information given is incidental and serves as information.

The ŠKODA AUTO company cannot guarantee full functionality and compatibility, e.g. due to a software update of the Infotainment and the mobile devices.

Supported audio files

Compression format	Codec type	File extension	Max. bit rate [kbps]	Max. sampling rate [kHz]	Multi channels
MPEG	MPEG 1 Layer 2	mp2	32 - 384	32, 44, 48	Mono, stereo, Joint stereo
	MPEG 2 Layer 2		8 - 160	16, 22, 24	
	MPEG 1 Layer 3	mp3	32 - 320	32, 44, 48	Mono, dual mono, Stereo, Joint Stereo
	MPEG 2 Layer 3		8 - 160	16, 22, 24	
	MPEG 2.5 Layer 3			8, 11, 12	

Compression format	Codec type	File extension	Max. bit rate [kbps]	Max. sampling rate [kHz]	Multi channels
WMA	Windows Media Audio 7	wma	6 - 192	8, 16, 22, 32, 44, 48, 96	Mono, stereo, Joint stereo
	Windows Media Audio 8		8 - 384	8, 11, 16, 22, 32, 44, 48, 96	
	Windows Media Audio 9 and 9.1		8 - 768		
	Windows Media Audio 9.2		8 - 320		
	Windows Media Audio 10		32 - 768	32, 44, 48, 96	
ADTS	AAC LC	aac	16 - 2048	22, 24, 32, 44, 48	Stereo
	AAC HE			16, 22, 24, 32, 44, 48	
	AAC HEv2				
MP4	M4A LC	m4a	16 - 400	22, 24, 32, 44, 48	Stereo
	M4A HE			16, 22, 24, 32, 44, 48	
	M4A HEv2		16 - 64		
OGG	OGG-Vorbis	ogg	8 - 576	8, 11, 12, 16, 22, 24, 32, 44, 48, 96	Mono, Stereo
FLAC	FLAC	flac	-	8, 11, 12, 16, 22, 24, 32, 44, 48, 64, 88, 96, 192	Mono, stereo, Joint stereo
RIFF	WAV	wav	64 - 3072	8, 11, 12, 16, 22, 24, 32, 44, 48, 96	Mono, Stereo
Monkey's	Monkey's	ape	8 - 192		
SBC	Bluetooth A2DP	-	8 - 345	8, 11, 12, 16, 22, 24, 32, 44, 48	Mono, stereo, Joint stereo
OPUS	OPUS	opus	6 - 2000	8 - 48	Mono, stereo, Multichannel

Files that are protected by **DRM**- and **iTunes®** methods are not supported by Infotainment.

Supported video files

Codec type	File extension	Max. recordings per second bit rate [Mbit/s]
MPEG 1	mpg mpeg m1v mPV	1.5
MPEG 2	mpg mpeg ps m2v	15
MPEG 4 (H.264)	m4p mp4 m4v mp4v mov	50
MPJEG		
MPEG 4 (ISO)		
Xvid	Xvid	20

Codec type	File extension	Max. recordings per second bit rate [Mbit/s]
WMV9	wmv asf	50

Supported playlists

Codec type	File extension
M3U	m3u
M3U8	m3u8
PLS	pls
WPL	wpl
ASX	asx

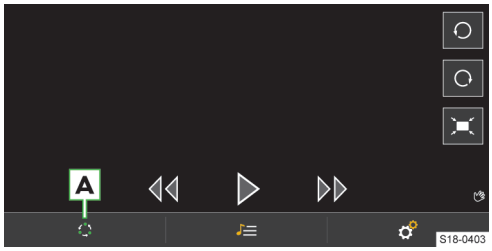
Images

Overview

Display menu

› Tap MENU > .

Image viewer



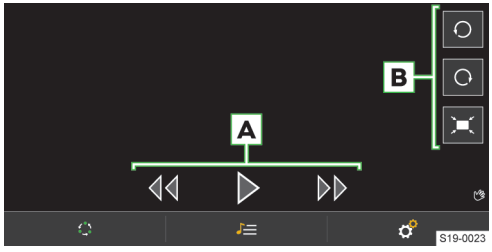
A Select source

Manage files

Settings

Operation

Operation using functional areas



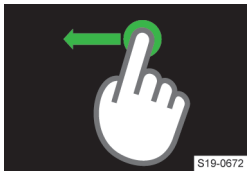
A View images

- ▶ Show the next image
- ▶ Show the previous image
- ▶ Start slideshow
- ▶ Stop slideshow

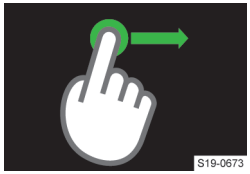
B View image

- ▶ Turn left
- ▶ Turn right
- ▶ Show in output size

Gesture control



▶ Show the next image.



▶ Show the previous image.



▶ Enlarge view.



▶ Zoom out.



▶ Turn 90 °.

Settings

The following Infotainment functions are set in the MENU > > menu.

▶ Display image size.
▶ Display image duration during the slideshow.
▶ Slideshow repeat.

Supported sources and files

Supported sources

Source	Interface	Specification	File system
USB	USB 1.x; 2.x 3.x or higher with USB 2.x support	USB stick	VFAT FAT16 FAT32 exFAT NTFS
		HDD (without special software)	

Supported files

Codec type	File extension	Max. resolution [Mpx]
BMP	bmp	4
JPG; JPEG	jpg; jpeg	4 (Progressive Mode) 64
GIF	gif	4
PNG	png	4

The maximum supported image size is 20 MB.

Mobile device management

Cybernetic security

Your vehicle contains components that are used to exchange information and data between the vehicle and the connected mobile devices or the Internet.

These components have security mechanisms that minimise the risk of unauthorised access to the vehicle systems.

Regular software updates help reduce the risk of unauthorised access to vehicle systems and vehicle functions. The following guidelines must therefore be observed.

› Use only media carriers, Bluetooth® devices, and mobile devices that contain no harmful data or malware.
› Regularly update the software provided by ŠKODA AUTO.

We recommend having the system software and components updated by a specialist company.

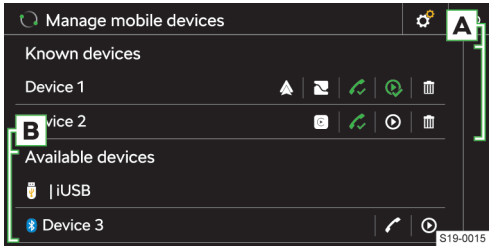
⚠ WARNING
Risk of an accident!
Malware in the vehicle can influence certain vehicle functions or deactivate them if necessary.
› If the vehicle reacts in an unusual way, immediately reduce speed or stop the vehicle.
› Seek the help of a specialist garage.

⚠ WARNING
Malware in the vehicle may gain unauthorised access to the information and data of the vehicle, and on occasion, to connected mobile devices.

Overview

Using mobile device management, devices can be connected, disconnected, and interchanged.

Display mobile device management
› Tap on MENU > > *Manage mobile devices*.



- The device enables a connection via the Bluetooth®"hands-free profile"
- The device is connected via the Bluetooth®"hands-free profile"
- The device enables a connection via the Bluetooth® audio profile
- The device is connected via the Bluetooth® audio profile
- Remove the device from the list **previously connected devices**
- The device enables a SmartLinkconnection to be made via Android Auto
- The device enables a SmartLinkconnection to be made via Apple CarPlay
- The device enables a SmartLinkconnection to be made via MirrorLink

A Connected / Previously connected devices
B Available devices

Mobile device and application limitations

Availability of features
The availability of certain features depends on the type of mobile device, as well as that of the applications installed.

Mobile device compatibility
It is possible to check the ŠKODA web pages to see if Infotainment is compatible with the selected mobile device being tested. This check is carried out by using the following reference or by reading the QR code.

http://go.skoda.eu/compatibility

All information given is incidental and serves as information.

The ŠKODA AUTO company cannot guarantee full functionality and compatibility, e.g. due to a software update of the Infotainment and the mobile devices.

Bluetooth® compatibility of mobile devices
Due to the large number of mobile devices, it is not possible to guarantee total Bluetooth® compatibility with Infotainment. Bluetooth® compatibility depends on the Bluetooth® version as well as the implementation of Bluetooth® protocols by the manufacturer of the mobile device.

Applications in mobile devices
Mobile devices can be used to install applications that allow you to view additional information on the Infotainment screen, or to operate the Infotainment system.

Due to the variety of applications, as well as their ongoing development, the available applications may not function on all mobile devices. ŠKODA AUTO assumes no liability for their proper functioning.

The scope of available applications and their functionality is dependent on the type of Infotainment, as well as the vehicle and country.

Information about the ŠKODA applications
Detailed information on the ŠKODA applications can be found on the website after reading the following QR code or using the link.

http://go.skoda.eu/mobile-apps

Connection set-up

Connect a mobile device to Infotainment
› Find available Bluetooth® devices in the mobile device.
› Select the Infotainment Bluetooth® unit.

The unit name can be determined by tapping **MENU** > > *Manage mobile devices* > > *device name:*.

› Confirm the PIN; enter it if necessary and then confirm.

Connect Infotainment to a non-paired mobile device
› Tap on **MENU** > > *Manage mobile devices*.
› Select the desired device from the list of **available devices**.
› Select the desired Bluetooth® profile.
› Confirm the PIN; enter it if necessary and then confirm.
› If two devices are connected to the Infotainment, select the device to be replaced.

Connect Infotainment to a previously connected mobile device
› **MENU** > > *Manage mobile devices* .

Or:

› **PHONE** > > *Select mobile phone* .
› Select the desired device in the list of **previously connected devices**.
› Select the desired Bluetooth® profile.
› If two devices are connected to the Infotainment, select the device to be replaced.

SmartLink connection
Infotainment offers the option to establish the SmartLink connection with compatible mobile devices using the following connection types.

- Android Auto
- Apple CarPlay
- MirrorLink

Mobile devices can be connected to the Infotainment via USB cable or Wi-Fi, as long as the mobile device supports it.

› Connect the mobile device to the Infotainment via a USB cable or browse and connect to a wireless network.
› Tap the icon of the supported connection.

Telephone

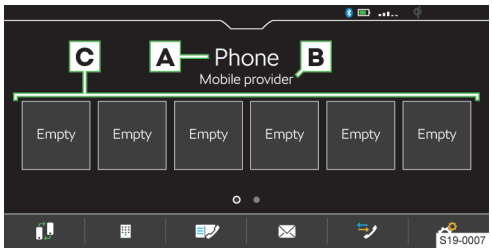
Overview

Display menu
› Tap **PHONE**.

Or:

› Tap MENU > .

If the menu **Telephone** is not displayed, check whether the mobile device is connected.



A Name of the connected telephone
▶ **Tap:** Show list of previously connected phones

B Name of telephone service providers
▶ If the symbol ▷ is displayed in front of the name, roaming is active.

C Preset buttons for preferred contacts

Change the main telephone with the additional telephone

Enter telephone number

Contact list

Text messages / emails

Call lists

Settings

Conditions for connecting a telephone with Infotainment

✓ The Bluetooth® function of the Infotainment and the telephone needs to be switched on.

The Bluetooth® function of the Infotainment is switched on in the menu item MENU > > *Manage mobile devices* > > *Bluetooth*.

✓ Visibility of the Infotainment is switched on.

The visibility of the Infotainment is switched on in the menu item MENU > > *Manage mobile devices* > > *Visibility:*.

✓ The telephone is within signal range of the Infotainment's Bluetooth® unit.

✓ The telephone is compatible with Infotainment.

Telephone operation

Enter telephone number

› In the **Telephone** main menu, tap .

› Enter the telephone number using the numeric keypad that is displayed.

The displayed numeric keypad can also be used for searching for contacts.

If, for example, the digits 32 are entered, contacts with the letter sequence DA, FA, EB etc. are displayed next to the numeric keypad.

List of telephone contacts

The list of telephone contacts is imported from the connected main telephone.

› To **display** the contact list in the **telephone** main menu, tap .

› To **search** within the list, tap *Enter contact*.

› Enter the details you wish to find.

› To **establish a connection** with a contact, tap the functional area showing the desired contact.

If a contact has multiple telephone numbers, select the telephone number from the displayed list.

› To display the **details** for a contact, tap >.

Establish a connection to the voice mailbox number

› In the **Telephone** main menu, tap > .

Telephone call

Depending on the context of the telephone conversation, the following functions can be selected.

End connection set-up / reject incoming call / end call

Answer an incoming call / Return to the call on hold

Switch the ringer off / on

Hold a call

Switch the microphone off / on

Show details of the caller

Reject an incoming call using an SMS message

Answer a call from the second telephone during a call on the first telephone
The ongoing call on the first telephone is terminated by accepting the call.

› To **switch the call from the speakers to the telephone**, go to the **Telephone** main menu and tap on > *Hands-free* .

› To **switch the call tone from the telephone to the speakers**, tap .

Conference call

A conference call is a joint telephone conversation with a minimum of three and a maximum of six participants.

› Make the next call during an ongoing conversation/ conference.

Or:

› Accept a new incoming call by tapping the function area .

› To **start** a conference call, tap on the functional area .

During an ongoing conference call, the following functions can be selected depending on the context.

- Hold the conference call and leave temporarily (the conference will continue in the background)
- Return to the conference being held
- Switch the microphone off / on
- End the conference
- Show details of the conference call

In the details of the conference call, depending on the connected telephone, the following functions can be selected.

- Show details of the conference call participants
- End conversation with the conference call participant
- Conversation with a participant outside of the conference call

Send a text message

› In the **Telephone** main menu, tap ✉ > ✉ *Messages* > ✎ *New text message*.

› Write a text message and confirm; a view of the message is displayed.

The message can be edited when the text area within the view is tapped.

› Search for or select the recipient of the message.

› Add more recipients or confirm selected recipients.

› Tap *Send*.

Display received text messages

› In the **Telephone** main menu, tap ✉ > ✉ *Messages* > ✉ or ✉.

› Messages that are received are displayed as individual messages or as messages in a conversation, depending on the following setting.

In order to **switch the display of messages in a conversation on or off**, go to the **Telephone** main menu and tap ⚙ > *Show messages as a conversation*.

› To **switch on or off a graphic notification** regarding the receipt of a new message, go to the **Telephone** main menu and tap ⚙ > *New message notifications*.

ⓘ Infotainment offers the possibility to read the text message (context-dependent) by means of the generated Infotainment voice if 💬 is tapped.

Send E-mails

› In the **Telephone** main menu, tap on ✉ > ✉ *E-mails* > ✎ *New e-mail*.

› Write an e-mail and confirm that an e-mail is displayed.

The text can be edited when the text area within the view is tapped.

› Search for or select the recipient of the email.

› Add more recipients or confirm selected recipients.

› Enter the subject of the e-mail.

› Tap *Send*.

Show received e-mails

› In the **Telephone** main menu, tap ✉ > ✉ *E-mails* > ✉.

› Select the desired e-mail.

› To **switch on or off**,**a graphic notification** regarding the receipt of a new e-mail, go to the **Telephone** main menu and tap ⚙ > *New message notifications*.

Settings of the Infotainment telephone functions

Telephone-Infotainment-Connection types

The way in which the telephone is connected depends on the number of phones currently connected to the Infotainment.

- **No telephone** - The telephone is connected as a main telephone.
- **One telephone** - The telephone is connected as an additional telephone.
- **Two telephones** - Select the telephone to be replaced.

› To **switch between the main telephone and the supplementary telephone** in the main menu, tap **telephone** 📞.

Connect the telephone to Infotainment

› Find available Bluetooth® devices on the phone.

› Select the Infotainment Bluetooth® unit.

The unit name can be determined by the menu item **MENU** > ⚙ > *Manage mobile devices* > ⚙ > *Device name:*.

› Confirm the PIN; enter it if necessary and then confirm.

Connect Infotainment to a non-paired telephone - no telephone is connected

› Tap on **PHONE**.

Or:

› Tap on **MENU** > ✓.

› Follow the instructions in the Infotainment screen.

Connecting Infotainment to a non-paired telephone - another telephone is connected

› Tap on **MENU** > ⚙ > *Manage mobile devices*.

› Select the desired device from the list of **available devices**.

› Select the desired Bluetooth® profile.

› Confirm the PIN; enter it if necessary and then confirm.

The telephone is connected as an additional telephone.

Or:

› If two telephones are connected to the Infotainment, select the telephone to be replaced.

Connect Infotainment to a previously paired telephone

› Tap on **MENU** > ⚙ > *Manage mobile devices*.

Or:

Tap on **PHONE** > ⚙ > *Select mobile phone*.

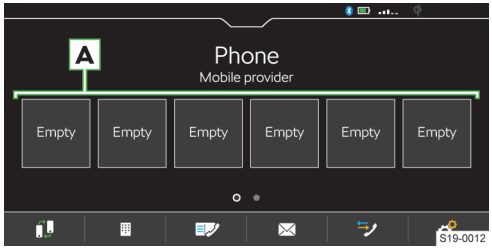
› Select the desired device from the list of **previously connected devices**.

The telephone is connected as an additional telephone.

Or:

› If two telephones are connected to the Infotainment, select the telephone to be replaced.

Manage station buttons for favourite contacts



› To **to save** the desired station button, hold A.

› Select a contact from the list displayed.

› If the contact contains several phone numbers, select the desired phone number.

› To **display the menu for deletion** go to the **Telephone** main menu and tap ⚙ > *Manage favourites* .

› To delete **one** station button, tap the desired list entry and confirm the deletion.

Or:

› To delete **all** station buttons, tap *Clear all* and confirm the deletion.

Import telephone contacts

After first connecting the main telephone with Infotainment, telephone contacts will start to be imported into the Infotainment memory.

Infotainment can import up to 5000 telephone contacts together with contact pictures. Each contact can include max. 5 telephone numbers.

Depending on the type of telephone, import confirmation may be required.

Update telephone contacts

When re-connecting the telephone with Infotainment, an **automatic** update of the list is carried out.

› For a **manual** update of the list in the **telephone** main menu, tap on ⚙ > *Import contacts*.

Sort contacts in the phone book

› In the **telephone** main menu, tap on ⚙ > *Sort by:* and select the sort type.

Ringer

Some phones do not allow the use of the telephone ringtone; instead, the Infotainment ringtone is used.

› To **set the Infotainment ring** go to the **Telephone** main menu and tap ⚙ > *Select ringtone*.

› Select the ringtone.

Number for the voice mailbox

› To **set the voice mailbox number** go to the **Telephone** main menu and tap on ⚙ > *Mailbox number:*.

› Enter the number of the voice mailbox.

Turn the graphic notice regarding receiving a new message/email on or off

When the feature is on, the new message icon appears on the status bar and in the feature area for the messages when a new message/e-mail is received.

› In the **Telephone** main menu, tap ⚙ > *New message notifications*.

Simultaneous calls

This applies to some countries.

Depending on the connected telephone, it is possible to answer the next incoming call and hold the previous call.

› To switch on simultaneous calls, tap on **telephone** ⚙ > *Parallel talks*.

Wi-Fi

Functionality

The Wi-Fi can be used for the internet connection or for the SmartLinkConnection.

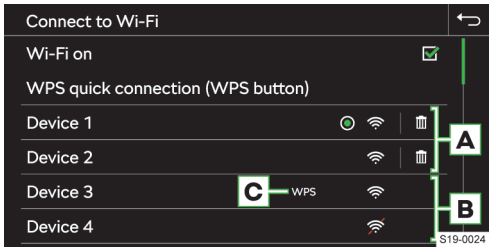
The Infotainment hotspot can connect up to 8 mobile devices. At the same time, the Infotainment can be connected to another hotspot.

› To display the list of connected mobile devices, tap **MENU** > ⚙ > *Wi-Fi* > *Infotainment system as hotspot* > *Connected devices*.

Overview of available hotspots

Display available hotspots

› Tap **MENU** > ⚙ > *Wi-Fi* > *Wi-Fi:*.



A Previously connected hotspots

B Available hotspots

C The hotspot supports the WPS connection

⊙ Currently connected hotspot

🗑 Delete information about the hotspot connection

Wi-Fi signal strength of the hotspot

The Wi-Fi signal from the hotspot is not available

Functional restriction

The Infotainment system can only be connected to a hotspot with WPA2 access protection.

Restriction of the Wi-Fi connection
In some countries, the WiFi connection is restricted for legal reasons. When crossing the border of the country in question, the connection with a mobile device connected via Wi-Fi can be ended or restricted.

ⓘ Find out about country-specific legal restrictions. If necessary, switch off the Wi-Fi manually.

Settings

Connect a mobile device to the Infotainment hotspot

› Turn on the Infotainment's Wi-Fi hotspot in the menu item MENU > ⚙ > *Wi-Fi* > *Infotainment system as hotspot* > *Use as hotspot*.

› Turn on the Wi-Fi on the mobile device.

› In the list of available Wi-Fi devices, look for Infotainment Wi-Fi.

The name of the Infotainment is taken from the menu item MENU > ⚙ > *Wi-Fi* > *Infotainment system as hotspot* > *Network name:*.

› Select the Infotainment hotspot and enter the required password.

The password for connecting to the Infotainment hotspot is taken from the menu item MENU > ⚙ > *Wi-Fi* > *Infotainment system as hotspot* > *Network key*.

› Confirm the connection.

Connect Infotainment to the mobile device hotspot

› Turn on the Infotainment's Wi-Fi unit in the menu item MENU > ⚙ > *Wi-Fi* > *Wi-Fi:* Turn on > *Wi-Fi on*.

› Select the desired hotspot in the list of available hotspots.

› Enter the password for connecting to mobile devices.

ⓘ Infotainment stores passwords for previously connected hotspots.

Security level of the Infotainment hotspot
The security level is set at *WPA2* and cannot be changed.

Activate/deactivate data transfer between the Infotainment and the connected device

› To turn data transmission on or off, tap MENU > ⚙ > *Wi-Fi* > *Infotainment system as hotspot* > *Connected devices* > ⚙.

Change the name of the Infotainment hotspot

▶ Tap MENU > ⚙ > *Wi-Fi* > *Infotainment system as hotspot* > *Network name:*.

▶ Enter the name and confirm.

Change password for connection to Infotainment hotspot
The password must be a minimum of 12 and a maximum of 63 characters.

▶ MENU > ⚙ > *Wi-Fi* > *Infotainment system as a hotspot* > *Network key* .

▶ Enter and confirm the password.

Quick connection of Infotainment to the mobile device hotspot

› On the mobile device, turn on the hotspot, its visibility, and the option for WPS connection.

› MENU> ⚙ > *Wi-Fi* > *Wi-Fi:* Tap > *WPS quick connection (WPS button)*.

Automatic WPS connection

› Tap MENU > ⚙ > *Wi-Fi* > *Quick connection to Infotainment system*.

› In the mobile device, switch on the option for connection via WPS.

› Wait for the connection to be established and, if necessary, confirm the respective messages.

Manual WPS connection

› In the mobile device, switch on the option for connection via WPS PIN.

The mobile device display will show the WPS PIN for connecting to the Infotainment.

› Tap MENU > ⚙ > *Wi-Fi* > *Quick connection to Infotainment system* > 1 > *WPS PIN*.

› Enter the WPS PIN in the Infotainment and confirm.

› Wait for the connection to be established and, if necessary, confirm the respective messages.

Automatic connection using the QR code

› Tap MENU > ⚙ > *Wi-Fi* > *Quick connection to Infotainment system*.

› In the mobile device, switch on the option for connection via QR Code.
› With the mobile device, read the QR code displayed on the Infotainment screen.
› Wait for the connection to be established and, if necessary, confirm the respective messages.

Tips for a perfect connection

ⓘ

▸ Keep only the hotspot to be connected switched on and switch off the other hotspots.
▸ Delete unused hotspots. This shortens the time required to establish a connection.
▸ For some hotspots, the connection takes longer, so wait for the connection to finish.
▸ If the connection is interrupted, recheck the available hotspots and repeat the connection.

SmartLink

Functionality

SmartLink offers the ability to display and operate certified applications from a connected mobile device in the Infotainment screen.

Certification may be conditional upon the use of the latest update to the particular SmartLink application.

Applications include, for example, apps for route guidance, telephoning, listening to music, etc.

Mobile devices can be connected via a USB cable or Wi-Fi.

Supported connection types

SmartLink supports the following connection types.

▸ Android Auto.
▸ Apple CarPlay.
▸ MirrorLink.

Overview of the SmartLink connection

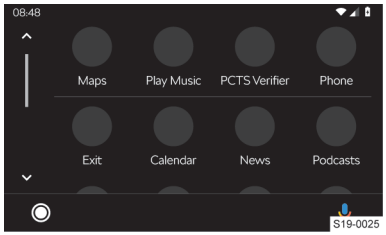
Menu SmartLink

› Tap MENU > SmartLink.



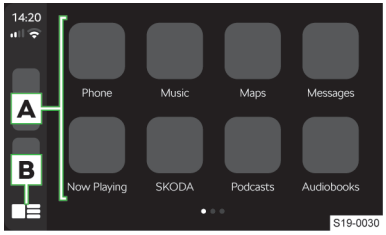
A Previously connected device
B Currently connection device
ⓘ Display information about SmartLink
⊗ Disconnection of the active connection
Disconnection of the active connection
Settings in SmartLink menu

Android Auto



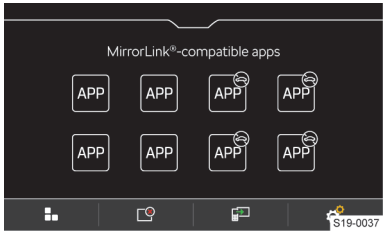
○ Overview of running applications, phone calls, received text messages and the like.
Switching on voice control (Google Voice)

Apple CarPlay



A List of available applications
B Depending on the duration of operation:
▸ **Tap:** Return to the Apple CarPlay main menu
▸ **Hold:** Turn on voice control (Siri)

MirrorLink



It is not possible to operate the application while driving
Return to the SmartLink main menu
List of running applications
Display the last running application in the connected mobile device
Settings

Connection conditions

General connection conditions

✓ The mobile device supports the following SmartLink connection types: Android Auto. Apple CarPlay and MirrorLink.

✓ Mobile devices, as well as the type of SmartLinkconnection, are supported in the respective market.

✓ Some connected mobile devices require the mobile device to be “unlocked”.

Conditions for Android Auto

✓ The device to be connected must have Android AutoSupport.

A list of devices, supported regions and applications that the Android Auto connection supports can be found on the websites of Google Inc..

✓ The Android Auto application needs to be installed on the mobile device.

✓ Some applications require the data connection in the mobile device to be turned on.

Conditions for Apple CarPlay

✓ The device to be connected must have Apple CarPlaySupport.

A list of devices, supported regions and applications that the Apple CarPlay connection supports can be found on the websites of Apple Inc..

✓ Siri voice control is on.

✓ The data connection is switched on in the mobile device.

Conditions for MirrorLink

✓ The device to be connected must have MirrorLinkSupport.

A list of devices and applications that the MirrorLink connection supports can be found on the websites of Car Connectivity Consorcium®.

✓ The MirrorLink application needs to be installed on the mobile device.

✓ Some applications require the data connection in the connected mobile device to be turned on.

Operation

Operation of the running MirrorLink application

Display of control surfaces at the bottom

Display of control surfaces at the top

Return to the MirrorLink main menu

Limitation

Restriction of the Wi-Fi connection

In some countries, the WiFi connection is restricted for legal reasons. When crossing the border of the country in question, the connection with a mobile device connected via Wi-Fi can be ended or restricted.

Find out about country-specific legal restrictions. If necessary, switch off the Wi-Fi manually.

Restriction of SmartLink applications while driving

For safety reasons, operation of some SmartLinkapplications while driving is not possible or is restricted.

Restriction of the navigation function

If route guidance is currently being carried out through Infotainment, this is ended when you start route guidance in the Apple CarPlay application.

If there is route guidance in the Apple CarPlay application, it is ended by starting the destination guidance using Infotainment.

SmartLink settings

Apple CarPlay - Connection via USB

› Turn on the Infotainment.

› Turn on the mobile device.

› Connect the mobile device to the front USB input using a cable.

› Choose to connect via Apple CarPlay.

Apple CarPlay - Connection via Wi-Fi from Infotainment

› Turn on Bluetooth® and Bluetooth® visibility in the Apple mobile device.

› Tap on MENU > > *Manage mobile devices*.

› In the displayed list, look for and select the desired device with the symbol .

› Follow the instructions on the Infotainment screen and confirm the Bluetooth® pairing.

› If another device is connected to the Infotainment, select the device to be replaced.

Apple CarPlay - Connection via Wi-Fi from mobile devices

To establish a connection, the following conditions must be met.

✓ The minimum iOS version is 9.

✓ No other mobile device can be connected via SmartLink.

✓ Wi-Fi and Bluetooth® functionality is switched on in the Infotainment system.

› In the mobile device, turn on the CarPlay function.

› Press and hold the button on the multifunction steering wheel.

The Infotainment screen displays a connection message with the name of the Bluetooth® unit of the Infotainment.

› Find available Bluetooth® devices on the phone.

› Select the Infotainment Bluetooth® unit.

› If necessary, confirm the PIN.
› In the Infotainment screen, select the connection type Apple CarPlay.

Apple CarPlay – Disconnection
› In the Apple CarPlay main menu, tap on the "ŠKODA" functional area.
› Tap on .

Android Auto - Connection via USB
› Turn on the Infotainment.
› Turn on the mobile device.
› Connect the mobile device to the front USB input using a cable.
› Choose to connect via Android Auto.

Android Auto - Connection via Wi-Fi from Infotainment
› Tap on MENU > > > *mobile devices*.
› Select the desired device from the list of **available devices**.
› Select the Bluetooth®hands-free profile.
› Confirm the PIN; enter it if necessary and then confirm.
› If another device is connected to the Infotainment, select the device to be replaced.
› From the list of **known devices**, select the desired device with the symbol.

Android Auto - Disconnection
› In the main menu of Android Auto > tap on "Return to ŠKODA".
› Tap on .

MirrorLink - Connection via USB
› Turn on the Infotainment.
› Turn on the mobile device.
› Connect the mobile device to the front USB input using a cable.
› Choose to connect through MirrorLink.

MirrorLink - Disconnection
› In the MirrorLink main menu, tap .
› Tap on .

Change to another device / connection type
Infotainment allows you to switch between currently connected devices and the connection type.
› Tap on MENU > .
› Select the desired device or connection type.

Navigation

Navigation announcements

Infotainment route guidance takes place using graphic driving recommendations and navigation announcements.

The navigation announcements are generated by the Infotainment system. Navigation announcement clarity (e.g. road or city name) cannot always be guaranteed.

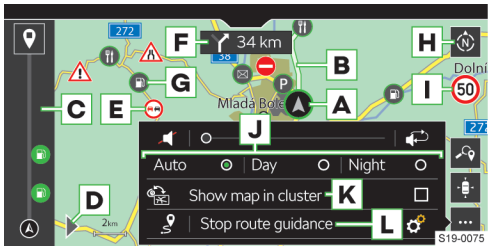
Repeat the last navigation announcement
› Tap on ··· > .

Turn off navigation announcements
› Tap on ··· > .

Navigation overviews

Display menu
› Tap MENU > .

Map overview



A Vehicle position
B Route
C Route view
End route guidance
D Display the destination input and route view menu
E Traffic obstruction
F Following driving recommendation
G POI
H Change map orientation
▸ North-facing 2D map
▸ 2D map facing the direction of travel
▸ 3D map facing the direction of travel
I Road signs for the affected section of the route
Find destination
Centre the map on the vehicle position
··· **Show settings menu**
Switch off navigation announcements
Repeat the last navigation announcement
J Display the map depending on the following setting
▸ *Auto* - Map in day / night mode depending on the vehicle lighting currently switched on
▸ *Day* - Map in day mode
▸ *Night* - Map in night mode

K Navigation in the digital instrument cluster

L End route guidance

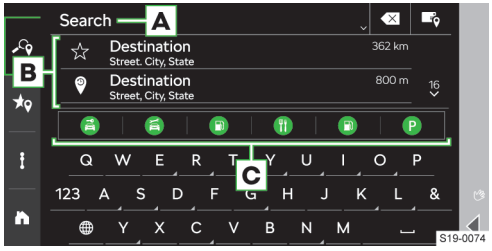
Display the entire route

Settings

Map display in the digital instrument cluster
The map can be displayed in the digital instrument cluster or on the Infotainment display.

› To **change the display** tap **Navigation** ··· › in the menu.

Find destination
› Tap › › .



A Input line

B List of recently searched destinations

C POI categories
› **Tap:** search for the selected category

Show destination list

Enter destination via address / find destination

Select the destination you are looking for
› Enter the details for the destination search.
› Select the desired destination.

Destination details are displayed with the option of starting route guidance.

Selecting the destination entered via the address
› Tap on .

A menu for entering the destination via the address is displayed.
› Enter the required information.

Destination details are displayed with the option of starting route guidance.

List of stored destinations
› Tap on › › .



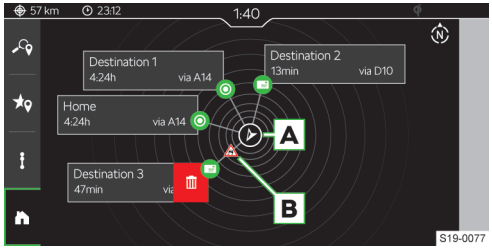
A List of stored destinations

B Select category of stored destinations
▶ - Favourites
▶ - Last destinations
▶ - Telephone contact destinations

Selecting the stored destination
› Select the category of stored destinations.
› Select the desired destination.

Destination details are displayed with the option of starting route guidance.

Recommended destinations
› Tap on › › .



A North-facing vehicle position

B Traffic obstruction

Delete the recommended destination

The view can display up to 5 recommended destinations in the following categories.

▶ Home address destination.
▶ Business address destination.
▶ Favourites.
▶ Last destinations.

Destination alignment depends on the direction in relation to the current vehicle position. The functional surface with the destination displays information about the estimated travel time to the destination.

If the vehicle has active online services and there is a traffic obstruction on the route to the destination, the traffic obstruction icon will be displayed.

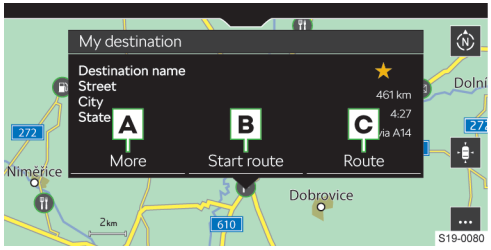
Delete the recommended destination

› Touch the functional surface for the recommended destination and swipe left.

› Tap on 🗑.

Selecting destination by tapping the map point

› Tap the desired item or the POI icon in the map.

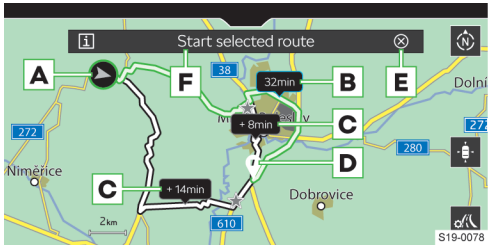


A Show destination details with the following possible settings
- ▶ ☆ - Save destination as a favourite
- ▶ ★ - Delete favourites
- ▶ 🎞 - Set destination as a starting point for route guidance in demo mode

B Start direct route guidance

C Route calculation

Route calculation



A Current vehicle position

B Proposed fastest route

C Alternative routes

D Destination position

E 15 s time countdown before automatic start of the route guidance
- › **Tap:** Interrupt time countdown

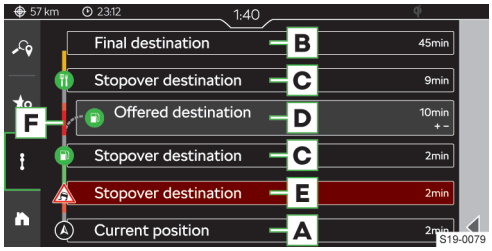
F Start route guidance

ⓘ Show information on the selected route

Set parameters for route calculation

Route overview

› Tap on ▶ > ⁞.



A Information on current vehicle position

B Final route destination

Tap: the following menu items can be selected.
- › *Show on map*
- › *Stop route guidance*

C Destination provided by Infotainment on the route

Tap: the following menu items can be selected.
- › *Show on map*
- › *Add stopover destination*

D Route stopover

Tap: the following menu items can be selected.
- › *Show on map*
- › *Delete*

E Traffic obstruction on the route

Tap: the following menu items can be selected.
- › *Show on map*
- › *Avoid*

F Route view

Changing route destinations

In the route overview, it is possible to exchange the destination and the intermediate destinations with each other and thus change their order.

› Hold the line with the desired destination until the functional surface for the destination becomes free.

› Move the destination to the desired position and release the functional surface.

The route is re-calculated.

Overview of traffic density

When ŠKODA online services are activated, traffic density information can be displayed in the form of the following colour scale in the route view F.

Low density — — — — High density

— Traffic density information is not available

Touch operation

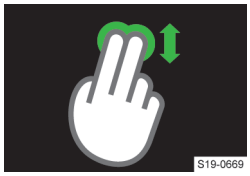
Gesture control



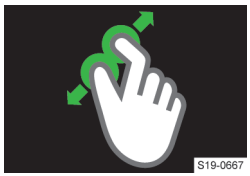
▶ Move the map.



▶ Enter destination by tapping the map item.



▶ Switch 2D/3D map display.



▶ Zoom in to the map.



▶ Zoom out of the map.



▶ Rotate the map.

Limitation

Infotainment may give incorrect driving recommendations if the road conditions or the traffic do not match the navigation data. This can lead to the route guidance being carried out using a different route or proposing a change of direction in a one-way street.

Information for updating the navigation data must be requested from a ŠKODA partner.

Settings

Avoiding traffic obstructions
If the function is switched on and the Infotainment receives information about a traffic obstruction on the route from online traffic information, the route is recalculated.

Infotainment may suggest a detour to avoid traffic obstructions, depending on the following settings.

› Tap ··· > ⚙ > *Route guidance* > *Avoid traffic congestion*.
› Select the desired menu item.

Showing information on the destination / waypoint
The status line displays information on the distance and travel time to the destination, depending on the following setting.

› Tap ··· > ⚙ > *Route guidance* > *Show information for:*.
› Select the desired menu item for the destination type.

Showing arrival time information in the destination / driving time
The status line displays information on the travel time depending on the following setting.

› Tap ··· > ⚙ > *Route guidance* > *Time display:*.
› Select the desired menu item.

Switching display of country-specific speed limits on / off
When the function is switched on, the country-specific speed limits are displayed when crossing national borders.

› Tap ··· > ⚙ > *Route guidance* > *Country information at border crossings*.

Switching the display of road signs on motorways and expressways on / off
When the function is switched on, Infotainment displays traffic and information signs on motorways and expressways.

› Tap ··· > ⚙ > *Route guidance* > *Information signs on motorways and dual carriageways*.

Switching the fuel warning on / off
When the function is switched on and the fuel supply reaches the reserve area, a warning message appears with the option of going to the nearest petrol station.

› Tap ··· > ⚙ > *Route guidance* > *Fuel warning*.

Switching the speed limit warning on / off
› Tap ··· > ⚙ > *Route guidance* > *Road signs*.
› Set the note type and the value for exceeding the permissible speed.

Settings for trailer operation
To calculate the correct route for trailer operation, switch on trailer inclusion.

› Tap ··· > ⚙ > *Route guidance* > *Trailer* > *Include trailer*.

Set the maximum speed for trailer operation to correctly calculate the route time.

› Tap ··· > ⚙ > *Route guidance* > *Trailer* > *Maximum speed for trailers*.
› Set the maximum speed for the trailer.

Setting navigation announcements
› Tap ··· > ⚙ > *navigation announcements*.
› Select and set the desired menu item.

Show preferred POI categories
Favourite POI categories are displayed on the map and provided in the destination search.

› Tap ··· > ⚙ > *Basic functions* > *Define preferred POI categories*.
› Set favourite categories.

Setting home address
The defined destination of the home address is displayed in the overview of recommended destinations.

› Tap ··· > ⚙ > *Basic functions* > *Enter home address*.

Setting business address
The defined destination of the business address is displayed in the overview of recommended destinations.

› Tap ··· > ⚙ > *Basic functions* > *Enter business address*.

Switching demo mode on / off
In demo mode, the route guidance from the starting point of the demo mode to the selected destination is simulated.

When the function is switched on, Infotainment issues a query before the start of route guidance as to where whether the route guidance should be carried out in the normal way or in demo mode.

› Tap ··· > ⚙ > *Basic functions* > *Demo mode*.

Defining the starting point of the demo mode
› Select or locate the desired destination to be the starting point of demo mode.
› In the displayed destination details, tap *More* > .

Updating the navigation database

Information for updating the navigation database must be requested from a **ŠKODA** partner.

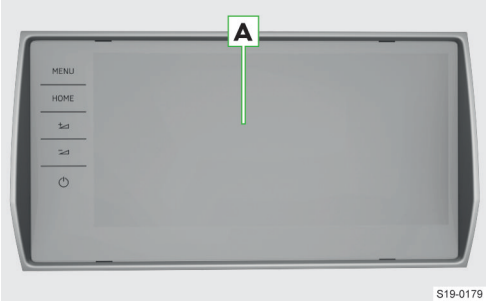
Automatic update
Infotainment automatically updates when the following conditions are met.

✓ The “Infotainment Online” online services are activated.
✓ An update of the navigation database for the current vehicle position or route destination is available.

Determining the navigation database version
› Tap **MENU** > ⚙ > *System information*.

Infotainment Columbus

Infotainment overview



A Touchscreen

MENU All menus

HOME Favourite menus

Increase volume

Reduce volume

Depending on the status:
- **Infotainment switched off**
  - **Tap:** Turn on Infotainment
- **Infotainment switched on**
  - **Tap:** Switch sound off/on
  - **Hold:** Switch off Infotainment

System

Limitation

For safety reasons, operation of some Infotainment functions while driving is not possible or is restricted.

The Infotainment system indicates this by means of a message in the screen.

Basic settings

Setting basic functions
The following Infotainment functions are set in the **MENU** > ⚙ menu.

- Time and date.
- Language.
- Units.
- Restore factory settings.

Sound settings
The Infotainment sound is set in the menu **MENU** > .

The following menu items can be set.

- Setting the equalizer.
- Adjusting the volume ratio.

▶ Volume adjustment of individual Infotainment functions.

Some are adjustable, for example the following menu items.

▶ Volume adjustment of voice commands.
▶ Setting the maximum volume when Infotainment is turned on.
▶ Speed-dependent volume setting.
▶ Setting the Infotainment to mute with the parking aid switched on.

Depending on the equipment, the following advanced sound settings can be set.

▶ Setting space optimisation.
▶ Setting the audio profiles according to genre.
▶ Adjusting the subwoofer volume.

Configuration wizard
The configuration wizard helps to set certain Infotainment functions.

The configuration assistant is automatically displayed if the ignition is switched on and if there are at least two menu items that have not been set up after switching on the Infotainment.

› To **switch off the automatic display**, when the configuration assistant is displayed tap *Don't show again* .
› For **manual display** tap MENU > ⚙ > *Configuration wizard* .

Setting the HOME menu
› To **display another page** of the HOME menu, press the screen with two fingers and drag it to the left or right.

To **add the preferred menu**, proceed as follows.

› Tap on an empty functional surface.

Or:

› Press and hold an occupied functional surface and then tap on an empty functional area.
› Select a menu with the desired dimension of the functional surface.
› Tap on × to exit edit mode.

To **remove the preferred menu**, proceed as follows.

› Press an occupied functional surface.
› Tap on 🗑.
› Tap on × to exit edit mode.

Setting the MENU
The position of the functional surfaces in the MENU menu can be customized as follows.

› Press and hold the desired functional surface until it is free.
› Move the functional surface to a different position.

Troubleshooting

Infotainment not responding
The Infotainment system must be restarted.

› Press ⏻ for more than 10 s.
› Wait for the restart to complete.

System update

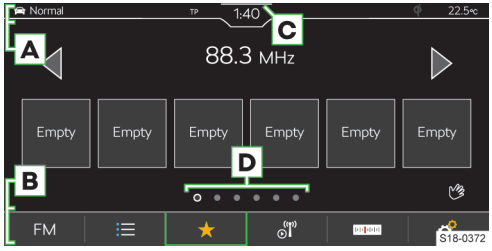
We recommend having the system update carried out by a specialist company.

The system update ensures optimal function of the Infotainment system, e.g. compatibility with new phones.

Determine system version
› Tap MENU > ⚙ > *System information*.

Screen

Overview



A Status bar
B Bar with the functional surfaces of the displayed menu
C Display of the control centre
D Other pages of the menu

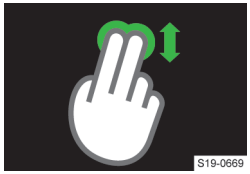
Operation

NOTICE
Danger of screen damage!
▶ The Infotainment screen is operated **by touching it lightly with your finger**.

In principle, operation by touch is identical to the operation of a mobile phone.

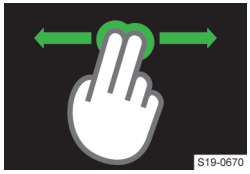
The following operating modes are specific to the Infotainment system.

Dragging up or down with two fingers



- Quickly review the list of phone contacts.
- Change 2D/3D map display.

Dragging left or right with two fingers



- Display next page of the HOME menu.

Pulling apart with two fingers



- Enlarge image.
- Zoom in to the map.

Pulling together with two fingers



- Minimize image.
- Zoom out of the map.

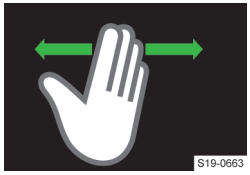
Turn two fingers



- Rotate image.
- Rotate the map.

Contactless gesture control

The Infotainment menus marked with the symbol can be controlled by hand gestures.



› Gesture control is achieved by slowly moving the hand back and forth approximately 8 cm above the lower edge of the screen.

Depending on the setting, a recognized gesture can be confirmed acoustically and animated.

Displaying operation help

› Tap on MENU > ⓘ > .

Settings

The following basic screen functions are set in the MENU > ⚙ > *Screen* menu.

- Brightness level of the screen.
- Switch off the screen.
- Display the time.
- Confirmation sounds and animations.

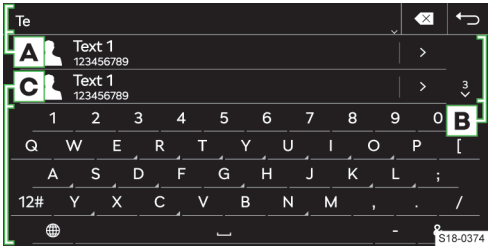
Keypad

Keypad overview

The arrangement of the keypad characters depends on the Infotainment language that has been set.

In Infotainment, the following types are used, depending on the context.

- Alphanumeric.
- Numeric.
- Keypad for input.
- Keypad for search.



Keypad example

A Input line
- Delete characters before the cursor
  - **Tap:** delete the last character
  - **Hold:** delete all characters one after the other
- Display functional surfaces for moving the cursor in the input line
  - < Move cursor to the left
  - > Move cursor to the right

B Entries found
- Show list

C Keypad functional surfaces
- Change to lowercase
- Switch to first having an upper-case letter, followed by lower-case letters
- Switch to uppercase

- ABC/АБВ Switch to the language keypad
- 12# Switch to the numeric and character keypad
- 1/2/2/2Switch to other character variants
- Show additional keyboard languages
- Insert spaces
- The next line
- **Hold:** Show more character variants
- Show password
- OK Confirm the entered characters

Numeric keypad



Keypad example

A Input line
- Delete characters before the cursor
  - **Tap:** delete the last character
  - **Hold:** delete all characters

B Keypad functional surfaces

- OK Confirm the entered characters

If it is possible depending on the context, alphanumeric characters can be entered by holding a function area with the number.

Operation

The Infotainment keypad is used to enter characters, letters and numbers.

The keypad will be **automatically displayed** when Infotainment prompts for characters.

Find
When entering characters, corresponding entries are searched for.

The entry to be searched for can be entered including diacritics.

The keyboard will only provide characters that match the stored entries.

› To **display searched entries** tap ⌄.

Show additional keypad languages
To use the additional keypad languages, the desired languages must be set first.

› Tap or repeatedly tap the flag symbol until the desired language keypad is displayed.

Further character variants
› Press and hold the sign with the symbol .
› Select the desired symbol.

Setting up additional keyboard languages

› Tap MENU > > *Additional keypad languages*.

Voice control

Functionality

Voice control principle
Voice control works according to the principle of dialogue between the user and the Infotainment system.

The user says a voice command. The Infotainment system responds or executes the voice command.

Advanced voice control
The vehicle's advanced voice control enables the vehicle functions to be searched and operated online.

Advanced voice control understands fluent whole sentences. You do not need to use set commands or phrases.

The advanced voice control can, for example, search for special destinations or dictate SMS messages if the connected telephone makes this possible.

This function allows you to combine the search in the online and offline data of the Infotainment. The transition between online and offline search is seamless and imperceptible to the user.

Functional conditions

✓ Ignition is switched on.
✓ Infotainment is switched on.

Functional conditions of the advanced voice control
To use the advanced voice control, the following conditions must also be met.

✓ The vehicle supports the function.
✓ The vehicle has Infotainment and functions that can be controlled by the advanced voice control.
✓ The ŠKODA Connect services are active.
✓ The vehicle is within range of a contractual mobile network, through which the connection to ŠKODA Connect Services is ensured.
✓ The level of protection of personal data is set to *Share my location* .

Operation

Voice control process

› To **switch on** voice control on the multifunction steering wheel, press the button.

Or:

› Say the **"OK Laura"** activation command.

The prerequisite for recognising the activation command is the switched on menu item **MENU** > > *voice control* > *active*.

After switching on, the icon is displayed.

› Say a voice command.

During recognition of the voice command, the icon is displayed.

The Infotainment system then executes the voice command or plays the message. During the message, the icon is displayed.

After the execution of the voice command, voice control is switched off.

Correcting a voice command

› During voice command input, press the button on the multifunction steering wheel and say a new voice command.

Stopping voice control

Stopping leaves more time for voice command input, e.g. for searching for a phone contact.

› Move your finger up or down over the Infotainment screen.

Or:

› Say the voice command **"pause"**.

Resuming stopped voice control

› Press the button on the multifunction steering wheel.

Or:

› Tap on in the Infotainment screen.

Stopping the played back message

› Press the button on the multifunction steering wheel.

Ending voice control

› Press the button on the multifunction steering wheel twice.

Or:

› Say the voice command **"cancel"** during voice command input.

Limitation

For some Infotainment languages, no voice control is available. The Infotainment system will indicate this.

The messages are generated by the Infotainment system. Flawless clarity (e.g. road or city name) cannot always be guaranteed.

You cannot use voice control while a phone call is in progress.

Settings

The following voice control functions are set in the menu **MENU** > > *Voice control*.

- Confirmation tones.
- Enable/disable use of the activation word.

Self help

Starting acoustic help

› If the Infotainment system is expecting a voice command, say **"Help"**.

The **"Help"** voice command can be issued repeatedly for further tips on voice control.

Displaying the help

› Tap on **MENU** > > .

Or:

› If Infotainment is expecting a voice command, say **"Overview"**.

Switch example voice commands display on / off

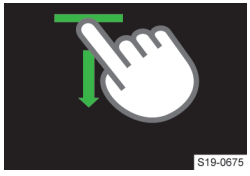
The system offers the option of displaying example voice commands after switching on the voice control in the Infotainment screen.

› To **turn** **MENU** > > *voice control* on/off, tap > *Show in Infotainment system*.

Control centre

Overview

Display of the control centre



› Press the bar at the top of the screen and drag down.

Closing the control centre

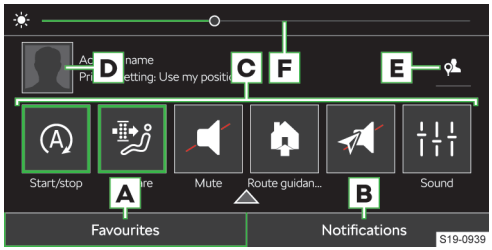
› Tap on ▲.

Or:

› Wait 5 seconds.

Control Centre

The Infotainment control centre can be used for quick access to the following functions.



A Display and management of the functional areas of preferred features

B Display list of information messages

C Preferred features

D Display of user account management

E Setting up the level of protection for personal data

F Setting up the instrument and key lighting

Set functional areas of preferred features

› To **display** editing mode hold any function surface of the preferred feature.

› To **add** the preferred feature, move the desired feature from the top of the screen to the functional surface at the bottom of the screen.

› To **close** edit mode, tap on ×.

Radio

Overview

Display menu

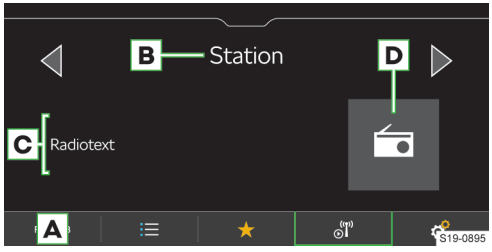
› Tap MENU > .

Analogue and digital radio player

› A Tap and select the desired frequency range.

› Tap and search for or select the desired station.

› Tap on .



A Select source

B Station name

C Information about the broadcast content

D Station logos

List of available stations

★ Show favourites

Information about the station

Search stations manually (valid for AM and FM)

Settings

List of available analogue and digital radio stations

› Tap .

Played station

★ Station stored on the presets

TP A traffic radio station is set

The DAB transmitter emits images which are displayed in the information to the station

Manual update of the station list

In the station list, information about the programme type and the channel identification of the regional channel can be displayed.

Web radio player

› A tap and select a web radio station.

› Tap and search or select web radio.

› Tap on .



A Select source

B Station name

C Information about the broadcast content

D Station logos

List of web radio and podcasts

★ Show favourites

Information about the programme as well as the broadcast content of the web radio

Settings

Podcast player

› Tap A and select an online radio station.

› Tap and search for or select the desired pocast.

› Tap .



A Select source
B Podcast name
C Information about the broadcast content
D Podcast logo with the symbol
Tap: Start playback
Tap: Pause
Tap: Go back 15 secs
Tap: Go forward 15 secs
View episodes of the podcast being played
List of web radio stations and podcasts
Show favourites
Show information about the podcast
Settings

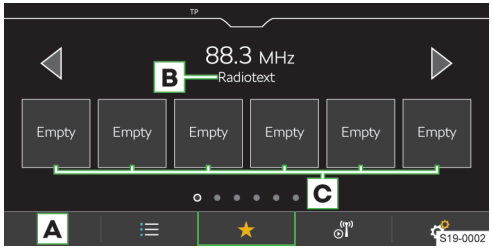
List of online radio stations and podcasts
› Tap on .



Search for online radio stations and podcasts
Recently heard web radio and podcasts
100 most popular web radio stations depending on the Infotainment language that has been set
Go to podcasts and select
Search and select web radio stations and podcasts for the selected country
Search for and select web radio stations and podcasts according to the selected language
Search and select web radio stations and podcasts by genre of choice
See list of related podcasts based on content listened to
See list of related web radio stations based on content listened to

The podcasts are shown in the displayed lists with the icon .

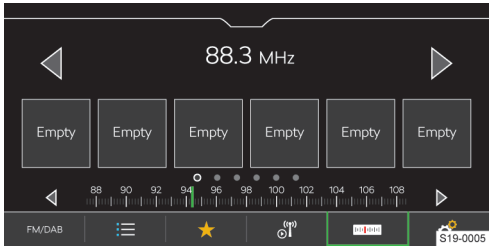
List of favourite stations and podcasts
› In the menu Radio, tap on ★.



A Select source
B Radio text
C Station buttons for favourite stations and podcasts

Operation

Select station



› Tap ◁ or ▷ at the top of the screen.

SCAN function
The function plays receivable stations of the selected frequency range in succession for a few seconds each.

› To **start automatic play** > , tap *Scan*.
› To **stop automatic play**, tap SCAN.

Find stations manually
Manual search is available for AM and FM stations.

› To display the functional surface for the FM station, turn on the > *Advanced settings* > *Show stations:* turn on > *FM*.
› In the Radio main menu, tap .
› To **search in sequence**, tap ◁ or ▷ next to the displayed frequency range scale.

Or:

› Hold down the scroll mark on the frequency range scale and move it to the desired value.

Limitation

▶ Infotainment supports digital radio reception in DAB and DAB+ formats.
▶ Car parks, tunnels, tall buildings or mountains can restrict radio reception.
▶ In the rear side windows, there are antennas for receiving the radio signal.

Covering the panes with foils or metal-coated labels may affect the reception of the radio signal.

▶ The ŠKODA AUTO company assumes no responsibility for the availability, correct functioning and broadcast information of the RDS service.

Settings

Save the station currently being listened to as a favourite from the Radio main menu
› Hold the desired station key for preferred stations until the station is stored.

Save station to favourites from the list of available stations
Applies to AM, FM and DAB frequency ranges.
› Hold the line with the name of the desired station.
› Tap the desired preset button.

Save channels from the list of web radio stations and podcasts
Valid for web radio stations and podcasts
› Select a web radio station as the playback source.
› Tap on .
› Go to the desired web radio station or podcast and select it.
› Hold the line with the name of the desired station or podcast.
› Tap the desired preset button.

With podcasts, it is not possible to save the individual episodes.

Deleting favourites
› In the **Radio** main menu, tap > *Delete presets*.
› To delete **a** station button for preferred stations, tap the desired station button and confirm the deletion.
› To delete **all** presets for preferred stations, tap *Delete all* and confirm the deletion.

Functional surfaces ◁ ▷ for analogue and digital radios
Applies to AM, FM and DAB frequency ranges.

The variant for **changing stations** using the function surface ◁ ▷ in the **Radio** main menu is set as follows.

› In the **Radio** main menu, tap > *Arrow buttons:*.
› Select the variant for switching between the stations stored on the station buttons or the stations stored in the list of available stations.

Function surfaces ◁ ▷ for web radio stations and podcasts
Valid for web radio stations and podcasts

The variant for **changing stations** using the function surface ◁ ▷ in the **Radio** main menu is set as follows.

› In the **Radio** main menu, tap > *Arrow buttons:*.
› Select the variant for switching between the stations stored on the station keys or the last web stations and podcasts listened to.

Switch traffic reception (TP) for stations on/off
Applies to FM and DAB frequency range.
› In the **Radio** main menu, tap > *Traffic program (TP)*.

Assign station logo from the Infotainment memory
Applies to the FM and DAB frequency ranges.

Infotainment offers the option of assigning logos, which are stored in the Infotainment memory, to the stations.

› In the **Radio** main menu, tap > *Station logos*.
› Select the desired station and logo.

Switching off the station logo display
Applies to the FM and DAB frequency ranges.
› In the **Radio** main menu, tap > *Station logos*.
› Select the desired station and *No station logo*.

Activating / deactivating automatic station logo assignment
Applies to the FM and DAB frequency ranges.

When the function is switched on, a station logo from the Infotainment memory is assigned when the station is stored on a preset.

› In the **Radio** main menu, tap > *Advanced settings* > *Auto-select station logos*.

Turn on/off radio text reception
Applies to the FM and DAB frequency ranges.

When the function is switched on and the station buttons are displayed, you can see more information about the content broadcast from the station to which you are listening.

› In the **Radio** main menu, tap > *Radio text*.

Regional FM station logo
Applies to the FM frequency range.

Infotainment provides the option of using country-specific FM station logos.

› In the **Radio** main menu, tap on ⚙ > *Advanced settings* > *Region for station logo:*.
› Choose the country.

Switching additional announcements of the DAB transmitter on / off
Applies to the DAB frequency range.

When the function is switched on, other announcements are received as traffic announcements. E.g. weather news, sports reports, financial news etc.

› In the **Radio** main menu, tap ⚙ > *Advanced settings* > *Additional DAB announcements*.

Switch RDS on/off
Applies to the FM frequency range.

The menu item is only available for some countries.

› In the **Radio** main menu, tap ⚙ > *Advanced settings* > *Radio Data System (RDS)*.

If the **RDS function is disabled**, the following menu items in **FM station** settings are not available.

▸ Traffic programme (TP).
▸ Radio text.
▸ RDS Regional.
▸ Automatic frequency change (AF).
▸ Regional station logo.

Switch automatic switching to a similar DAB transmitter on / off
Applies to the DAB frequency range.

When the function is switched on and there is signal loss from the DAB station being listened to, Infotainment automatically sets another DAB station with similar content.

› In the **Radio** main menu, tap ⚙ > *Advanced settings* > *Switch to a similar station if reception is poor*.

Displaying FM / DAB stations or FM stations in the list of available stations
Applies to the FM and DAB frequency ranges.

Depending on the following setting, the stations of the selected frequency range are displayed in the list of available stations.

› In the **Radio** main menu, tap ⚙ > *Advanced settings* > *Show stations:*.
› Select one of the following menu items.
▸ *FM / DAB* - the list shows available FM and DAB stations.
▸ *FM* - the list shows available FM stations.

Sound quality of web radio stations and podcasts
Valid for web radio stations and podcasts.

› To adjust the sound quality in the main menu, tap **Radio** ⚙ > *Audio Quality:*.
› Choose low or high quality.

The quality you set affects the amount of data used in the data connection.

Quality also depends on the speed and availability of the data connection.

ⓘ If playback failure occur, reduce the sound quality.

Media

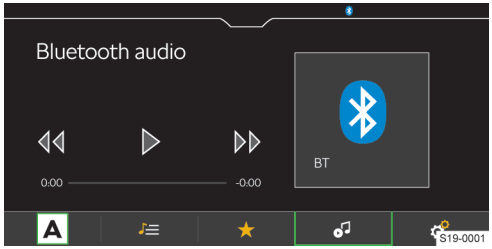
What you should be mindful of

▸ Do not save any important data or that which has not been backed up on the connected audio sources. ŠKODA assumes no responsibility for lost or damaged files or connected audio sources.
▸ When changing or connecting an audio source, this may cause sudden changes in volume. Reduce the volume before changing or connecting an audio source.
▸ When connecting an audio source, the source information messages can be displayed. These messages must be observed and, if necessary, confirmed.
▸ The national copyright laws that apply in your country must be observed.

Overview

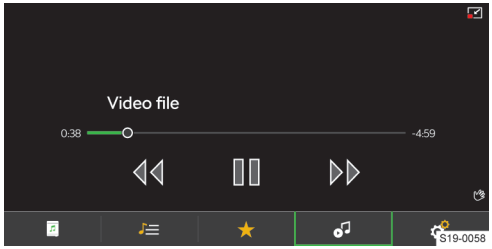
Display menu
› Tap MENU > ♫.

Music player



A Choose source
♫≡ Manage files / multimedia database
★ Show favourites
♫ Details about the track being played
⚙ Settings

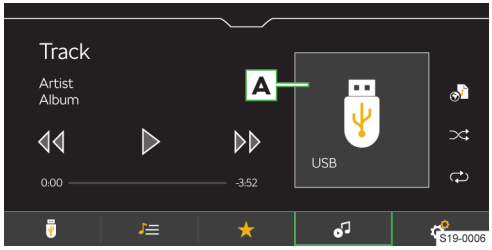
Video player



Manage files / multimedia database
★ Show favourites
Show video
Reduce image display
Enlarge image display
Settings

Operating the Player

Operation - Basics



A Album image / symbol of the connected source
▸ **Tap:** list available albums

▷ **Tap:** Start playback

Tap: Pause

Within 3 seconds of starting playback, tap: play the previous song

After 3 seconds from the start of playback, tap: to play the current title from the beginning

Hold: fast rewind within the track

Tap: play the next track

Hold: fast forward within the track

Movement within the title is also possible by dragging the finger over the timeline.

Advanced operation

Turn on / off repeat playback of the current track

Turn on / off repeat playback of the current album / folder

Turn on / off random playback of the current album / folder

Save the played track in the "*My playlist*" playlist

"My playlist" management

▸ To **display the playlist**, tap ♫ ≡ > ♫ > ♫ > .

▸ To **manage the playlist** tap ✎ in the displayed playlist.

The following activities can be carried out in playlist management.

▸ Control playback.

▸ Change the order of a title in the list by holding and moving ≡ to the desired position.

▸ Delete title.

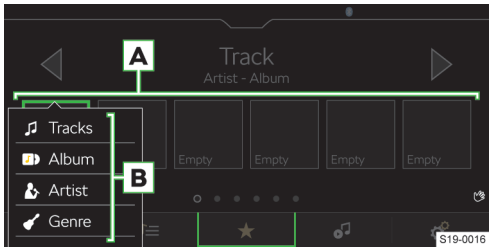
Limitation

NOTICE

The availability of some media operation functions is dependent on the connected source and the software being used, e.g. Bluetooth®.

Settings

Manage favourites



› To **save** the desired functional area for favourites, hold A.

› Select one of the list entries available B.

› To **clear** in the main menu **Media** tap ⚙ > *Manage favourites* .

› To delete **a favourite**, tap the desired list entry and confirm the deletion.

Or:

› To delete **all favourites** *Clear all* and confirm the deletion.

Traffic

› To **turn on/off** the traffic monitoring during the playback of media files, go to the **Media** main menu and tap on ⚙ > *Traffic programme (TP)*.

Supported sources and files

Supported sources

Source	Interface	Type	Specification	File system
USB	USB 1.x; 2.x 3.x or higher with USB 2.x support	MSC	USB stick	VFAT FAT16 FAT32 exFAT NTFS
			HDD (without special software)	
			USB devices that use the USB mass storage support protocol	
		MTP	Devices running the Android or Windows Phone operating system that support the Media Transfer Protocol	
		Apple	Devices with the iOS operating system and the iAP2 protocol	HFS+
Bluetooth® player	Bluetooth®	-	Bluetooth® protocols A2DP and AVRCP (1.0 - 1.6)	-

Mobile device compatibility
It is possible to check the ŠKODA web pages to see if Infotainment is compatible with the selected mobile device being tested. This check is carried out by using the following reference or by reading the QR code.

http://go.skoda.eu/compatibility

All information given is incidental and serves as information.

The ŠKODA AUTO company cannot guarantee full functionality and compatibility, e.g. due to a software update of the Infotainment and the mobile devices.

Supported audio files

Compression format	Codec type	File extension	Max. bit rate [kbps]	Max. sampling rate [kHz]	Multi channels
MPEG	MPEG 1 Layer 2	mp2	32 - 384	32, 44, 48	Mono, stereo, Joint stereo
	MPEG 2 Layer 2		8 - 160	16, 22, 24	
	MPEG 1 Layer 3	mp3	32 - 320	32, 44, 48	Mono, dual mono, Stereo, Joint Stereo
	MPEG 2 Layer 3		8 - 160	16, 22, 24	
	MPEG 2.5 Layer 3			8, 11, 12	

Compression format	Codec type	File extension	Max. bit rate [kbps]	Max. sampling rate [kHz]	Multi channels
WMA	Windows Media Audio 7	wma	6 - 192	8, 16, 22, 32, 44, 48, 96	Mono, stereo, Joint stereo
	Windows Media Audio 8		8 - 384	8, 11, 16, 22, 32, 44, 48, 96	
	Windows Media Audio 9 and 9.1		8 - 768		
	Windows Media Audio 9.2		8 - 320		
	Windows Media Audio 10		32 - 768	32, 44, 48, 96	
ADTS	AAC LC	aac	16 - 2048	22, 24, 32, 44, 48	Stereo
	AAC HE			16, 22, 24, 32, 44, 48	
	AAC HEv2				
MP4	M4A LC	m4a	16 - 400	22, 24, 32, 44, 48	Stereo
	M4A HE			16, 22, 24, 32, 44, 48	
	M4A HEv2		16 - 64		
OGG	OGG-Vorbis	ogg	8 - 576	8, 11, 12, 16, 22, 24, 32, 44, 48, 96	Mono, Stereo
FLAC	FLAC	flac	-	8, 11, 12, 16, 22, 24, 32, 44, 48, 64, 88, 96, 192	Mono, stereo, Joint stereo
RIFF	WAV	wav	64 - 3072	8, 11, 12, 16, 22, 24, 32, 44, 48, 96	Mono, Stereo
Monkey's	Monkey's	ape	8 - 192		
SBC	Bluetooth A2DP	-	8 - 345	8, 11, 12, 16, 22, 24, 32, 44, 48	Mono, stereo, Joint stereo
OPUS	OPUS	opus	6 - 2000	8 - 48	Mono, stereo, Multichannel

Files that are protected by **DRM**- and **iTunes®** methods are not supported by Infotainment.

Supported video files

Codec type	File extension	Max. recordings per second bit rate [Mbit/s]
MPEG 1	mpg mpeg m1v mPV	1.5
MPEG 2	mpg mpeg ps m2v	15
MPEG 4 (H.264)	m4p mp4 m4v mp4v mov	50
MPJEG		
MPEG 4 (ISO)		
Xvid	Xvid	20

Codec type	File extension	Max. recordings per second bit rate [Mbit/s]
WMV9	wmv asf	50

Supported playlists

Codec type	File extension
M3U	m3u
M3U8	m3u8
PLS	pls
WPL	wpl
ASX	asx

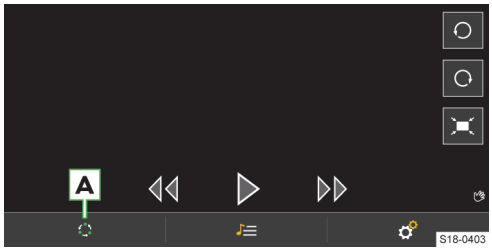
Images

Overview

Display menu

› Tap MENU > .

Image viewer



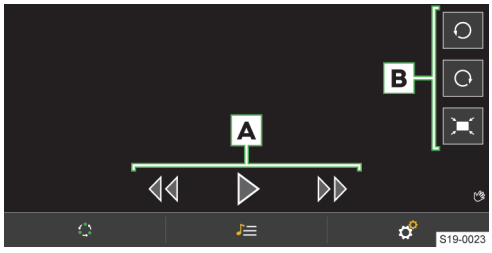
A Select source

Manage files

Settings

Operation

Operation using functional areas



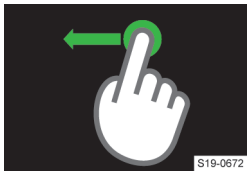
A View images

- ▶ Show the next image
- ▶ Show the previous image
- ▶ Start slideshow
- ▶ Stop slideshow

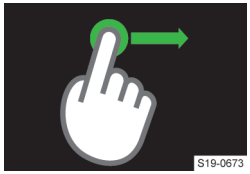
B View image

- ▶ Turn left
- ▶ Turn right
- ▶ Show in output size

Gesture control



▶ Show the next image.



▶ Show the previous image.



▶ Enlarge view.



▶ Zoom out.



▶ Turn 90 °.

Settings

The following Infotainment functions are set in the MENU > > menu.

▶ Display image size.
▶ Display image duration during the slideshow.
▶ Slideshow repeat.

Supported sources and files

Supported sources

Source	Interface	Specification	File system
USB	USB 1.x; 2.x 3.x or higher with USB 2.x support	USB stick	VFAT FAT16 FAT32 exFAT NTFS
		HDD (without special software)	

Supported files

Codec type	File extension	Max. resolution [Mpx]
BMP	bmp	4
JPG; JPEG	jpg; jpeg	4 (Progressive Mode) 64
GIF	gif	4
PNG	png	4

The maximum supported image size is 20 MB.

Mobile device management

Cybernetic security

Your vehicle contains components that are used to exchange information and data between the vehicle and the connected mobile devices or the Internet.

These components have security mechanisms that minimise the risk of unauthorised access to the vehicle systems.

Regular software updates help reduce the risk of unauthorised access to vehicle systems and vehicle functions. The following guidelines must therefore be observed.

› Use only media carriers, Bluetooth® devices, and mobile devices that contain no harmful data or malware.

› Regularly update the software provided by ŠKODA AUTO.

We recommend having the system software and components updated by a specialist company.

⚠ WARNING
Risk of an accident!
Malware in the vehicle can influence certain vehicle functions or deactivate them if necessary.
› If the vehicle reacts in an unusual way, immediately reduce speed or stop the vehicle.
› Seek the help of a specialist garage.

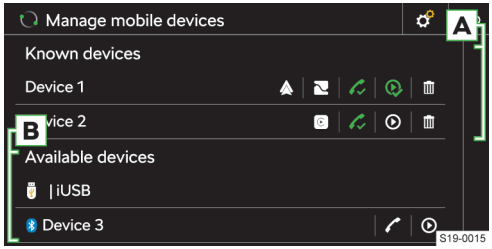
⚠ WARNING
Malware in the vehicle may gain unauthorised access to the information and data of the vehicle, and on occasion, to connected mobile devices.

Overview

Using mobile device management, devices can be connected, disconnected, and interchanged.

Display mobile device management

› Tap on MENU > > *Manage mobile devices*.



- The device enables a connection via the Bluetooth®"hands-free profile"
- The device is connected via the Bluetooth®"hands-free profile"
- The device enables a connection via the Bluetooth® audio profile
- The device is connected via the Bluetooth® audio profile
- Remove the device from the list **previously connected devices**
- The device enables a SmartLinkconnection to be made via Android Auto
- The device enables a SmartLinkconnection to be made via Apple CarPlay
- The device enables a SmartLinkconnection to be made via MirrorLink

A Connected / Previously connected devices
B Available devices

Mobile device and application limitations

Availability of features
The availability of certain features depends on the type of mobile device, as well as that of the applications installed.

Mobile device compatibility
It is possible to check the ŠKODA web pages to see if Infotainment is compatible with the selected mobile device being tested. This check is carried out by using the following reference or by reading the QR code.

http://go.skoda.eu/compatibility

All information given is incidental and serves as information.

The ŠKODA AUTO company cannot guarantee full functionality and compatibility, e.g. due to a software update of the Infotainment and the mobile devices.

Bluetooth® compatibility of mobile devices
Due to the large number of mobile devices, it is not possible to guarantee total Bluetooth® compatibility with Infotainment. Bluetooth® compatibility depends on the Bluetooth® version as well as the implementation of Bluetooth® protocols by the manufacturer of the mobile device.

Applications in mobile devices
Mobile devices can be used to install applications that allow you to view additional information on the Infotainment screen, or to operate the Infotainment system.

Due to the variety of applications, as well as their ongoing development, the available applications may not function on all mobile devices. ŠKODA AUTO assumes no liability for their proper functioning.

The scope of available applications and their functionality is dependent on the type of Infotainment, as well as the vehicle and country.

Information about the ŠKODA applications
Detailed information on the ŠKODA applications can be found on the website after reading the following QR code or using the link.

http://go.skoda.eu/mobile-apps

Connection set-up

Connect a mobile device to Infotainment
› Find available Bluetooth® devices in the mobile device.
› Select the Infotainment Bluetooth® unit.

The unit name can be determined by tapping MENU > > *Manage mobile devices* > > *device name:*.

› Confirm the PIN; enter it if necessary and then confirm.

Connect Infotainment to a non-paired mobile device
› Tap on MENU > > *Manage mobile devices*.
› Select the desired device from the list of **available devices**.
› Select the desired Bluetooth® profile.
› Confirm the PIN; enter it if necessary and then confirm.
› If two devices are connected to the Infotainment, select the device to be replaced.

Connect Infotainment to a previously connected mobile device
› MENU > > *Manage mobile devices* .
› Select the desired device in the list of **previously connected devices**.
› Select the desired Bluetooth® profile.
› If two devices are connected to the Infotainment, select the device to be replaced.

SmartLink connection
Infotainment offers the option to establish the SmartLink connection with compatible mobile devices using the following connection types.

- Android Auto
- Apple CarPlay
- MirrorLink

Mobile devices can be connected to the Infotainment via USB cable or Wi-Fi, as long as the mobile device supports it.

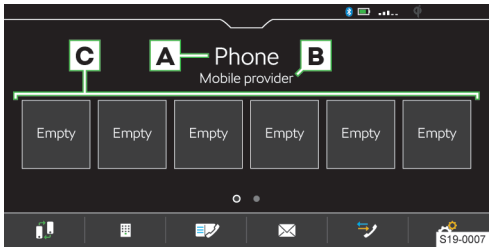
› Connect the mobile device to the Infotainment via a USB cable or browse and connect to a wireless network.
› Tap the icon of the supported connection.

Telephone

Overview

Display menu
› Tap MENU > .

If the menu **Telephone** is not displayed, check whether the mobile device is connected.



A Name of the connected telephone
▶ **Tap:** Show list of previously connected phones

B Name of telephone service providers
▶ If the symbol ▷ is displayed in front of the name, roaming is active.

C Preset buttons for preferred contacts

Change the main telephone with the additional telephone

Enter telephone number

Contact list

Text messages / emails

Call lists

Settings

Conditions for connecting a telephone with Infotainment

✓ The Bluetooth® function of the Infotainment and the telephone needs to be switched on.

The Bluetooth® function of the Infotainment is switched on in the menu item **MENU** > > *Manage mobile devices* > > *Bluetooth*.

✓ Visibility of the Infotainment is switched on.

The visibility of the Infotainment is switched on in the menu item **MENU** > > *Manage mobile devices* > > *Visibility:*.

✓ The telephone is within signal range of the Infotainment's Bluetooth® unit.

✓ The telephone is compatible with Infotainment.

Telephone operation

Enter telephone number

› In the **Telephone** main menu, tap .

› Enter the telephone number using the numeric keypad that is displayed.

The displayed numeric keypad can also be used for searching for contacts.
If, for example, the digits 32 are entered, contacts with the letter sequence DA, FA, EB etc. are displayed next to the numeric keypad.

List of telephone contacts

The list of telephone contacts is imported from the connected main telephone.

› To **display** the contact list in the **telephone** main menu, tap .

› To **search** within the list, tap *Enter contact*.

› Enter the details you wish to find.

› To **establish a connection** with a contact, tap the functional area showing the desired contact.

If a contact has multiple telephone numbers, select the telephone number from the displayed list.

› To display the **details** for a contact, tap >.

Establish a connection to the voice mailbox number

› In the **Telephone** main menu, tap > .

Telephone call

Depending on the context of the telephone conversation, the following functions can be selected.

End connection set-up / reject incoming call / end call

Answer an incoming call / Return to the call on hold

/ Switch the ringer off / on

Hold a call

/ Switch the microphone off / on

Show details of the caller

Reject an incoming call using an SMS message

Answer a call from the second telephone during a call on the first telephone
The ongoing call on the first telephone is terminated by accepting the call.

› To **switch the call from the speakers to the telephone**, go to the **Telephone** main menu and tap on > *Hands-free* .

› To **switch the call tone from the telephone to the speakers**, tap .

Conference call

A conference call is a joint telephone conversation with a minimum of three and a maximum of six participants.

› Make the next call during an ongoing conversation/ conference.

Or:

› Accept a new incoming call by tapping the function area .

› To **start** a conference call, tap on the functional area .

During an ongoing conference call, the following functions can be selected depending on the context.

Hold the conference call and leave temporarily (the conference will continue in the background)

Return to the conference being held

Switch the microphone off / on
End the conference
Show details of the conference call

In the details of the conference call, depending on the connected telephone, the following functions can be selected.

Show details of the conference call participants
End conversation with the conference call participant
Conversation with a participant outside of the conference call

Send a text message

› In the **Telephone** main menu, tap ✉ > ✉ *Messages* > ✎ *New text message*.
› Write a text message and confirm; a view of the message is displayed.

The message can be edited when the text area within the view is tapped.

› Search for or select the recipient of the message.
› Add more recipients or confirm selected recipients.
› Tap *Send*.

Display received text messages

› In the **Telephone** main menu, tap ✉ > ✉ *Messages* > ✉ or ✉.
› Messages that are received are displayed as individual messages or as messages in a conversation, depending on the following setting.

In order to **switch the display of messages in a conversation on or off**, go to the **Telephone** main menu and tap ⚙ > *Show messages as a conversation*.

› To **switch on or off a graphic notification** regarding the receipt of a new message, go to the **Telephone** main menu and tap ⚙ > *New message notifications*.

ⓘ Infotainment offers the possibility to read the text message (context-dependent) by means of the generated Infotainment voice if 💬 is tapped.

Send E-mails

› In the **Telephone** main menu, tap on ✉ > ✉ *E-mails* > ✎ *New e-mail*.
› Write an e-mail and confirm that an e-mail is displayed.

The text can be edited when the text area within the view is tapped.

› Search for or select the recipient of the email.
› Add more recipients or confirm selected recipients.
› Enter the subject of the e-mail.
› Tap *Send*.

Show received e-mails

› In the **Telephone** main menu, tap ✉ > ✉ *E-mails* > ✉.
› Select the desired e-mail.
› To **switch on or off,a graphic notification** regarding the receipt of a new e-mail, go to the **Telephone** main menu and tap ⚙ > *New message notifications*.

Settings of the Infotainment telephone functions

Telephone-Infotainment-Connection types

The way in which the telephone is connected depends on the number of phones currently connected to the Infotainment.

▸ **No telephone** - The telephone is connected as a main telephone.
▸ **One telephone** - The telephone is connected as an additional telephone.
▸ **Two telephones** - Select the telephone to be replaced.

› To **switch between the main telephone and the supplementary telephone** in the main menu, tap **telephone** 📳.

Connect the telephone to Infotainment

› Find available Bluetooth® devices on the phone.
› Select the Infotainment Bluetooth® unit.

The unit name can be determined by the menu item **MENU** > ⚙ > *Manage mobile devices* > ⚙ > *Device name:*.

› Confirm the PIN; enter it if necessary and then confirm.

Connect Infotainment to a non-paired telephone - no telephone is connected

› Tap on **PHONE**.

Or:

› Tap on **MENU** > ✓.
› Follow the instructions in the Infotainment screen.

Connecting Infotainment to a non-paired telephone - another telephone is connected

› Tap on **MENU** > ⚙ > *Manage mobile devices*.
› Select the desired device from the list of **available devices**.
› Select the desired Bluetooth® profile.
› Confirm the PIN; enter it if necessary and then confirm.

The telephone is connected as an additional telephone.

Or:

› If two telephones are connected to the Infotainment, select the telephone to be replaced.

Connect Infotainment to a previously paired telephone

› Tap on **MENU** > ⚙ > *Manage mobile devices*.

Or:

Tap on PHONE > ⚙ > *Select mobile phone*.

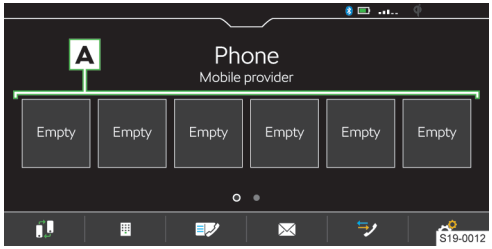
› Select the desired device from the list of **previously connected devices**.

The telephone is connected as an additional telephone.

Or:

› If two telephones are connected to the Infotainment, select the telephone to be replaced.

Manage station buttons for favourite contacts



› To **to save** the desired station button, hold A.

› Select a contact from the list displayed.

› If the contact contains several phone numbers, select the desired phone number.

› To **display the menu for deletion** go to the **Telephone** main menu and tap ⚙ > *Manage favourites* .

› To delete **one** station button, tap the desired list entry and confirm the deletion.

Or:

› To delete **all** station buttons, tap *Clear all* and confirm the deletion.

Import telephone contacts
After first connecting the main telephone with Infotainment, telephone contacts will start to be imported into the Infotainment memory.

Infotainment can import up to 5000 telephone contacts together with contact pictures. Each contact can include max. 5 telephone numbers.

Depending on the type of telephone, import confirmation may be required.

Update telephone contacts
When re-connecting the telephone with Infotainment, an **automatic** update of the list is carried out.

› For a **manual** update of the list in the **telephone** main menu, tap on ⚙ > *Import contacts*.

Sort contacts in the phone book

› In the **telephone** main menu, tap on ⚙ > *Sort by:* and select the sort type.

Ringer
Some phones do not allow the use of the telephone ringtone; instead, the Infotainment ringtone is used.

› To **set the Infotainment ring** go to the **Telephone** main menu and tap ⚙ > *Select ringtone*.

› Select the ringtone.

Number for the voice mailbox

› To **set the voice mailbox number** go to the **Telephone** main menu and tap on ⚙ > *Mailbox number:*.

› Enter the number of the voice mailbox.

Turn the graphic notice regarding receiving a new message/email on or off
When the feature is on, the new message icon appears on the status bar and in the feature area for the messages when a new message/e-mail is received.

› In the **Telephone** main menu, tap ⚙ > *New message notifications*.

Simultaneous calls
This applies to some countries.

Depending on the connected telephone, it is possible to answer the next incoming call and hold the previous call.

› To switch on simultaneous calls, tap on **telephone** ⚙ > *Parallel talks*.

Wi-Fi

Functionality

The Wi-Fi can be used for the internet connection or for the SmartLinkConnection.

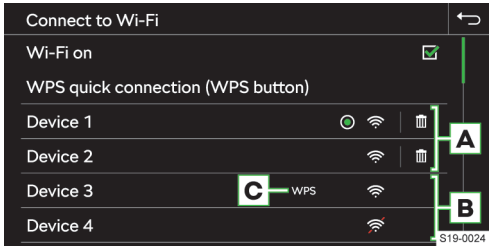
The Infotainment hotspot can connect up to 8 mobile devices. At the same time, the Infotainment can be connected to another hotspot.

› To display the list of connected mobile devices, tap MENU > ⚙ > *Wi-Fi* > *Infotainment system as hotspot* > *Connected devices*.

Overview of available hotspots

Display available hotspots

› Tap MENU > ⚙ > *Wi-Fi* > *Wi-Fi:*.



A Previously connected hotspots

B Available hotspots

C The hotspot supports the WPS connection

Currently connected hotspot

Delete information about the hotspot connection

Wi-Fi signal strength of the hotspot

The Wi-Fi signal from the hotspot is not available

Functional restriction

The Infotainment system can only be connected to a hotspot with WPA2 access protection.

Restriction of the Wi-Fi connection
In some countries, the WiFi connection is restricted for legal reasons. When crossing the border of the country in question, the connection with a mobile device connected via Wi-Fi can be ended or restricted.

Find out about country-specific legal restrictions. If necessary, switch off the Wi-Fi manually.

Settings

Connect a mobile device to the Infotainment hotspot

› Turn on the Infotainment's Wi-Fi hotspot in the menu item MENU > ⚙ > *Wi-Fi* > *Infotainment system as hotspot* > *Use as hotspot*.

› Turn on the Wi-Fi on the mobile device.

› In the list of available Wi-Fi devices, look for Infotainment Wi-Fi.

The name of the Infotainment is taken from the menu item MENU > ⚙ > *Wi-Fi* > *Infotainment system as hotspot* > *Network name:*.

› Select the Infotainment hotspot and enter the required password.

The password for connecting to the Infotainment hotspot is taken from the menu item MENU > ⚙ > *Wi-Fi* > *Infotainment system as hotspot* > *Network key*.

› Confirm the connection.

Connect Infotainment to the mobile device hotspot

› Turn on the Infotainment's Wi-Fi unit in the menu item MENU > ⚙ > *Wi-Fi* > *Wi-Fi:* Turn on > *Wi-Fi on*.

› Select the desired hotspot in the list of available hotspots.

› Enter the password for connecting to mobile devices.

Infotainment stores passwords for previously connected hotspots.

Security level of the Infotainment hotspot
The security level is set at *WPA2* and cannot be changed.

Activate/deactivate data transfer between the Infotainment and the connected device

› To turn data transmission on or off, tap MENU > ⚙ > *Wi-Fi* > *Infotainment system as hotspot* > *Connected devices* > ⚙.

Change the name of the Infotainment hotspot

▶ Tap MENU > ⚙ > *Wi-Fi* > *Infotainment system as hotspot* > *Network name:*.

▶ Enter the name and confirm.

Change password for connection to Infotainment hotspot
The password must be a minimum of 12 and a maximum of 63 characters.

▶ MENU > ⚙ > *Wi-Fi* > *Infotainment system as a hotspot* > *Network key* .

▶ Enter and confirm the password.

Quick connection of Infotainment to the mobile device hotspot

› On the mobile device, turn on the hotspot, its visibility, and the option for WPS connection.

› MENU> ⚙ > *Wi-Fi* > *Wi-Fi:* Tap > *WPS quick connection (WPS button)*.

Automatic WPS connection

› Tap MENU > ⚙ > *Wi-Fi* > *Quick connection to Infotainment system*.

› In the mobile device, switch on the option for connection via WPS.

› Wait for the connection to be established and, if necessary, confirm the respective messages.

Manual WPS connection

› In the mobile device, switch on the option for connection via WPS PIN.

The mobile device display will show the WPS PIN for connecting to the Infotainment.

› Tap MENU > ⚙ > *Wi-Fi* > *Quick connection to Infotainment system* > ⚙ > *WPS PIN*.

› Enter the WPS PIN in the Infotainment and confirm.

› Wait for the connection to be established and, if necessary, confirm the respective messages.

Automatic connection using the QR code

› Tap MENU > ⚙ > *Wi-Fi* > *Quick connection to Infotainment system*.

› In the mobile device, switch on the option for connection via QR Code.

› With the mobile device, read the QR code displayed on the Infotainment screen.

› Wait for the connection to be established and, if necessary, confirm the respective messages.

Tips for a perfect connection

▶ Keep only the hotspot to be connected switched on and switch off the other hotspots.

▶ Delete unused hotspots. This shortens the time required to establish a connection.

▶ For some hotspots, the connection takes longer, so wait for the connection to finish.

▶ If the connection is interrupted, recheck the available hotspots and repeat the connection.

SmartLink

Functionality

SmartLink offers the ability to display and operate certified applications from a connected mobile device in the Infotainment screen.

Certification may be conditional upon the use of the latest update to the particular SmartLink application.

Applications include, for example, apps for route guidance, telephoning, listening to music, etc.

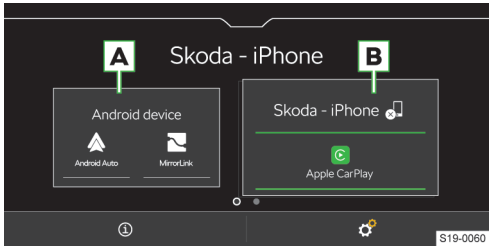
Mobile devices can be connected via a USB cable or Wi-Fi.

Supported connection types
SmartLink supports the following connection types.

▶ Android Auto.
▶ Apple CarPlay.
▶ MirrorLink.

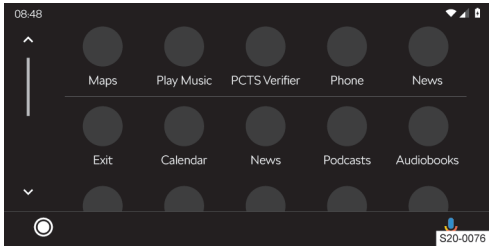
Overview of the SmartLink connection

Display menu
› Tap MENU > SmartLink.



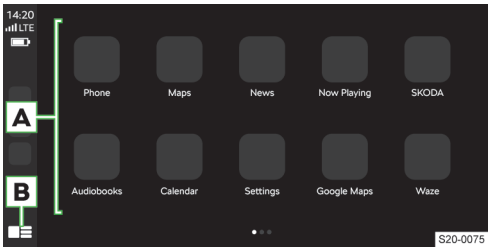
A Previously connected device
B Currently connection device
ⓘ Display information about SmartLink
Disconnection of the active connection
Settings in SmartLink menu

Android Auto



Overview of running applications, phone calls, received text messages and the like.
Switching on voice control (Google Voice)

Apple CarPlay



A List of available applications
B Depending on the duration of operation:
▶ **Tap:** Return to the Apple CarPlay main menu
▶ **Hold:** Turn on voice control (Siri)

MirrorLink



It is not possible to operate the application while driving
Return to the SmartLink main menu
List of running applications
Display of the last running application in connected mobile devices
Settings

Connection conditions

General connection conditions
✓ The mobile device supports the following SmartLink connection types: Android Auto. Apple CarPlay and MirrorLink.
✓ Mobile devices, as well as the type of SmartLinkconnection, are supported in the respective market.
✓ Some connected mobile devices require the mobile device to be “unlocked”.

Conditions for Android Auto
✓ The device to be connected must have Android AutoSupport.

A list of devices, supported regions and applications that the Android Auto connection supports can be found on the websites of Google Inc..

✓ The Android Auto application needs to be installed on the mobile device.

✓ Some applications require the data connection in the mobile device to be turned on.

Conditions for Apple CarPlay

✓ The device to be connected must have Apple CarPlaySupport.

A list of devices, supported regions and applications that the Apple CarPlay connection supports can be found on the websites of Apple Inc..

✓ Siri voice control is on.

✓ The data connection is switched on in the mobile device.

Conditions for MirrorLink

✓ The device to be connected must have MirrorLinkSupport.

A list of devices and applications that the MirrorLink connection supports can be found on the websites of Car Connectivity Consorcium®.

✓ The MirrorLink application needs to be installed on the mobile device.

✓ Some applications require the data connection in the connected mobile device to be turned on.

Operation

Operation of the running MirrorLink application

Display of control surfaces at the bottom
Display of control surfaces at the top
Return to the MirrorLink main menu

Limitation

Restriction of the Wi-Fi connection
In some countries, the WiFi connection is restricted for legal reasons. When crossing the border of the country in question, the connection with a mobile device connected via Wi-Fi can be ended or restricted.

Find out about country-specific legal restrictions. If necessary, switch off the Wi-Fi manually.

Restriction of SmartLink applications while driving
For safety reasons, operation of some SmartLinkapplications while driving is not possible or is restricted.

Restriction of the navigation function
If route guidance is currently being carried out through Infotainment, this is ended when you start route guidance in the Apple CarPlay application.

If there is route guidance in the Apple CarPlay application, it is ended by starting the destination guidance using Infotainment.

SmartLink settings

Apple CarPlay - Connection via USB

› Turn on the Infotainment.
› Turn on the mobile device.
› Connect the mobile device to the front USB input using a cable.
› Choose to connect via Apple CarPlay.

Apple CarPlay - Connection via Wi-Fi from Infotainment

› Turn on Bluetooth® and Bluetooth® visibility in the Apple mobile device.
› Tap on MENU > > *Manage mobile devices*.
› In the displayed list, look for and select the desired device with the symbol .
› Follow the instructions on the Infotainment screen and confirm the Bluetooth® pairing.
› If another device is connected to the Infotainment, select the device to be replaced.

Apple CarPlay - Connection via Wi-Fi from mobile devices
To establish a connection, the following conditions must be met.

✓ The minimum iOS version is 9.

✓ No other mobile device can be connected via SmartLink.

✓ Wi-Fi and Bluetooth® functionality is switched on in the Infotainment system.

› In the mobile device, turn on the CarPlay function.
› Press and hold the button on the multifunction steering wheel.

The Infotainment screen displays a connection message with the name of the Bluetooth® unit of the Infotainment.

› Find available Bluetooth® devices on the phone.
› Select the Infotainment Bluetooth® unit.
› If necessary, confirm the PIN.
› In the Infotainment screen, select the connection type Apple CarPlay.

Apple CarPlay – Disconnection

› In the Apple CarPlay main menu, tap on the “ŠKODA” functional area.
› Tap on .

Android Auto - Connection via USB

› Turn on the Infotainment.
› Turn on the mobile device.
› Connect the mobile device to the front USB input using a cable.

› Choose to connect via Android Auto.

Android Auto - Connection via Wi-Fi from Infotainment

› Tap on MENU > Smart Link > > *mobile devices*.
› Select the desired device from the list of **available devices**.
› Select the Bluetooth®hands-free profile.
› Confirm the PIN; enter it if necessary and then confirm.
› If another device is connected to the Infotainment, select the device to be replaced.
› From the list of **known devices**, select the desired device with the ▲ symbol.

Android Auto - Disconnection

› In the main menu of Android Auto > tap on "Return to ŠKODA".
› Tap on .

MirrorLink - Connection via USB

› Turn on the Infotainment.
› Turn on the mobile device.
› Connect the mobile device to the front USB input using a cable.
› Choose to connect through MirrorLink.

MirrorLink - Disconnection

› In the MirrorLink main menu, tap Smart Link.
› Tap on .

Change to another device / connection type

Infotainment allows you to switch between currently connected devices and the connection type.

› Tap on MENU > Smart Link.
› Select the desired device or connection type.

Navigation

Navigation announcements

Infotainment route guidance takes place using graphic driving recommendations and navigation announcements.

The navigation announcements are generated by the Infotainment system. Navigation announcement clarity (e.g. road or city name) cannot always be guaranteed.

Repeat the last navigation announcement

› Tap on ··· > .

Turn off navigation announcements

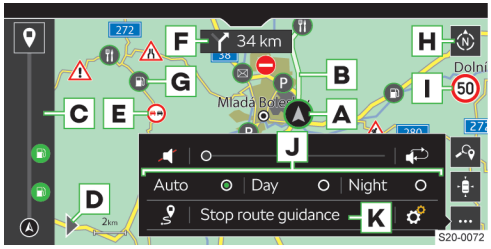
› Tap on ··· > .

Navigation overviews

Display menu

› Tap MENU > .

Map overview



A Vehicle position
B Route
C Route view
End route guidance
D Display the destination input and route view menu
E Traffic obstruction
F Following driving recommendation
G POI
H Change map orientation
- ▸ North-facing 2D map
- ▸ 2D map facing the direction of travel
- ▸ 3D map facing the direction of travel

I Road signs for the affected section of the route
Find destination
Centre the map on the vehicle position
··· **Show settings menu**
Switch off navigation announcements
Repeat the last navigation announcement
Show standard map
J Display the map depending on the following setting
- ▸ *Auto* - Map in day / night mode depending on the vehicle lighting currently switched on
- ▸ *Day* - Map in day mode
- ▸ *Night* - Map in night mode

Display the entire route
K End route guidance
Settings

Find destination

› Tap ▸ > .



A Input line

B List of recently searched destinations

C POI categories

› **Tap:** search for the selected category

⌄ Show destination list

Enter destination via address / find destination

Select the destination you are looking for

› Enter the details for the destination search.

› Select the desired destination.

Destination details are displayed with the option of starting route guidance.

Selecting the destination entered via the address

› Tap on .

A menu for entering the destination via the address is displayed.

› Enter the required information.

Destination details are displayed with the option of starting route guidance.

List of stored destinations

› Tap on ▸ > .



A List of stored destinations

B Select category of stored destinations

▸ - Favourites

▸ - Last destinations

▸ - Telephone contact destinations

Selecting the stored destination

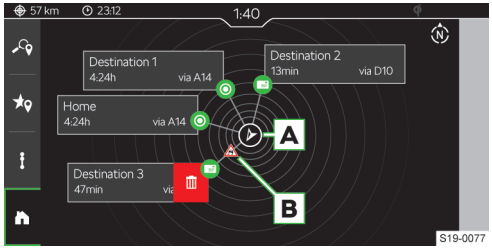
› Select the category of stored destinations.

› Select the desired destination.

Destination details are displayed with the option of starting route guidance.

Recommended destinations

› Tap on ▸ > .



A North-facing vehicle position

B Traffic obstruction

Delete the recommended destination

The view can display up to 5 recommended destinations in the following categories.

▸ Home address destination.

▸ Business address destination.

▸ Favourites.

▸ Last destinations.

Destination alignment depends on the direction in relation to the current vehicle position. The functional surface with the destination displays information about the estimated travel time to the destination.

If the vehicle has active online services and there is a traffic obstruction on the route to the destination, the traffic obstruction icon will be displayed.

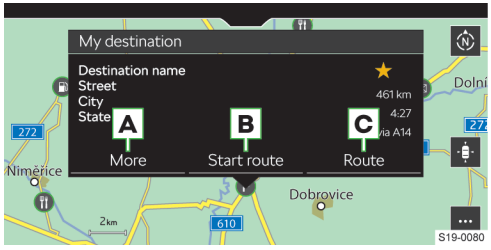
Delete the recommended destination

› Touch the functional surface for the recommended destination and swipe left.

› Tap on .

Selecting destination by tapping the map point

› Tap the desired item or the POI icon in the map.



A Show destination details with the following possible settings

▸ ☆ - Save destination as a favourite

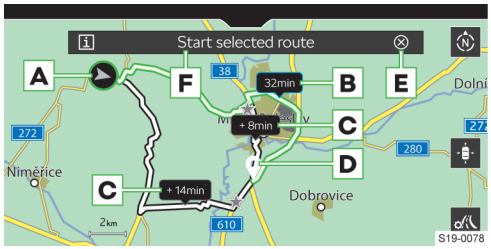
▸ ★ - Delete favourites

▸ - Set destination as a starting point for route guidance in demo mode

B Start direct route guidance

C Route calculation

Route calculation



A Current vehicle position

B Proposed fastest route

C Alternative routes

D Destination position

E 15 s time countdown before automatic start of the route guidance

› **Tap:** Interrupt time countdown

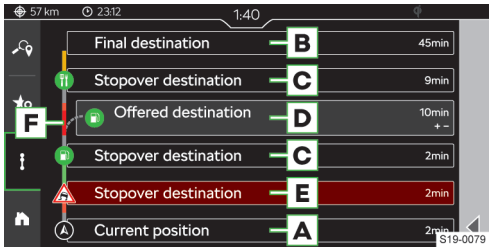
F Start route guidance

Show information on the selected route

Set parameters for route calculation

Route overview

› Tap on ▸ › .



A Information on current vehicle position

B Final route destination

Tap: the following menu items can be selected.

› *Show on map*

› *Stop route guidance*

C Destination provided by Infotainment on the route

Tap: the following menu items can be selected.

› *Show on map*

› *Add stopover destination*

D Route stopover

Tap: the following menu items can be selected.

› *Show on map*

› *Delete*

E Traffic obstruction on the route

Tap: the following menu items can be selected.

› *Show on map*

› *Avoid*

F Route view

Changing route destinations

In the route overview, it is possible to exchange the destination and the intermediate destinations with each other and thus change their order.

› Hold the line with the desired destination until the functional surface for the destination becomes free.

› Move the destination to the desired position and release the functional surface.

The route is re-calculated.

Overview of traffic density

When ŠKODA online services are activated, traffic density information can be displayed in the form of the following colour scale in the route view F.

Low density — — — High density

— Traffic density information is not available

Touch operation

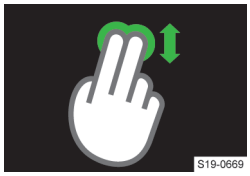
Gesture control



▸ Move the map.



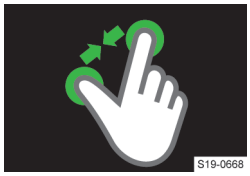
▸ Enter destination by tapping the map item.



▸ Switch 2D/3D map display.



▸ Zoom in to the map.



▶ Zoom out of the map.



▶ Rotate the map.

Limitation

Infotainment may give incorrect driving recommendations if the road conditions or the traffic do not match the navigation data. This can lead to the route guidance being carried out using a different route or proposing a change of direction in a one-way street.

Information for updating the navigation data must be requested from a ŠKODA partner.

Settings

Avoiding traffic obstructions
If the function is switched on and the Infotainment receives information about a traffic obstruction on the route from online traffic information, the route is recalculated.

Infotainment may suggest a detour to avoid traffic obstructions, depending on the following settings.

› Tap ··· > > *Route guidance* > *Avoid traffic congestion*.
› Select the desired menu item.

Showing information on the destination / waypoint
The status line displays information on the distance and travel time to the destination, depending on the following setting.

› Tap ··· > > *Route guidance* > *Show information for:*.
› Select the desired menu item for the destination type.

Showing arrival time information in the destination / driving time
The status line displays information on the travel time depending on the following setting.

› Tap ··· > > *Route guidance* > *Time display:*.
› Select the desired menu item.

Switching display of country-specific speed limits on / off
When the function is switched on, the country-specific speed limits are displayed when crossing national borders.

› Tap ··· > > *Route guidance* > *Country information at border crossings*.

Switching the display of road signs on motorways and expressways on / off
When the function is switched on, Infotainment displays traffic and information signs on motorways and expressways.

› Tap ··· > > *Route guidance* > *Information signs on motorways and dual carriageways*.

Switching the fuel warning on / off
When the function is switched on and the fuel supply reaches the reserve area, a warning message appears with the option of going to the nearest petrol station.

› Tap ··· > > *Route guidance* > *Fuel warning*.

Switching the speed limit warning on / off
› Tap ··· > > *Route guidance* > *Road signs*.
› Set the note type and the value for exceeding the permissible speed.

Settings for trailer operation
To calculate the correct route for trailer operation, switch on trailer inclusion.

› Tap ··· > > *Route guidance* > *Trailer* > *Include trailer*.

Set the maximum speed for trailer operation to correctly calculate the route time.

› Tap ··· > > *Route guidance* > *Trailer* > *Maximum speed for trailers*.
› Set the maximum speed for the trailer.

Setting navigation announcements
› Tap ··· > > *navigation announcements*.
› Select and set the desired menu item.

Show preferred POI categories
Favourite POI categories are displayed on the map and provided in the destination search.

› Tap ··· > > *Basic functions* > *Define preferred POI categories*.
› Set favourite categories.

Setting home address
The defined destination of the home address is displayed in the overview of recommended destinations.

› Tap ··· > > *Basic functions* > *Enter home address*.

Setting business address
The defined destination of the business address is displayed in the overview of recommended destinations.

› Tap ··· > > *Basic functions* > *Enter business address*.

Switching demo mode on / off
In demo mode, the route guidance from the starting point of the demo mode to the selected destination is simulated.

When the function is switched on, Infotainment issues a query before the start of route guidance as to where whether the route guidance should be carried out in the normal way or in demo mode.

› Tap ··· > ⚙ > *Basic functions* > *Demo mode*.

Defining the starting point of the demo mode
› Select or locate the desired destination to be the starting point of demo mode.
› In the displayed destination details, tap *More* > 🎟.

Updating the navigation database

Information for updating the navigation database must be requested from a **ŠKODA** partner.

Automatic update
Infotainment automatically updates when the following conditions are met.

✓ The “Infotainment Online” online services are activated.
✓ An update of the navigation database for the current vehicle position or route destination is available.

Determining the navigation database version
› Tap MENU > ⚙ > *System information*.

Online Services

ŠKODA Connect

Regulations

The rights and obligations of the contracting parties with regard to the provision of these services are regulated in an independent agreement. Current legal documents regarding the ŠKODA Connect services can be found on the ŠKODA Connect Portal and the ŠKODA Connect application.

Functionality

ŠKODA Connect services allow you to connect the vehicle to the online world. They thus represent an extension of the vehicle and Infotainment functions.

The ŠKODA Connect services are not part of the vehicle's equipment. These will be published separately on the ŠKODA Connect Portal website, in the ŠKODA Connect application or in Infotainment, if Infotainment allows this.

The offer of ŠKODA Connect services depends on the type of vehicle and its trim level, Infotainment and country.

ŠKODA Connect website
The ŠKODA Connect website contains e.g. current information on the ŠKODA Connect services, the link to that ŠKODA Connect Portal or the option to download the ŠKODA Connect application.

The website is opened after reading the following QR code or the link.

www ***http://go.skoda.eu/skoda-connect***

ŠKODA Connect Portal website
The ŠKODA Connect Portal website enables, for example, user registration, ordering of ŠKODA Connectservices, service management or remote access to the vehicle.

The website is opened after reading the following QR code or the link.

www ***http://go.skoda.eu/connect-portal***

ŠKODA Connect application
The ŠKODA Connect application enables, for example, user registration, ordering of ŠKODA Connect services or remote access to the vehicle.

The application can be downloaded to the mobile device after scanning the following QR code or link.

http://go.skoda.eu/skodaconnectapp

Conditions

Terms of use of the ŠKODA Connect services
Applies to Infotainment Swing.

✓ A user is registered in the vehicle.
✓ The ŠKODA Connect services are active.
✓ A registered user is authorized to use the ŠKODA Connect services.
✓ The protection level set for sending personal data enables the use of ŠKODA Connect services.

Terms of use of the ŠKODA Connect services
Applies to Infotainment Bolero, Amundsen and Columbus.

✓ A main user is registered in the vehicle.
✓ The ŠKODA Connect services are active.
✓ A user currently logged in is authorized to use the ŠKODA Connect services.
✓ The protection level set for sending personal data enables the use of ŠKODA Connect services.

Availability of the ŠKODA Connect services
Availability depends on the following conditions.

- Cellular networks are available, through which the connection to the ŠKODA Connect services is ensured.
  - The availability, the functionality, the connection speed and the technology of the mobile network can vary in the respective countries and depend on the mobile network operator.
  - In areas where this is insufficient signal, e.g. in underground garages, functionality may be limited.
- The ŠKODA Connect services are available for your vehicle, Infotainment and the respective country.
  - You check availability on the following website ŠKODA Connect.

http://go.skoda.eu/skoda-connect-availability

Availability status of the ŠKODA Connect services
The availability of the services is indicated by the colour of the symbol in the status bar on the Infotainment screen.

- **White** - ŠKODA Connect services are available.
- **Grey** - ŠKODA Connect services are not available.

User registration and activation of the ŠKODA Connect services

Functionality

Applies to Infotainment Swing.

User registration will provide you with a ŠKODA ID user account that can be used in all ŠKODA applications and services.

Users can register for the ŠKODA Connect services at the following locations.

- ŠKODA Connect Portal website.
- ŠKODA Connect application.

Applies to Infotainment Bolero, Amundsen and Columbus.

User registration will provide you with a ŠKODA ID user account that can be used in all ŠKODA applications and services.

Users can register for the ŠKODA Connect services at the following locations.

- ŠKODA Connect Portal website.
- ŠKODA Connect application.
- Infotainment, if it supports this function.

When registering, create an S-PIN.
You will need the S-PIN to register for certain ŠKODA Connect services as well as to register for the protected user account.

Settings

User registration
Applies to Infotainment Swing.

Users register and activate online services ŠKODA Connect on the ŠKODA Connect Portal website or in the ŠKODA Connect application.

To complete user registration, access to the e-mail box entered during registration is required.

Activation of online services
Applies to Infotainment Swing.

In order to active aktivieren ŠKODA Connect, proceed as follows.

› Turn on the ignition and switch on Infotainment.
› Select the following menu.

MENU > > *ŠKODA Connect (online services)* > *Registration*.

› Enter and confirm the registration PIN received when carrying out user and vehicle registration on the ŠKODA Connect Portal website or in the ŠKODA Connect application.

› Wait for the message regarding the completion of the registration to appear.
› Confirm any messages on the screen.

Register users in Infotainment
Applies to Infotainment Bolero, Amundsen and Columbus.

› Switch on the Infotainment and in the welcome window that appears, tap *Switch users* > *Tap Register* and follow the instructions on the screen.

Or:

› MENU > > + > *Tap Register* and follow the instructions on the screen.

To complete user registration, access to the e-mail box entered during registration is required.

Activate ŠKODA Connect services when registering the main user
Applies to Infotainment Bolero, Amundsen and Columbus.

After the main user has been registered, the Infotainment prompts you to activate ŠKODA Connect services.

To complete the activation, it is necessary to have two original vehicle keys with you.

› Follow the instructions in the Infotainment screen.

Activate ŠKODA Connect services of another registered user
Applies to Infotainment Bolero, Amundsen and Columbus.

› MENU > > > *Tap Become main user* .
› Follow the instructions in the Infotainment screen.

Setting personal data protection

Personal data

Personal customer data is collected, processed and used by ŠKODA AUTO in accordance with the requirements of the generally binding legal provisions.

The current personal data protection policy can be found on the following website.

http://www.skoda-auto.com/other/personal-data

As a contracting party with regard to the use of the ŠKODA Connect services, you must ensure the protection of personal data and the right to privacy.

Inform the vehicle user and passengers that the vehicle is transmitting user data and using localization services. Failure to provide information can violate the rights of vehicle users and passengers.

Localisation services include, for example, information on the last parking position, area notification or speed notification.

If the passengers do not agree to the use of the localization services, switch off the services by setting the respective protection level for personal data.

Functionality

User and vehicle data as well as information from the localization services are sent when using the ŠKODA Connect services.

The level of protection for personal data set influences what is sent.

Applies to Infotainment Bolero, Amundsen and Columbus.

The set level of protection for personal data influences data transmission using eSIM.

This does not affect data transmission of a device connected via WLAN.

Settings

The legally required services, e.g. emergency call, cannot be switched off.

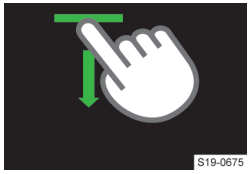
Every vehicle user can set the protection level of personal data.

it is necessary to activate localisation services for the full function of some ŠKODA Connect services.

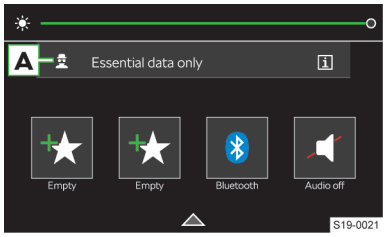
Applies to Infotainment Bolero, Amundsen and Columbus.

The level of protection of personal data is linked to the user account. After the user has logged on, this is set according to the level last set.

Settings in the control centre
Applies to Infotainment Swing.



› Open the Infotainment control centre by holding down the bar at the top of the screen and pulling it down.

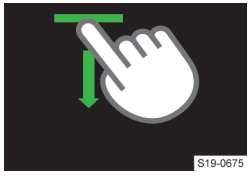


Example of display in Infotainment Swing

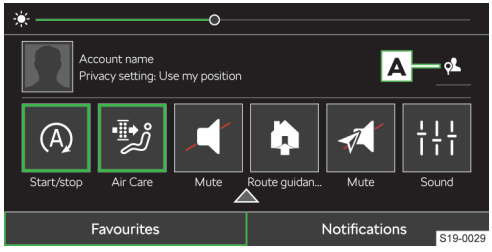
A Tapping the icon displays a menu for setting the protection level of personal data.

ⓘ Detailed information on the protection levels of personal data

Settings in the control centre
Applies to Infotainment Bolero, Amundsen and Columbus.



› Open the Infotainment control centre by holding down the bar at the top of the screen and pulling it down.



Display example in Infotainment Amundsen

A Tapping the icon displays a menu for setting the protection level of personal data.

Set the level of protection for personal data
Applies to Infotainment Swing.

› **MENU** > ⚙ > *ŠKODA Connect (online services)* > *Privacy and services* .
› Set the desired level of protection of personal data.

Tap Set-up in user management
Applies to Infotainment Bolero, Amundsen and Columbus.

› **MENU** > 👤 > ⚙ > *Privacy and service management* .
› Set the desired level of protection of personal data.

Maximum privacy
Applies to Infotainment Swing.

▸ All ŠKODA Connect services other than the services you are currently using are switched off.
▸ All localization services are switched off. The vehicle position information is not shared.

Maximum privacy
Applies to Infotainment Bolero, Amundsen and Columbus.

▸ All ŠKODA Connect services other than the services you are currently using are switched off.
▸ All localization services are switched off. The vehicle position information is not shared.
▸ Information transmission via eSim is switched off.
▸ No online updates available.

No location
Applies to Infotainment Swing.

▸ All localization services ŠKODA Connect are switched off. The vehicle position information is not shared.

No location
Applies to Infotainment Bolero, Amundsen and Columbus.

▸ All localization services ŠKODA Connect are switched off. The vehicle position information is not shared.
▸ Information transmission via eSim is switched on.
▸ All functions that require a connection via eSIM are active.

Use location
Applies to Infotainment Swing.

▸ Localization services ŠKODA Connect are enabled. Information on vehicle position is not provided to other people.
▸ Information on the vehicle position is not available on the ŠKODA Connect Portal web pages and in the ŠKODA Connect application.

Use location
Applies to Infotainment Bolero, Amundsen and Columbus.

▸ Localization services ŠKODA Connect are enabled. Information on vehicle position is not provided to other people.
▸ Information on the vehicle position is not available on the ŠKODA Connect Portal web pages and in the ŠKODA Connect application.
▸ Information transmission via eSim is switched on.
▸ All functions that require a connection via eSIM are active.

Share my location
Applies to Infotainment Swing.

- ▶ Localization services ŠKODA Connect are enabled. The vehicle position information is available for all services which need to know the vehicle's position.
- ▶ Information on the vehicle position is available on the ŠKODA Connect Portal web pages and in the ŠKODA Connect application.

Share my location

Applies to Infotainment Bolero, Amundsen and Columbus.

- ▶ Localization services ŠKODA Connect are enabled. The vehicle position information is available for all services which need to know the vehicle's position.
- ▶ Information on the vehicle position is available on the ŠKODA Connect Portal web pages and in the ŠKODA Connect application.
- ▶ Information transmission via eSim is switched on.
- ▶ All functions that require a connection via eSIM are active.

Collection of anonymised data

Applies to Infotainment Bolero, Amundsen and Columbus.

When the protection level of personal data is set Use location and Share my location the vehicle can collect and send anonymised data to improve the services of selected third parties.

It is exclusively anonymous data without any connection to the specific vehicle, the vehicle owner or other authorized users.

User management

What you should be mindful of

Applies to Infotainment Bolero, Amundsen and Columbus.

When buying an older vehicle with ŠKODA Connect services, it is possible that the services are active and the main user is the previous owner of the vehicle. The previous owner may also be able to control the vehicle functions and receive information about the users and the vehicle.

Therefore, we recommend removing the previous main user. Then, log in with your own user account and set yourself as the main user of the vehicle.

If you register a new user and choose yourself as the main user during registration, the previous main user will be automatically overwritten.

The type of user and vehicle information to be sent can be influenced by setting the protection level of personal data.

Functionality

Applies to Infotainment Bolero, Amundsen and Columbus.

User accounts

User Management displays the accounts of the last active users. The following activities can be carried out in user management.

- ▶ Select user account.
- ▶ Register users.
- ▶ Activate ŠKODA Connect services.
- ▶ Add and remove user accounts.
- ▶ Set main users.
- ▶ Set account security.

Overview

Applies to Infotainment Bolero, Amundsen and Columbus.

Main user

The main user provides a registered user with activated ŠKODA Connectservices and a vehicle associated with his account.

The main user can take full advantage of the personalisation features.

The main user has full control over the settings and operation of the vehicle.

All settings are saved in the main user's personal online account.

User with a ŠKODA Connect online account

The user was not selected by the main user, but has his own ŠKODA Connect online account.

The user can take full advantage of the personalisation features.

All settings are saved in the registered user's personal online account.

Guest

A guest account is anonymous and will in no way synchronise with ŠKODA Connect services.

All changes to settings related to this account are stored exclusively in the vehicle.

Conditions

Applies to Infotainment Bolero, Amundsen and Columbus.

The following conditions must be met for unlimited use of the management of user accounts and their synchronization with online accounts.

- ✓ A main user with active ŠKODA Connect services is registered in Infotainment.
- ✓ The ŠKODA Connect services are available.

Operation

Applies to Infotainment Bolero, Amundsen and Columbus.

User login

When the ignition and Infotainment are switched on, the introductory login screen for the last user account used is displayed.

The initial login screen cannot be skipped. Without registering, the Infotainment cannot be used.

› Confirm login.

When you log in to a secure user account, enter the S-PIN and confirm the login.

Or:

› Select the menu item for switching user.

A menu containing available users is displayed.

› Select the desired account.

› When you log in to a secure user account, enter the S-PIN and confirm the login.

Or:

› Select the menu item for switching user.

A menu containing available users is displayed.

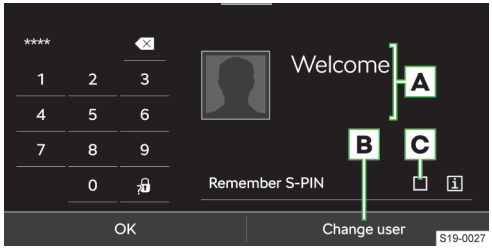
› If you are a new user, tap *New user* to log in the user.

› Follow the instructions in the Infotainment screen.

Log in to the protected user account

Some user accounts can be protected. Protected accounts are shown in the user list with the icon .

To **log in** to the protected user account you need the S-PIN created when creating the user account on the ŠKODA Connect Portal website, in the ŠKODA Connect application or when registering the user in Infotainment.



A User name

B Turn off logging in to the account using the S-PIN

C Display of user account management

Display information about the S-PIN

Display information about restoring the S-PIN

User verification by entering the S-PIN can be switched on/off in the menu item **MENU** > > > *Protect user profile* > *Protect user profile with S-PIN* will be switched on/off.

Restore S-PIN

Your S-PIN can be restored on the ŠKODA Connect Portal website or in the ŠKODA Connect application.

› After restoring the S-PIN, register again for the correct functioning of the ŠKODA Connect application in the vehicle as the main user.

› If you are the main user in several vehicles, register again in each vehicle.

Log out user

When the ignition is switched off, the logout screen is displayed, in which selected vehicle information can be seen.

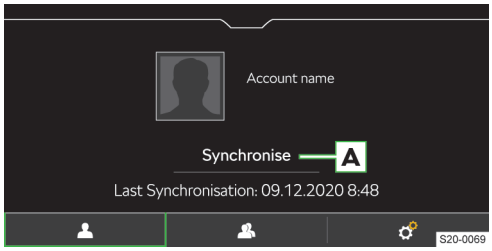
After the time interval has expired, the logout screen is switched off and the user is automatically logged out.

Settings

Applies to Infotainment Bolero, Amundsen and Columbus.

User management

› Tap **MENU** > .



Details of the currently selected user

▶ - A user account protected by the S-PIN

Switch to another user / enter a new user

Settings

A Online synchronization of the user account with information about the last synchronization

Tap Become main user

› **MENU** > > > *Tap Become main user* and follow the instructions on the screen.

Delete user

› To display the user accounts, tap **MENU** > > > *Delete users* .

› To delete the user, select the user and confirm the deletion.

Deleting the main user account will delete the shared user accounts.

Delete the current user account

› **MENU** > > > *Tap Delete user profile* .

› Confirm the deletion.

Delete all users
Resetting the Infotainment to the factory settings will delete all user accounts.

› Turn on the ignition and switch on Infotainment.
› Tap MENU > .
› *Restore factory settings* select and confirm the reset.

To check the factory reset was successful, we recommend that you check the deletion of the user accounts and the main user account.

User account

What you should be mindful of

Applies to Infotainment Swing.

When buying an older vehicle with ŠKODA Connect services, it is possible that the services are active and the main user is the previous owner of the vehicle. The previous owner may also be able to control the vehicle functions and receive information about the user and the vehicle.

Therefore, we recommend removing the previous main user. Then log in with your own user account.

When you register a new user, the previous user is automatically overwritten.

Conditions

Applies to Infotainment Swing.

For user account management, the availability of the ŠKODA Connect services is indispensable.

Settings

Applies to Infotainment Swing.

Delete user
› Turn on the ignition and switch on Infotainment.
› Select the following menu.

MENU > > *ŠKODA Connect (online services)* > *Registration*.

› *Delete main user* > *Tap Clear* .
› Confirm the deletion.

By deleting the registered vehicle in the user account on the website ŠKODA Connect Portal the user is also deleted in Infotainment.

Changing the user
› Turn on the ignition and switch on Infotainment.
› Select the following menu.

MENU > > *ŠKODA Connect (online services)* > *Registration*.

› *New main user* > *Tap Transfer ownership* .
› Enter and confirm the registration PIN code received when registering the new user and when registering the vehicle on the ŠKODA Connect Portal website.
› If necessary, confirm the change by tapping *Change main user* .

Personalisation

Usage

Applies to Infotainment Bolero, Amundsen and Columbus.

The personalisation service allows you to set, save and restore vehicle settings.

The personalisation service is connected to the user accounts. Every change to the configured personalised functions is automatically saved in the active user account.

If the vehicle is within range of a contractual mobile phone network, personalisable settings are stored in the ŠKODA ID online user account after the ignition is switched off.

By registering for a user account in another vehicle of the ŠKODA brand, the personalisable functions associated with the user account are set depending on the vehicle type, equipment and Infotainment.

Settings

Applies to Infotainment Bolero, Amundsen and Columbus.

Switch personalisation service on / off
› MENU > > > *Privacy settings and manage services* .
› In the displayed list of online services, select the service **personalisation**.
› Switch the service off / on.

Management of online services

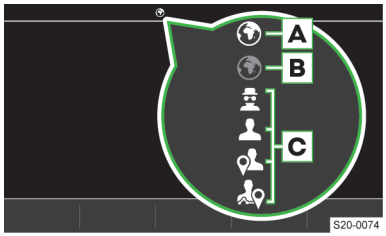
Usage

The following activities can be carried out in service management.

- Set up protection of personal data.
- Show list of available services.
- Receive information about the status of the services.
- Receive information about the validity of the services.
- Switch use of services on / off.

Connection status of the online services

The connection status of the ŠKODA Connect online services is indicated by an icon in the status bar on the Infotainment screen.



A The ŠKODA Connect online services are available.

B The ŠKODA Connect online services are not available.

C Configured protection level of personal data

Maximum privacy

No position data

Use my position

Share my position

Conditions

Applies to Infotainment Swing.

✓ A user with active ŠKODA Connect services is registered in Infotainment.

✓ The ŠKODA Connect services are available.

Applies to Infotainment Bolero, Amundsen and Columbus.

✓ A main user with active ŠKODA Connect services is registered in Infotainment.

✓ The ŠKODA Connect services are available.

Operation

Show list of online services
Applies to Infotainment Swing.

› MENU > ⚙ > *ŠKODA Connect (online services)* > *Tap Privacy settings and services* .

Show list of online services
Applies to Infotainment Bolero, Amundsen and Columbus.

› MENU > 👤 > ⚙ > *Tap Privacy settings and manage services* .

Show details of services
Applies to Infotainment Swing.

› Select the desired service from the list of services.

The details of the service may contain the following information and functions.

- Status of the service.
- Reason why the service is not available.
- Expiry date of the service's validity.
- Switch use of the activation word on/off.

Show details of services
Applies to Infotainment Bolero, Amundsen and Columbus.

› Select the desired service from the list of online services.

The details of the service may contain the following information and functions.

- Status of the service.
- Reason why a service is unavailable or who turned it off.
- Name of the group of online services in which the respective service is contained.
- Expiry date of the service's validity.
- Switch use of the activation word on/off.

Settings

Switch on/off use of the service
Applies to Infotainment Swing.

› MENU > ⚙ > *ŠKODA Connect (online services)* > *Tap Privacy settings and services* .

› Select the desired service from the list of online services displayed.

› Switch the desired service on / off.

ⓘ The service can only be used if it is available.

Switch on/off use of the service
Applies to Infotainment Bolero, Amundsen and Columbus.

› MENU > 👤 > ⚙ > *Tap Privacy settings and manage services* .

› Select the desired service from the list of online services displayed.

› Switch the desired service on / off.

ⓘ The use of the service applies to all user accounts. The service can only be used if it is available.

eSIM data connection

Usage

Applies to Infotainment Bolero, Amundsen and Columbus.

It is possible to use the prepaid e-SIM data connection for ŠKODA Connect services.

The data connection can be shared with another 8 connected devices using WLAN.

Further information on the function of the data connection, user registration, availability of the data connection and an overview of the data plans and countries, with the option to purchase them, can be found on the following website.

https://skoda.cubictelecom.com

Operation

Applies to Infotainment Bolero, Amundsen and Columbus.

Display ŠKODA Connect data plans

› MENU > ⚙ > *Data connection* > *Data plans* .

The following information is displayed in the overview.

- Overview of the purchased packages.
- Use of the data plans.
- Period of validity of the package.

The validity of the plan expires when the plan is fully used or when the period of validity expires.

Settings

Applies to Infotainment Bolero, Amundsen and Columbus.

Switch data connection of the ŠKODA Connect services on / off

› MENU > ⚙ > *Data connection* > *Integrated data connection (eSIM)* .

Online System Update

Usage

Applies to Infotainment Bolero, Amundsen and Columbus.

The online update enables a software update of the connectivity unit (OCU) and the Infotainment.

The Infotainment automatically indicates a possible online update by showing a message on the Infotainment screen. Infotainment also offers the option of downloading the update or postponing the download process.

Further information on online updates, their availability in the respective countries, on supported vehicles and Infotainment systems can be found on the following website.

http://go.skoda.eu/online-system-update

If the download of the update is postponed, the option to download the update will be offered again the next time the ignition and Infotainment are switched on.

Operation

Applies to Infotainment Bolero, Amundsen and Columbus.

Download update

› Turn on the ignition and switch on Infotainment.
› Follow the instructions and information displayed on the Infotainment screen.
› Confirm the download in the Infotainment.

The download process can be cancelled at any time. When the ignition is switched on again, the download process is automatically restored.

The download time depends on the speed and quality of the mobile network, the file size, and the type of update.

Install update

⚠ **WARNING**
The connectivity control unit (OCU) or Infotainment may not function during installation.
In this case, there are no emergency calls, no automatic emergency calls in the event of an accident and none of the ŠKODA Connect services will be available.

› **Install the update while the vehicle is stationary.**
› Park the vehicle safely.
› Switch off the ignition.
› Confirm the software installation on the Infotainment screen.

It is possible to leave the vehicle and the installation will continue.

› Switch on the ignition and Infotainment after installation or return to the vehicle.
› Check the message regarding successful installation on the Infotainment screen.

The emergency call indicator light does not light up during installation.

After a successful installation, the emergency call indicator lamp lights up green.

Conditions

Applies to Infotainment Bolero, Amundsen and Columbus.

The following conditions must be met for a successful update.

✓ The ignition and the Infotainment are switched on.
✓ The ŠKODA Connect services are active.
✓ The ŠKODA Connect services are available.

✓ The online update is available in the relevant country.
✓ The charge state of the vehicle battery is sufficient.

Self help

Applies to Infotainment Bolero, Amundsen and Columbus.

If you experience any of the following events while downloading the update or during installation, contact a specialist company.

▸ A message appears in the Infotainment screen regarding an incorrect download or installation of the update.
▸ The Infotainment screen goes out after switching on.
▸ The emergency call indicator lamp lights up red.

Shop

Usage

Applies to Infotainment Bolero, Amundsen and Columbus.

The following activities can be carried out in the Shop menu in Infotainment.

▸ Order new functions and services.
▸ Extend purchased functions and services.
▸ Purchase data plans from ŠKODA Connect services later.

  Devices connected via Wi-Fi can also access the data plans.

  Further information on the data plans can be found on the following website.

https://skoda.cubictelecom.com

The functions and services can be subject to a runtime limitation or even be unlimited.

The functions and services that are purchased are available to all vehicle users.

The functions and services can also be purchased later on the website ŠKODA Connect Portal.

Overview

Applies to Infotainment Bolero, Amundsen and Columbus.

› Tap MENU > .
› Select the desired function or service from the list that is displayed.

Conditions

Applies to Infotainment Bolero, Amundsen and Columbus.

The availability of the services and functions depends on the vehicle and Infotainment type as well as being country-specific.

The following conditions must be met to activate new services and functions.

✓ Infotainment supports the activation of new services and functions.
✓ The vehicle equipment enables the use of new services or functions.

  If a service or a function is linked to a trim level that is not available with the vehicle, find out from a specialist garage whether the vehicle trim can be added.
✓ The main vehicle user is logged on.
✓ The ŠKODA Connect services are active.
✓ The ŠKODA Connect services are available.
✓ The charge state of the vehicle battery is sufficient.

An active data connection is required for certain services or functions. The connection may be subject to charges.

Activated services and functions are not linked to the validity period of ŠKODA Connect services.

Limitation

Applies to Infotainment Bolero, Amundsen and Columbus.

The functions are linked to the vehicle, not to the main user account. These cannot be transferred to any other vehicle in which the user logs on.

Information call

Usage

The info call can be used if there are problems with the ŠKODA Connectservices or for information regarding the products and services of the ŠKODA brand.

Conditions

✓ The ŠKODA Connect services are active.

✓ The level of protection for personal data is not set to *Maximum privacy* .

To send information about the vehicle position, the level of protection for personal data must be set to *Share my location* .

Operation



› Press the i key.

Breakdown call

Usage

The breakdown call can be used in the event of a breakdown.

By pressing the key a connection is established with the ŠKODABreakdown Service. At the same time, the vehicle sends information about the vehicle condition and the vehicle position.

Conditions

✓ The ŠKODA ConnectServices are active.

✓ The level of protection of personal data is not set to *maximum privacy* .

To send information about the vehicle position, the level of protection of personal data must be set to *Share location* .

Operation



› Press the button.

Service schedules

Usage

If the vehicle detects that a service visit is necessary, it will automatically send this information to the service partner of your choice.

The service partner will then contact you and schedule the service visit with you.

Conditions

The service and the coupled functions are available depending on the following conditions.

✓ A service partner can be selected on the ŠKODA Connect Portal website or in the ŠKODA Connect application.

✓ The vehicle type, vehicle equipment and Infotainment type are supported.

✓ The level of protection of personal data is not set to *Maximum privacy* .

✓ The ŠKODA Connect services are active.

✓ The ŠKODA Connect services are available.

Vehicle status report

Usage

The vehicle status report function allows you to have online control over the condition of the vehicle.

The service is available in the ŠKODA Connect application.

Available vehicle data include e.g. distance travelled, selected warning messages or requirements for the service inspection.

Conditions

The service and the coupled functions are available depending on the following conditions.

✓ The ŠKODA Connect services are active.

✓ Configured protection level of personal data.

✓ The ŠKODA Connect services are available.

Remote access to the vehicle

Usage

The service relating to remote access to the vehicle offers the possibility of remotely controlling certain vehicle functions and accessing vehicle information.

Available functions include, for example, the following.

- ▸ Trip overviews.
- ▸ Notification if alarm triggered.
- ▸ Localisation service notifications, such as, for example, location, area or speed notifications
- ▸ Vehicle search using horn and flashing signals.
- ▸ Remote controlled vehicle locking and unlocking.
- ▸ Operation of the auxiliary heating.

Conditions

The service and the coupled functions are available depending on the following conditions.

- ✓ The vehicle type, vehicle equipment and Infotainment type are supported.
- ✓ Configured protection level of personal data.
- ✓ The ŠKODA Connect services are active.
- ✓ The ŠKODA Connect services are available.

Starting and driving

Start

Starting instructions

⚠ DANGER
Danger of poisoning by exhaust gases!
▸ Do not run the engine in an enclosed space.

Function conditions
✓ The vehicle key is located in the vehicle interior.

ⓘ NOTICE
Risk of key loss, possibly of key damage!
The system can detect the key even if it has been forgotten on the vehicle roof.
▸ Always keep the key with you.

Switching the ignition on and off



› Press the starter button.

Start vehicle with manual transmission
› Secure the vehicle with the parking brake.
› Move the shift lever to the neutral position.
› Keep the clutch pedal depressed.
› Press the starter button.

Start vehicle with automatic transmission
› Secure the vehicle with the parking brake.
› Keep the brake pedal depressed.
› Move the selector lever to position **P** or **N**.
› Press the starter button.

ⓘ In vehicles with diesel engines, the warning light lights up after the ignition is switched ➿ - glow plug system on. The engine starts after ➿ .

⚠ CAUTION
Danger of unexpected vehicle movement!
▸ At temperatures below -10°C, start the vehicle with the selector lever in the **P** position.

Stopping the engine
› Secure the vehicle with the parking brake.
› Press the starter button.

⚠ WARNING
Steering lock hazard!
▸ During a journey with the engine stopped, the ignition must always be switched on.

ⓘ NOTICE
Risk of engine overheating!
▸ Do not switch the engine off immediately at the end of your journey after the engine has been running at high loads. Leave it to run at an idling speed for about 1 minute.

Starting issues

Troubleshooting

NOTICE
Risk of engine damage!
▸ Do not start the vehicle by towing.

The engine does not start
› Switch off the ignition.
› Wait 30 seconds and repeat the starting procedure.
› If the engine does not start, start the vehicle using another vehicle's battery » page 204 or get help from a specialist company.

The engine does not start, the display shows a message regarding the immobilizer
› Use the other vehicle key.
› If the engine does not start, seek the help of a specialist garage.

Starting is not possible with the starter button, the system did not detect the key
illuminates



› Press the starter button with the key.
› If the engine does not start, seek the help of a specialist garage.

The key might not be detected if the battery in the key is nearly discharged or the signal is faulty.

The engine cannot be turned off with the starter button
› Hold the starter button or press twice.

The radiator fan keeps running even after the engine has stopped
The radiator fan can continue to run for approximately 10 minutes after the engine is stopped. This is not a defect.

The engine makes noises after the cold start
The increased running noise is due to the briefly increased engine speed. This is not a defect.

START STOP

Usage

The START-STOPSystem reduces polluting emissions and CO_2emissions and saves fuel.

Functionality

If the system determine that the engine is not needed when the vehicle stops, it turns off the engine and starts it again when moving off.

Vehicle with manual transmission
A system-related engine shutdown takes place when the vehicle is stopped, when the gear lever is shifted into neutral and when the clutch pedal is released.

A system-related engine start occurs when the clutch pedal is pressed down.

Vehicle with automatic transmission
A system-related engine switch-off occurs when the brake pedal is actuated and the engine is stopped.

A system-related engine start occurs when the accelerator pedal is pressed down. When the Auto Hold function is deactivated, a system-related engine start occurs after releasing the brake pedal.

Status display in the instrument cluster display
- Engine is switched off by the START-STOPSystem

- Engine is switched off by the START-STOPSystem not switched off due to functional conditions not being met

Display of detailed information in the infotainment screen
CAR > > *Vehicle status*

Or:

MENU > > > *Vehicle status*

Functional conditions

Some conditions are system-related and cannot be influenced or recognized. Therefore, the system may react differently in situations which seem identical from the driver's perspective.

The driver must meet the following conditions.
✓ The driver's door is closed.
✓ The driver has fastened the seat belt.
✓ The driving speed was higher than 4 km/h after the last stop.

Settings

Automatic activation
▸ Upon start-up of the engine.
▸ By selecting the driving mode Eco » page 171, *Operation*.

Deactivate / activate system
› Press the button.

When the system is deactivated, the symbol lights up in the button .

If a system-related engine switch-off occurs and the system is deactivated, the engine will start.

Troubleshooting

The engine does not switch off when stopping, or it starts before starting up
The system has detected that the engine is running.

Manual gearbox

Operation

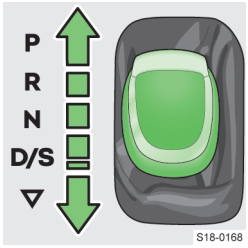
NOTICE
Danger of engine damage!
- Shift to a higher gear before reaching the red area on the tachometer scale.

NOTICE
Danger of gearbox damage!
- Fully depress the clutch pedal when changing gear.
- When not shifting gear, do not put your hand on the shift lever.

Engaging reverse gear
1. Stop the vehicle.
2. Fully depress the clutch.
3. Move the shift lever to the neutral position.
4. Push the shift lever down.
5. Turn it completely to the left.
6. Wait briefly.
7. Engage reverse gear.

Automatic gearbox

Selector lever positions



P **Parked vehicle**
The drive wheels are locked.
Only adjust **P he position** when the vehicle is stationary.

R **Reverse gear**
Only adjust **R he position** when the vehicle is stationary.

N **Idle position**
There is no transmission of engine power to the wheels.

D/S **Forward drive / sports program**
The gear is changed automatically.
In mode **S** the gear is changed at higher speeds than in mode **D**.

Select between D and S (sprung position)

Selector lever out of position P or N solve
lights up - the selector lever is locked



› Press the brake pedal, and at the same time, press the button in the selector lever.

WARNING
Danger of the vehicle rolling away automatically!
- When the selector lever is in the position **D/S**, **R** or in manual shift mode, secure the vehicle with the brake.

Operation

Start up
1. Keep the brake pedal depressed.
2. Start the engine.
3. Press the button on the selector lever and set it to the desired position.
4. Release the brake pedal and press the accelerator pedal lightly.

Speeding up while driving (kick-down)
1. Fully depress the accelerator.

Stopping temporarily (e.g. at a junction)
1. Leave the selector lever in the position **D/S** and secure the vehicle with the brake pedal.

Stop
1. Keep the brake pedal depressed.
2. Secure the vehicle with the parking brake.
3. Press the button in the selector lever and bring it to the position **P** adjust.
4. Turn off the engine.

Drive in neutral
If the system detects that no gear is engaged while driving, it automatically switches to neutral position.

It will eco be displayed in the instrument cluster.

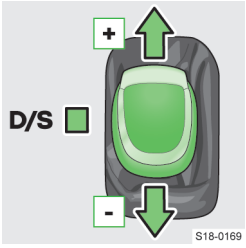
Requirements for driving in neutral position
- ✓ The mode **D** is selected.
- ✓ Neither the accelerator nor the brake pedal is pressed.
- ✓ The vehicle speed is 20-130 km/h.
- ✓ No device is connected to the trailer socket.

Acceleration on start-up (launch control)
This function allows maximum acceleration during start-up.

› Select the **S**mode or manual shift mode.
› Disable the TCS » page 177.
› Keep the brake pedal depressed.
› Fully depress the accelerator.
› Release the brake pedal.

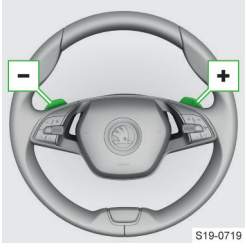
The vehicle drives with maximum acceleration.

Manually switching gear with the selector lever
› To **turn on,** move the selector lever **D/S** to the right (to the left for right-hand drive vehicles).
› To **turn off,** move the selector lever back into position **D/S** .



+ Upshift
- Downshift

Manually changing gear with the shift paddles on the steering wheel



- Downshift
+ Upshift

› To **turn on,** press the shift paddle - or +.
› To **turn off,** hold the shift paddle + .

If none of the shift paddles are pressed for a certain time, manual shift mode turns off automatically.

If the engine threatens to over-rev
▸ The gearbox automatically changes to the next higher gear.
▸ The transmission prevents changing to the next lower gear.

Troubleshooting

The selector lever cannot be moved out of position P in the normal way
› Mechanically unlock the selector lever » page 170.

Gearbox overheated
illuminates together with ⚠

or

illuminates together with ⚠
Message regarding the gearbox overheating

› You may continue driving, exercising appropriate caution.

illuminates together with ⚠

or

illuminates together with ⚠
Message regarding the gearbox overheating

› Stop driving! Stop the vehicle and stop the engine.
› After the indicator light goes out, your journey can continue.
› If the warning light does not go out, stop driving! Get the help of a specialist company.

Gearbox impaired
illuminates together with ⚠

or

illuminates together with ⚠
Message regarding the gearbox in emergency mode

› You may continue driving, exercising appropriate caution.
› Immediately seek the help of a specialist company.

illuminates together with ⚠

or

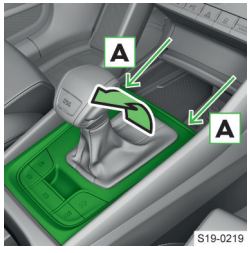
illuminates together with ⚠
Message regarding a gearbox fault

› Stop driving! Get the help of a specialist company.

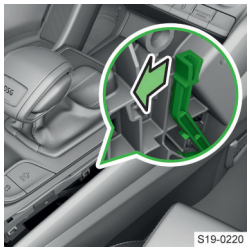
Starting the stuck vehicle
› Adjust the selector lever quickly between **D/S** and **R** . The vehicle will then start to rock and be easier to free.

Mechanical release of the automatic gearbox

› Secure the vehicle with the parking brake.
› Open the stowage compartment in the front centre console.



› Insert a flat-head screwdriver or push a similar tool into the gap in the area of arrow A.
› Carefully loosen and lift the cover of the shift gate.



› Pull the plastic part in the direction of the arrow and at the same time press the button on the selector lever.
› Move selector lever to position **N** .

Vehicle driving mode

Usage

The driving mode offers the possibility of adapting the driving behaviour to the desired driving style.

Overview

Information about the selected driving mode is displayed in the status bar in the Infotainment screen as well as in the digital instrument cluster.

Eco mode

Eco mode is suitable for a relaxed style of driving and helps to save fuel.

Comfort mode

Comfort mode is suitable for driving on roads with poorer surface or for long motorway journeys.

Normal mode

Normal mode is suitable for conventional driving.

Sport mode

Sport mode is suitable for a sporty driving.

Individual mode

Individual mode enables certain vehicle systems to be customised.

Snow mode

The Snow mode is suitable for driving on slippery or snowy roads. In this mode, the automatic gearbox cannot be set to mode **S**.

Offroad mode

Offroad mode is suitable for driving on non-paved roads. But even with Offroad mode switched on, your vehicle is never a true SUV.

The following brake and stabilisation systems change in Offroad mode.

▸ ESC.
▸ ASR.
▸ EDL.
▸ ABS.

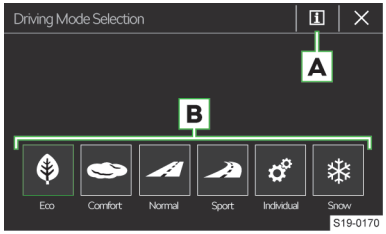
If Offroad mode is switched on, , and in the instrument cluster.

Operation

Select driving mode

› Press the MODE button or MODE.

In the Infotainment, a driving mode menu appears.



A Information about system settings of the currently selected mode / system settings for the selected Individual mode

B Driving mode menu

› Tap the corresponding functional surface B.

Or:

› Press the MODE button or MODE again.

After switching on the ignition, Normal mode is automatically selected.

Switch on Offroad mode

› Press the button.

The Offroad information appears in the Infotainment.

Offroad Information

The Offroad information is used to assess the current driving situation.

The Offroad information display is shown in the menu item in the Infotainment.

CAR > > *Offroad*

Or:

MENU > > > *Offroad*

A swipe of the finger vertically across the screen allows three of the following displays to be shown.

▸ Steering angle.
▸ Coolant temperature.
▸ Oil temperature.
▸ Compass (Infotainment Amundsen, Columbus).

▸ Altimeter (Infotainment Amundsen, Columbus).

Troubleshooting

Adaptive DCC suspension faulty

illuminates together with ⚠

or

illuminates together with ⚠

› Continue driving with appropriate caution. Get the help of a specialist company.

Economical driving style

Tips for economical driving style and evaluation of driving economy

Tips for economical driving

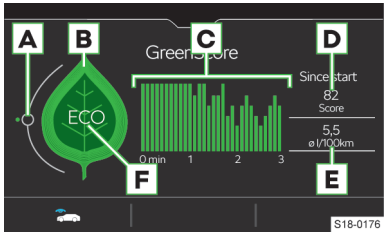
- ▸ Avoid unnecessary acceleration and braking.
- ▸ Display the gear recommendation in the instrument cluster display
- ▸ Avoid full acceleration and excessive speeds.
- ▸ Avoid engine idling during longer periods of stationary time.
- ▸ Do not warm up the engine while the vehicle is stationary. If possible, start your journey as soon as the engine starts.
- ▸ Observe the prescribed tyre pressure » page 213.
- ▸ Remove unnecessary ballast.
- ▸ Remove the roof rack when it is not needed.
- ▸ Switch on electric consumers only for as long as necessary.
- ▸ Do not leave the windows open while driving.

Display of evaluation in the infotainment screen

CAR > > *DriveGreen*

Or:

MENU > > > *DriveGreen*



A **Driving fluid display**
When the driving is fluid, the display is located near the green dot.

B **Sheet**
The greener the leaf, the more economic the driving style. Tapping the screen in the area of the sheet displays tips for reducing fuel and energy consumption.

C **Driving economy diagram**
Each bar indicates driving efficiency in 5 second increments. The current bar is on the left. The higher the green bars, the more economical the driving style.

D **Points system (0-100)**
The higher the indicated value, the more economical the driving style. By tapping the screen in the area of value **D**, a rating of the last 30 minutes of driving is displayed.

E **Average fuel consumption**
Tapping the screen in area of value **E** displays the average fuel consumption over the past 30 minutes.

F **Information about the current driving style**

- ▸ **ECO** Economical driving style
- ▸ The speed has a negative effect on fuel consumption
- ▸ The ride is not smooth
- ▸ 3›4 Recommended gear

ⓘ In Infotainment it is possible to display up to three consumers that are currently making up the largest share of fuel consumption.

CAR > > *Consumer comfort*

Or:

MENU > > > *Consumer comfort*

Consumption-friendly driving

There is a slight reduction in fuel consumption in the following situations. ECO lights up in the instrument cluster.

- ▸ The active cylinder management has temporarily deactivated some cylinders of the engine (applies to certain engine types).
- ▸ A vehicle with automatic transmission rolls in neutral position.

Towing a trailer

What you should be mindful of

⚠ **WARNING**
When driving with a trailer, special care is required!

ⓘ **NOTICE**
With frequent towing, the vehicle is excessively loaded so this must also be checked between service intervals.

Recommendations for using a trailer

- ▸ Adjust the tyre pressure on the vehicle for full load.

- ▶ Do not exceed the maximum permissible total weight of the vehicle and the combination weight specified in the technical vehicle documentation (e.g. in the vehicle registration documentation, in the COC document) and on the type plate.
- ▶ For trailer operation, consider the current load condition of the vehicle as well as the distribution of the load in the trailer. The coupled trailer increases the rear axle load and can therefore reduce the payload.
- ▶ Adjust the headlight range of the headlights according to the load status of the vehicle. The front of the vehicle may lift up when a trailer is being towed and the headlights may dazzle other road users.
- ▶ A speed of **100 km/h** should not be exceeded.
- ▶ Reduce the speed by releasing the accelerator pedal as soon as a pendulum movement of the trailer is noticeable. Never attempt to stop the trailer from swaying by accelerating.
- ▶ If the traffic area behind the trailer can not be viewed, install additional exterior mirrors.
- ▶ Apply the brakes in good time. If the trailer is fitted with a trailer brake, apply the brakes gently at first, then brake firmly. This will avoid brake jolts resulting from the trailer wheels locking.
- ▶ Select a lower gear before descending to also use the braking force of the engine.

Distribution of the load over the vehicle and trailer combination

- ▶ Secure heavy objects against slipping, as close to the trailer axle as possible.
- ▶ Transport small and light objects in the luggage compartment.

Permitted trailer loads

The details in the technical vehicle documentation take precedence over the information in this Owner's Manual.

⚠ **WARNING**
Risk of an accident!
- ▶ Do not exceed the permissible trailer load.

Engine type	Gearbox	Permissible trailer load, braked (kg) [a]		Permissible trailer load, unbraked (kg)	
		Five-seat version	Seven-seat version	Five-seat version	Seven-seat version
1.4 l/92 kW TSI	Manual gearbox	1600	1600	750	750
1.4 l/110 kW TSI	Manual gearbox 4x4	2000	2000	750	750
	DSG [b]	1800	1800	750	750
	DSG [b] 4x4	2000	2000	750	750
1.5 l/110 kW TSI	Manual gearbox	1800	1800	750	750
	DSG [b]	1800	1800	750	750
2.0 l/132 kW TSI	DSG [b] 4x4	2200	2000	750	750
2.0 l/140 kW TSI	DSG [b] 4x4	2200	2000	750	750
2.0 l/110 kW TDI CR	Manual gearbox 4x4	1950	-	750	-
	DSG [b]	2000	2000	750	750
	DSG [b] 4x4	2300	2000	750	750
2.0 l/130 kW TDI CR	DSG [b] 4x4	2300	1800	750	750
2.0 l/147 kW TDI CR	DSG [b] 4x4	2300	2000	750	750
2.0 l/176 kW TDI CR	DSG [b] 4x4	2300	2000	750	750

[a] With gradients up to 12%.

[b] Automatic dual-clutch transmission.

Towing eye and towing procedure

Towing eye

Remove the grille



› Insert the clamp for taking off the full wheel trims in the recess in the grille, and remove the grille.

Remove the cover cap at the rear



› Press on the cover cap and remove it.

Install the towing eye



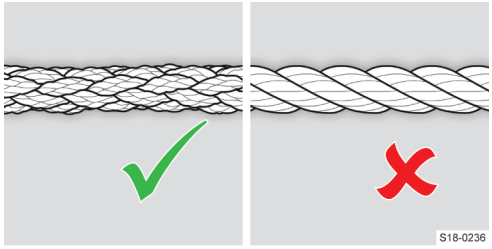
› Screw in the towing eye.
› Insert the wheel wrench or similar object through the towing eye.
› Tighten the towing eye.

After the towing process

› Unscrew the towing eye.
› Insert the cover or grille.

Towing the vehicle

⚠ **WARNING**
Risk of accident!
▸ The tow rope must not be twisted.
▸ When towing, drive at a speed of max. 50 km/h.



⚠ **WARNING**
Risk of accident!
▸ Use a braided synthetic fibre rope for towing. Do not use a twisted tow rope.

ⓘ **NOTICE**
▸ Always keep the tow rope taut during towing.
▸ Do not exceed a towing distance of 50 km.

ⓘ **NOTICE**
Risk of gear damage!
▸ If the gearbox no longer contains any oil, the vehicle must only be towed with the front axle raised clear of the ground or transported on a special breakdown vehicle.
▸ Vehicles with an automatic transmission must not be towed without the ignition switched on or with the rear axle raised.

Where should the tow rope or the tow bar be secured?
▸ At the front towing eye.
▸ On the towing eye at the back.
▸ On the ball bar of the factory-installed towing device.

Instructions for the driver of the pulling vehicle
› Drive slowly and smoothly.
› Only accelerate once the rope is taut.

Instructions for the driver of the towed vehicle
› Move the shift lever to the neutral position or the selector lever to the **N** position.
› If it is not possible to start the engine, switch on the ignition!

⚠ **WARNING**
Risk of accident!
When the ignition is switched off, the brake booster and the power steering do not work. In addition, there is a risk that the steering lock will engage.
▸ If it is not possible to start the engine, switch on the ignition!

Brakes

What you should be mindful of

⚠ **WARNING**
Problems and faults with the brake system can extend the braking distance of the vehicle!

⚠ **DANGER**
Danger of a functional restriction of the brake booster!
▸ When braking in a vehicle with manual transmission, when the vehicle is in gear and at low revs, depress the clutch pedal.

⚠ **DANGER**
Danger of the brakes overheating!
▸ Do not depress the brake pedal if you do not need to brake.
▸ If the original front spoiler is damaged, ensure the air supply to the front brakes is guaranteed.

Check the brake fluid level

Test conditions
✓ The vehicle is on a horizontal surface.
✓ The engine is off.

Checking



The fill level must be in the marked area.

› If the level is below the mark **MIN**, do not continue.
› Do not refill liquid.
› Get the help of a specialist company.

If the brake fluid level is too low, a light will be displayed in the instrument cluster. (!) However, we recommend that you regularly check the brake fluid level directly on the reservoir.

⚠ **WARNING**
Danger of brake failure!
If the fluid level falls significantly within a short time or drops below the mark **MIN**, the brake system may have become leaky.
▸ Stop driving! Get the help of a specialist company.

Specification
The brake fluid must comply with standard VW 501 14. This standard complies with the requirements of the FMVSS 116 DOT4 standard.

Changing
Have the brake fluid replaced by a specialist garage.

⚠ **WARNING**
Danger of brake failure!
If the brake fluid change date is exceeded, heavy braking may cause vapour bubbles to form in the brake system.

Troubleshooting

Brake fluid level is too low
(!) illuminates
› Stop driving! Get the help of a specialist company.

Brake system and anti-lock braking system faulty
(!) illuminates together with (ABS)
› Stop driving! Get the help of a specialist company.

Brake pads worn
illuminates
› Drive to a specialist garage with appropriate careful driving.

Braking effect reduced
Moist, frozen, salted or corroded brakes can impair the braking effect.
› Clean the brakes by braking repeatedly if the traffic conditions allow it.

When the engine is stopped, the brake booster does not work
› Depress the brake pedal more forcefully.

Electric parking brake

Operation

⚠ **WARNING**
Danger of key locking!
▸ The recessed grip for the fingers in front of the button (P) must remain free.

Manual switching on



› Pull on the button (P) and hold it.

The following symbols light up.
▸ (P) in the button.
▸ (P) in the instrument cluster.

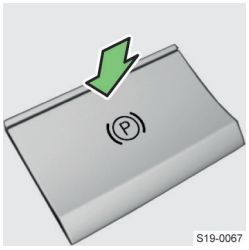
Automatic shutdown
The parking brake switches off automatically when starting up.

If there is an automatic shutdown e.g. to prevent starting on a slope, keep pulling the button (P) .

Automatic shutdown conditions

✓ Driver's door is closed, in some cases, the driver's seat belt is also fastened.

Manual shutdown



› With the ignition switched on, press the brake pedal and at the same time push the button. Ⓟ .

Troubleshooting

Parking brake error

Ⓟ illuminates

Message regarding a parking brake error

› Seek the help of a specialist garage.

Parking on a steep slope

Ⓟ flashes

Notification regarding parking position on a steep slope

› Go to another parking spot where there is less of a slope.

Noise when using the parking brake

Noise when using the parking brake is normal. This is not a defect.

The vehicle battery is discharged, the parking brake cannot be switched off

› Connect the vehicle battery to a power source, such as the battery of another vehicle.

Emergency braking when the brake system is faulty

Turn on



› Pull on the button Ⓟ and hold it.

The vehicle starts **to brake strongly** and an audible signal is emitted.

Turn off

› Let go of Ⓟ the button.

Or:

› Depress the accelerator pedal.

Auto Hold automatic holding function

Usage

Auto Hold automatically secures the vehicle from rolling away when stopped.

Functionality

⚠ **WARNING**

Risk of accident!

Auto Hold is not able to stop the vehicle under all circumstances, such as on slippery ground, or on gradients.

Secure and release the vehicle

When **stopping** , the vehicle is automatically secured by Auto Hold .. Ⓟ lights up in the instrument cluster. The brake pedal can be released.

When **starting up** , the vehicle is automatically released by Auto Hold .

Automatic locking by the parking brake

The vehicle may be secured by the parking brake under certain circumstances. Ⓟ lights up in the instrument cluster.

Functional conditions

✓ The driver's door is closed.

✓ The engine is running or is switched off by the START-STOPSystem.

✓ Auto Hold is activated.

✓ In vehicles with an automatic gearbox, the selector lever is not in **N** mode.

Settings

Activation/deactivation

› Press the Ⓐ button.

Activation displayed in the button by the illumination of the Ⓐ symbol.

ⓘ **NOTICE**

Disable Auto Hold to allow the vehicle to roll if necessary when driving through a car wash.

Driver assist systems

Braking and stabilising systems

Overview

Stabilisation control (ESC)
ESC helps to stabilize the vehicle in borderline situations (e.g. when the vehicle starts to skid). ESC brakes the individual wheels to maintain the direction of travel.

flashes - ESC is engaged

ESC Sport
ESC Sport allows for a sportier driving style.

lit up - ESC Sport is activated

Traction control (TCS)
ASR helps to stabilize the vehicle when accelerating or driving on low-grip roads. ASR reduces the drive power transmitted to the wheels when the wheels spin.

flashes - ASR is engaged

Antilock braking system (ABS)
ABS helps maintain control of the vehicle during emergency braking. An ABS intervention is noticeable by pulsating movements of the brake pedal.

Motor Slip Regulation (MSR)
MSR helps to maintain control of the vehicle in the event of a sudden reduction in speed, e.g. on icy roads. If the drive wheels lock, MSR increases the engine speed. This reduces the braking effect of the engine and the wheels can rotate freely again.

Electronic differential lock (EDS)
EDL helps to stabilize the vehicle when driving on road surfaces with different grip under the individual wheels. EDL brakes a spinning wheel and transmits power to a different drive wheel.

Electronic differential lock (XDS+)
XDL + helps to stabilize the vehicle during fast cornering by braking the inside wheel of the driven axle.

Active steering support (DSR)
In difficult situations, the DSR provides the driver with a steering recommendation in order to stabilise the vehicle.

Hill start assist
Hill Hold Control helps when starting off on uphill gradients by braking the vehicle for about 2 seconds after the brake pedal is released.

Functional conditions
✓ The gradient is at least 5%.
✓ The driver's door is closed.

Multi-Collision Brake (MCB)
MCB helps to decelerate and stabilize the vehicle after a collision with an obstacle. This reduces the risk of further collisions.

Functional conditions
✓ There has been a frontal, side and rear collision of a certain severity.
✓ The impact speed was greater than 10 km/h.
✓ The brakes, ESC and other necessary systems remained functional after the impact.
✓ The accelerator pedal is not pressed.

Trailer Stability Assist (TSA)
TSA helps to stabilize the trailer. When the trailer starts to wobble, TSA stabilizes the trailer by braking the individual vehicle wheels.

Functional conditions
✓ The trailer hitch was delivered from the factory or purchased from the ŠKODA Original accessories.
✓ The trailer is connected to the trailer socket.
✓ ASR activated.
✓ The driving speed is higher than 60 km/h.

Settings

Deactivate / activate ASR
› Press the button.

Or:

› In Infotainment, select the following menu.

MENU > > >

Or:

CAR > >

When deactivated lights up in the instrument cluster.

goes out on renewed activation.

Deactivating the ASR may be helpful in the following situations.
▸ Driving with snow chains.
▸ Driving in deep snow or on very loose ground.
▸ Starting the stuck vehicle.

Activate/deactivate ESC Sport
› Hold the button down.

Or:

› In Infotainment, select the following menu.

MENU > > >

Or:

CAR > >

When activated, lights up in the instrument cluster.

goes out when deactivated.

Troubleshooting

ESC or ASR faulty/deactivated by the system

illuminates

› Stop the engine and start again.

› If the warning light does not go out after covering a short distance, seek the help of a specialist garage.

ABS faulty

illuminates

› You may continue driving, exercising appropriate caution. Get the help of a specialist company.

Brake system and anti-lock braking system faulty

illuminates together with

› Stop driving! Get the help of a specialist company.

Front Assist

Functionality

Front Assist monitors the distance to the vehicle ahead and points out when the safety distance is exceeded. In borderline situations, it helps to avoid a collision by braking interventions.

Status display in the instrument cluster display

illuminates - safety distance too small

or illuminates - warning in case of collision

Automatic braking in the event of a collision

If there is a risk of collision, the symbol lights up as a warning or from the isolation box. If you do not respond to the warning, the vehicle will slow down.

At a driving speed of up to 30 km / h, the vehicle is braked without prior warning.

The automatic braking can be stopped by pressing the accelerator pedal or by steering.

With automatic braking, the pressure in the brake system increases. The brake pedal cannot be operated by using the pedal as normal.

⚠ **WARNING**

Risk of accident!

Front Assist does not respond to crossing or oncoming vehicles.

Operating conditions

✓ ASR activated.

✓ The driving speed is higher than 5 km/h.

Functional restriction

The function may be restricted or unavailable in the following cases.

▸ About 30 seconds after starting. Lights up in the instrument cluster .

▸ When driving through a sharp bend.

▸ During an ESC intervention.

Settings

Automatic activation

Front Assist is automatically activated when the ignition is switched on.

Activation / deactivation in the instrument cluster

› Press the button on the multifunction steering wheel.

› Select *Front Assist* .

Activation / deactivation and setting in Infotainment

In the menu: **MENU** > > >

Show system deactivation in the display of the instrument cluster

illuminates together with ⚠

or

illuminates together with ⚠

Deactivate Front Assist when handling the vehicle on a truck, a car ferry etc.

Troubleshooting

Front Assist is not available

illuminates together with ⚠

Or:

illuminates together with ⚠

› Clean the front radar sensor.

› Stop the engine and start again.

› If Front Assist is still unavailable, check the brake lights on the vehicle or on the attached trailer.

› Replace the defective bulb.

› If the brake lights are working and Front Assist is still unavailable, seek the help of a specialist garage.

There was an unfounded warning or system intervention

› Clean the front radar sensor.

› If the system is not working properly, disable Front Assist and seek the help of a specialist garage.

Pedestrian detection system

Functionality

Pedestrian detection helps to avoid a collision with crossing pedestrians using automatic brake intervention.

Status display in the instrument cluster display

or lights up - Danger of collision

Risk of collision in a speed range of 5-30 km/h
The system triggers automatic braking.

Risk of collision in a speed range of 30-60 km/h
The system warns of a collision hazard first. If the driver does not respond, the vehicle is automatically braked.

Functional conditions

✓ Front Assist activated.

✓ Driving speed between 5-60 km/h.

Speed limiter

Functionality

The speed limiter controls the maximum driving speed according to the set speed limit.

If the limit is exceeded when driving downhill, brake the vehicle with the brake pedal.

Status display in the instrument cluster display

LIM illuminates - the cruise control is activated.

When the control starts, is highlighted and the set limit is displayed.

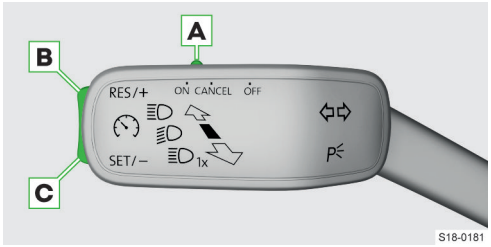
illuminates - cruise control is active
flashing - the set limit is exceeded

Operating conditions

✓ The driving speed is higher than 30 km/h.

Operation

Variant without GRA

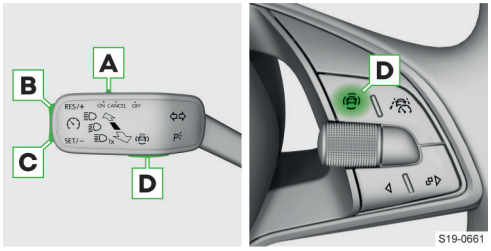


A **ON** Activate limiter (control inactive)
OFF Deactivate limiter
CANCEL Interrupt control (sprung position)

B **RES/+** Resume control[1] / Increase limit

C **SET/-** Start control at the current speed / reduce limit

Variant with cruise control



A **ON** Activate GRA (condition for the subsequent activation of the limiter)
To **activate the speed limiter**, press the D button and the menu item *Speed limit* in the instrument cluster.
OFF Deactivate limiter
CANCEL Interrupt control (sprung position)

B **RES/+** Resume control[1] / Increase limit

C **SET/-** Start control at the current speed / reduce limit

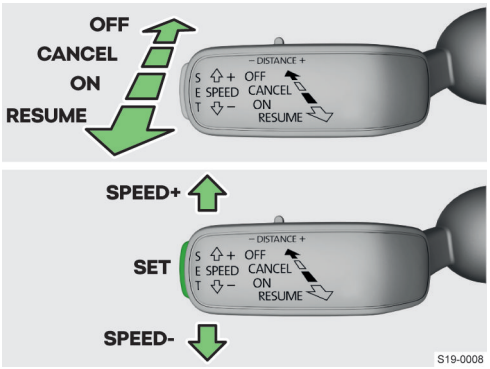
D Show menu of assistance systems - Possibility to switch between GRA and speed limiter
Switching to cruise control interrupts the control.

Adjust the speed limit using the B and C keys
Press for increments of **1 km/h**.

Hold for increments of **10 km/h**.

[1] If no speed limit is set, the current speed is set as the speed limit.

Variant with ACC



ON Activate ACC (condition for the subsequent activation of the limiter). To activate the limiter, press the button on the multifunction steering wheel and the menu item in the instrument cluster *Speed limit* in the instrument cluster.

RESUME Resume control[1] / Increase limit in increments of 1 km / h (sprung position)

CANCEL Interrupt control (sprung position)

OFF Deactivate limiter

SPEED + Increase limit in steps of 10 km/h

SPEED – Decrease limit in steps of 10 km/h

SET Start control/Reduce limit in steps of 1 km/h

Exceeding the limit

› Disengage the accelerator pedal **completely**.

Control will continue as soon as the vehicle has decelerated to below the set limit.

Troubleshooting

Speed limiter faulty

LIM illuminates

› Get the help of a specialist company.

Cruise control system

Functionality

The cruise control system (GRA) maintains the set speed without having to press the accelerator pedal.

This, however, is only possible to the extent permitted by the engine output and braking power of the vehicle.

⚠ **WARNING**

Risk of the cruise control system starting unintentionally!

▸ Deactivate cruise control after use.

Status display in the instrument cluster display

illuminated - the cruise control system is activated

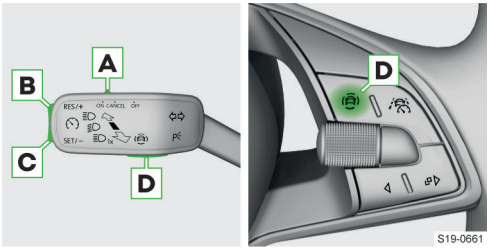
illuminated - cruise control is active

When cruise control starts, the set speed is displayed.

Operating conditions

✓ The driving speed is higher than 20 km/h.

Operation



A **ON** Activate GRA (cruise control inactive)

OFF Disable GRA

CANCEL Interrupt control (sprung position)

B **RES/+** Resume cruise control[2] / Increase speed

C **SET/-** Start control at the current speed / reduce speed

D Show menu of assistance systems - Possibility to switch between GRA and speed limiter

Accelerate temporarily

› Depress the accelerator pedal.

Releasing the accelerator pedal will cause the speed to drop again to the set speed.

Interrupt speed control

▸ After pressing the brake pedal.

▸ After an ESC intervention.

Troubleshooting

Cruise control system faulty

illuminates

› Get the help of a specialist company.

[1] If no speed limit is set, the current speed is set as the speed limit.

[2] If no speed is set, the current speed is adopted.

Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)

Functionality

Control
ACC maintains the set speed. When your vehicle approaches the vehicle in front, ACC will automatically start to maintain the set distance to this vehicle.

Maintaining the set speed and the distance will hereinafter be referred to as **Control**.

⚠ **WARNING**
ACC does not respond to stationary objects or to crossing or oncoming objects.

ⓘ ACC is intended primarily for use on motorways.

Speed range
Depending on the equipment, ACC allows a speed setting in the range of 30-160 or 30-210 km/h.

If control is started at a speed of less than 30 km/h on vehicles with an automatic transmission, the speed is automatically increased to 30 km/h or controlled according to the speed of the vehicle ahead.

Distance level
The distance to the vehicle ahead can be adjusted to five different levels.

⚠ **WARNING**
▸ Maintain a minimum distance in accordance with the country-specific legal regulations.

Automatic stopping and starting with automatic transmission
A vehicle with an automatic transmission can be decelerated to a stop using the ACC and start moving again. Control is disconnected in case of longer holding periods.

To resume control:

› Depress the accelerator pedal.

Or:

› Set the lever to position **RESUME**.

Control is interrupted when the brake pedal is depressed.

Overtaking
If your vehicle changes to the fast lane and no vehicle is detected in front, ACC accelerates up to the set speed.

Status display in the instrument cluster display
illuminates - ACC is activated

illuminates - Control is active

When the control starts, the set speed is displayed.



illuminates - ACC controls the driving speed according to the permissible speed

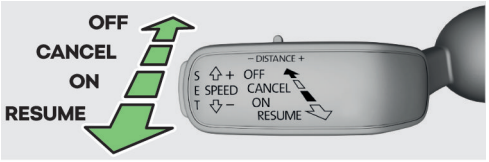

illuminates - ACC controls the driving speed according to the road

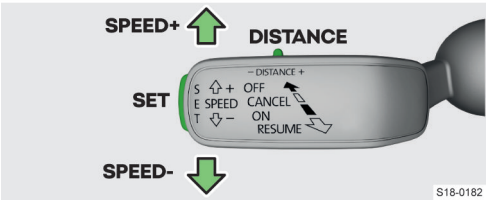

illuminates - ACC does not decelerate sufficiently

› Depress the brake pedal.

Operation

Operating with the lever





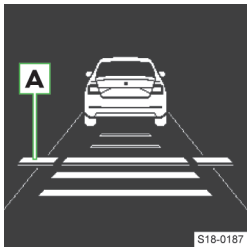
ON	Activate ACC (control inactive)
RESUME	Start or resume control/Increase speed in steps of 1 km/h (sprung position)
CANCEL	Stop control (sprung position)
OFF	Deactivate ACC
SPEED +	Increase speed in steps of 10 km/h
SPEED –	Reduce speed in steps of 10 km/h
DISTANCE	Set distance level
SET	Start control/Reduce speed in steps of 1 km/h

Starting control with the current speed
› **SET** .

Or:

› If no speed is saved, move the lever to the sprung position **RESUME**.

Set distance level
› Move the **DISTANCE** switch to the sprung position **–** or **+**.



Line A, appears on the display, indicating the change in distance.

› Use the **DISTANCE** switch to set the desired distance level.

For temporary acceleration

› Depress the accelerator pedal.

The vehicle accelerates and control is temporarily interrupted. Upon releasing the accelerator, control is resumed.

Interrupting cruise control

▸ After pressing the brake pedal.
▸ By operating the clutch pedal for a long time.
▸ After an ESC intervention.
▸ After deactivation of the ASR.

Resuming control

› If a speed is stored, move the lever to the sprung position **RESUME**.

The vehicle is controlled at the set speed. The set speed is shown in the instrument cluster display.

Function restriction

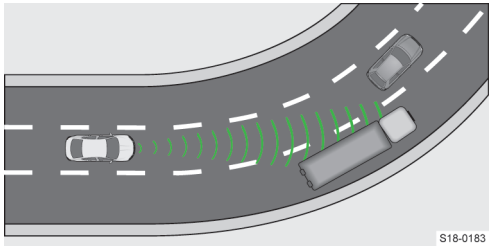
⚠ **WARNING**

▸ Be particularly attentive and alert in the following situations.

Regulation according to the vehicle in the adjacent lane

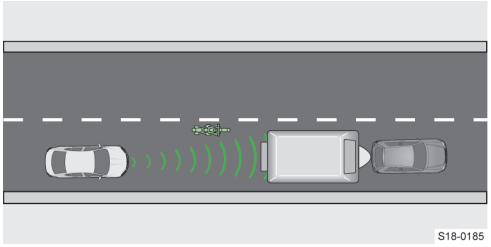
If your vehicle is moving faster than the vehicle in the next lane on the driver's side, at a speed of more than 80 km/h, this may cause your vehicle to be controlled according to that vehicle.

When cornering



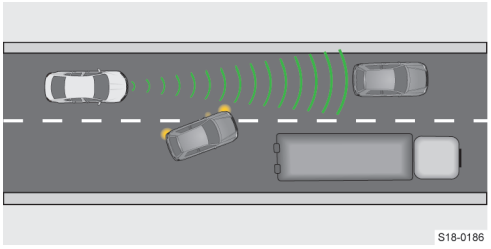
When cornering, a vehicle in the next lane may enter the detected area. Your vehicle will be controlled according to this vehicle.

Narrow or staggered vehicle



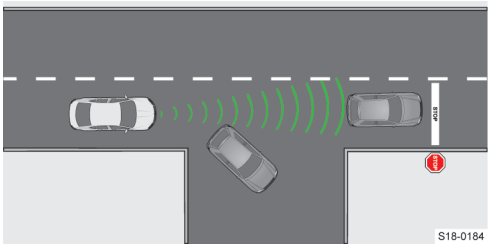
ACC detects a narrow or staggered vehicle only when it is in the area covered by the radar.

Lane change by another vehicle



A vehicle that changes to the lane a short distance away may not be recognized by the ACC in time.

Stationary vehicle



If a vehicle in front turns and there is a stationary vehicle in front of this vehicle, the ACC will not respond to the stationary vehicle.

Vehicles with special load or special bodies

A load or superstructure that protrudes outside the vehicle might not be detected by the ACC.

Settings

In Infotainment, in the following menu.

MENU > >

■

▸ *Driving programme:* - Setting the vehicle acceleration when the ACC is switched on (this setting is

made for vehicles with driving mode selection » page 171)

- *Last distance selected* Switching on/off the last distance range selected
- *Distance:* - Setting the distance to vehicles in front
- *Road layout preview* - Switching cruise control on/off according to the road profile (e.g. reducing speed before a bend)
- *Speed limit preview* - Switching the cruise control on/off according to the permissible speed

Troubleshooting

ACC not available

illuminates together with ⚠

or

illuminates together with ⚠

› Stop the engine and start again.
› If ACC is still unavailable, check the brake lights on the vehicle or on the attached trailer.
› Replace the defective bulb.
› If the brake lights are working and ACC is still unavailable, seek the help of a specialist garage.

Lane Assist

Usage

Lane Assist helps to keep the vehicle in the lane. It is based on the boundaries of a lane. These can include boundary lines, road edges or objects such as curbs and possibly traffic cones.

The system is intended primarily for use on highways.

Functionality

As the vehicle approaches a lane marking, the system executes a steering movement in the opposite direction from the lane marking. The steering intervention can be overridden manually.

No system intervention occurs when changing lane with the turn signal on.

Status display in the instrument cluster display

lights up - System is activated and ready to intervene

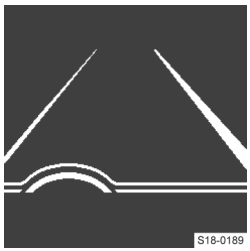
lights up - System is activated and ready to intervene

lights up - System intervenes

lights up - System intervenes

Display

Display example in the black and white display.



Lane limitation highlighted on the right: system intervenes on the right when approaching the lane marking.

The lines are highlighted in colour on the coloured display.

Warning through steering wheel vibrations

The steering wheel vibrations are triggered in the following situations.

- The vehicle crosses the boundary line without the flashing light switched on.
- The system is unable to keep the vehicle in the lane.

› Correct the steering movement in the event of vibrations.

Functional conditions

✓ The driving speed is higher than 65 km/h.
✓ The lane markings are clearly visible.

Functional restriction

The system function may be restricted in the following cases.

- The field of view of the sensor is limited by a dirty screen or an obstacle or a preceding vehicle.
- In the event of unfavourable weather conditions.
- When driving through a sharp bend.
- When driving on a steep road or in ruts.
- When the driving lane is too narrow.
- When driving through construction sites.

⚠ **WARNING**

Risk of incorrect steering intervention!
Certain objects or markings on the roadway can be incorrectly recognized as boundary lines.

- Always keep your hands on the steering wheel and be prepared to override the steering intervention.

Settings

Activation / deactivation in the instrument cluster

› Press the button on the multifunction steering wheel.
› Select *Lane Assist* .

Setting in Infotainment
In the menu: MENU > > >

Troubleshooting

Message regarding system unavailability
› Clean the windscreen in the sensor area.
› Stop the engine and restart again after a short time.
› If the system is still not available, seek the help of a specialist garage.

Travel Assist

Usage

Travel Assist helps to keep the vehicle within the lane while controlling the speed of the vehicle.

Functionality

Travel Assist uses the functions Lane Assist and ACC.

⚠ **WARNING**
Risk of accident!
▸ Always keep your hands on the steering wheel and be ready to take over the steering.
▸ The notes in the functional description of Lane Assist and ACC must be observed.

Adaptive lane guidance
This function keeps the driver within the selected position within the lane.

Status display in the instrument cluster display
 is lit up – the system is activated, cruise control and adaptive lane guidance are active

 is lit up – the system is activated, cruise control is active

 is lit up – the system is activated, adaptive lane guidance is active

Functional conditions

✓ ACC is enabled.
✓ The max. driving speed is 210 km / h.
✓ The lane markings are clearly visible.
✓ In vehicles with manual transmission, the driving speed is greater than 30 km / h.

Functional restriction

Travel Assist is only for support and does not relieve you of the responsibility for driving.

The function may be restricted or unavailable in the following cases.
▸ The field of view of the sensor is limited by a dirty screen or an obstacle or a preceding vehicle.
▸ In the event of unfavourable weather conditions.
▸ When driving through a sharp bend.
▸ When driving on a steep road or in ruts.
▸ When the driving lane is too narrow.

In addition to these restrictions, also observe the ACC restrictions » page 182 .

⚠ **WARNING**
Risk of incorrect steering intervention!
Certain objects or markings on the roadway can be incorrectly recognized as boundary lines.
▸ Always keep your hands on the steering wheel and be prepared to override the steering intervention.

Settings

Activation
› Press the button on the multifunction steering wheel.

Regulation with the current speed and adaptive lane guidance are started.

Deactivation
› Depress the brake pedal.

Or:

› Put the ACC lever into position CANCEL » page 181 .

ⓘ Additional settings are identical to ACC and Lane Assist.

Troubleshooting

Message regarding system unavailability
› The problem solving instructions for Lane Assist » page 184 and ACC » page 183 are as follows.
› If the system is still not available, seek the help of a specialist garage.

Lane change assist system Side Assist

Usage

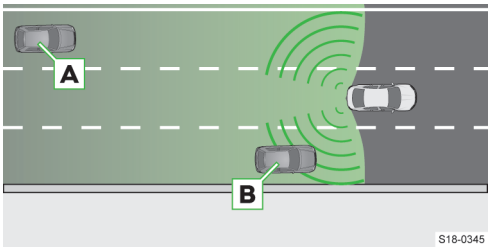
The system uses optical signals in the exterior mirror to alert the driver to vehicles that could be dangerous when changing lanes.

Functionality

The system monitors the area next to and behind the vehicle.

The system warns of an approaching vehicle through the warning light ■ in the exterior mirror cover on the side of the vehicle where the vehicle is recognized.

Driving situations in which a system warning is given



Your vehicle will be overtaken by vehicle A. The faster the vehicle A approaches, the earlier the warning light comes on.

Vehicle B is overtaken by your vehicle at a speed that is faster by max. 10 km/h. If the speed is higher during the overtaking process, no warning will be provided by the indicator light.

Indicator light

■ **illuminates** - there is another vehicle behind your vehicle

■ **flashes** - there is another vehicle behind your vehicle, and the turn signal on the same side is switched on

For vehicles with Lane Assist The indicator light flashes even if your vehicle crosses the boundary line in the direction of the approaching vehicle. The system will trigger a steering wheel vibration in this case.

For this, Lane Assist must be activated and the boundary line between the vehicles recognized.

Operating conditions

✓ The driving speed is higher than 15 km/h.
✓ No accessories are connected to the trailer socket.

Function restriction

The system cannot detect lane width. For this reason, it may, for example, draw attention to a vehicle in a distant lane in the following cases.

▸ Driving on a road with narrow lanes or on the lane edge.
▸ Driving round bends.

The system can draw attention to objects along the road, such as high guard rails or noise barriers.

In the following cases, the system does not have to issue a warning of another vehicle, or the warning may be issued incorrectly.

▸ Unfavourable weather conditions.
▸ A very fast approaching vehicle.
▸ When going round a sharp bend or a roundabout.

Settings

In the instrument cluster display
The system settings are made in the display of the instrument cluster in menu item *Assistants*.

In Infotainment
The system settings are made in the infotainment system in the following menu.

MENU > >

Troubleshooting

Message regarding system unavailability
› Stop the engine and start again.
› If the system is still not available, seek the help of a specialist garage.

Traffic sign recognition

Usage

The road sign recognition shows road signs in the display of the instrument cluster. This also indicates exceeding the speed limit.

Functionality

Displayed traffic signs
▸ Speed limits.
▸ No overtaking.
▸ Driving bans - one-way traffic.
▸ Additional characters, e.g. speed limit in wet conditions.

⚠ **WARNING**
Road signs on the road always have priority over the road signs shown on the display.

Driving with a trailer
If a trailer or other accessories are connected to the trailer socket, trailer-relevant traffic signs are also displayed.

Driving on roads with no speed limits
If you are on a road without speed limits, the traffic sign will appear on the display

Example of road sign display



Example of additional characters



Example of several traffic signs recognized at the same time.

Speed units
The speed information in the displayed traffic signs refer to the country-specific speed units.

For example, the displays ㉚ refer to 30 km / h or 30 mph, depending on the country.

Restriction

The system function may be restricted in the following cases.

- The sensor is blinded by the sun or oncoming traffic.
- The field of view of the sensor is limited by an obstacle or a preceding vehicle.
- In the event of unfavourable weather conditions.
- At high speeds.
- The road signs are hidden, damaged, or are non-standard.
- The road signs are attached to flashing neon signs.
- Non-current or unavailable map documents for the navigation.

Settings

In Infotainment, in the following menu.

MENU > ⚙ > ⚙

- *Traffic sign recognition*
  - *Include in the instrument cluster* - Activation / deactivation of the additional display in the instrument cluster display
  - *Speed warning:* - Setting a warning when the permissible speed is exceeded
  - *Warning when more than* - Increase the speed limit for when the warning of when the speed limit is broken is given
- *Trailer detection*
  - *Show trailer-relevant traffic signs* - Deactivation / activation of the display of trailer-relevant traffic signs
  - *Use for route calculation* - Activation / deactivation of trailer consideration when calculating the route in the navigation
  - *Top speed for trailers* - Set the maximum speed for trailer operation

Crew Protect Assist proactive occupant protection

Usage

The system for proactive passenger protection triggers measures to protect passengers in the vehicle in dangerous situations.

Functionality

If the system assesses the situation as critical, it triggers the following security measures.

- Open windows are closed except for a small gap.
- The sliding/tilting roof is closed.
- The front seat belts are tightened on the body.

ⓘ The system reaction depends on the selected driving mode.

Risk of a head-on crash
Applies to vehicles with the Front Assist system

The system triggers safety measures when it detects the impending risk of a head-on crash.

Risk due to inactivity on the driver's part
Applies to vehicles with the Emergency Assist system for emergency situations.

The system triggers safety measures when it detects the impending risk due to inactivity on the driver's part.

Function restriction

The function may be restricted or unavailable in the following cases.

- When deactivated in the infotainment in the menu MENU > ⚙ > ⚙.
- When ASR is deactivated or ESC Sport is activated
- When reversing.
- If there is a malfunction in the ESC, reversible seat belt or airbag system.
- If there is a malfunction or restriction of the Front Assist system.
- When there is a malfunction or restriction of the assistant for emergency situations - Emergency Assist.

Settings

Automatic activation
The system is automatically activated when the ignition is switched on.

Troubleshooting

Crew Protect Assist faulty
illuminates together with ⚠
Message concerning unavailability or functional restriction

› Seek the help of a specialist garage.

Driver Alert fatigue detection assistant

Functionality

Driver Alert evaluates the steering behaviour. If it detects fatigue in the driver, a break is recommended. In the display of the instrument cluster, the ☕ lights up.

⚠ **WARNING**
There will be no system warning during the so-called micro-sleep.

Resetting the break recommendation
The break recommendation is reset in the following cases.

- ▸ The vehicle stops and the ignition is switched off.
- ▸ The vehicle stops, the seat belt is removed and the driver's door is opened.
- ▸ The vehicle stops for more than 15 minutes.

ⓘ In some situations, the system may erroneously issue a break recommendation.

Operating conditions

✓ Driving speed between 60-200 km/h.

Settings

Activation / deactivation
In Infotainment, in the menu: MENU > > >

Emergency situation assist systemEmergency Assist

Usage

The assist systems for emergencies detect inactivity of the driver, which, for example, can be caused by a sudden loss of consciousness. The system then performs measures as safely as possible to decelerate the vehicle to a stop.

The assist systems are only available for vehicles with an automatic gearbox.

Functionality

When the assist system detects inactivity on the part of the driver

- ▸ An acoustic warning signal sounds and a message appears in the instrument cluster display.
- ▸ If, after repeated warnings, the driver does not take over the steering, the hazard warning lights are switched on and the vehicle automatically brakes.
- ▸ After the vehicle has come to a standstill, the parking brake is switched on. Depending on the equipment, an emergency call can be made.

Interruption of automatic braking

- ▸ By pressing the brake or accelerator pedal.
- ▸ By actively steering.

Functional conditions

✓ Lane Assist is activated and the boundary lines of the lane are recognized.
✓ ACC is enabled.

Hill descent assistant

Functionality

The downhill assistant helps to maintain a constant speed when driving downhill through automatic braking.

The system also works when driving in neutral or when reverse gear is engaged.

⚠ **WARNING**
Risk of accident!
For physical reasons, the system might not function properly on a slippery surface, e.g. ice, mud and similar.

Status display in the instrument cluster display
is lit up in grey – the system is activated

lights up white / green - the system intervenes

Change speed
The driving speed can be changed by pressing the brake or accelerator pedal. After releasing the pedal, the assistant maintains the current speed.

Operating conditions

✓ The engine is running.

✓ Offroad mode is enabled.
✓ The gradient is at least 10%.
✓ Neither the accelerator nor the brake pedal is pressed.
✓ The vehicle speed is a max. 30 km/h.

Settings

Automatic activation
The system is automatically activated when Off-roadmode is switched on.

Activation / Deactivation in Infotainment
The system is activated or deactivated in the following menu.

MENU > >

Or:

CAR >

Park Assist systems

Park Pilot parking aid

Functionality

If an obstacle is detected, the Infotainment will display a visible message and an audible signal will sound.

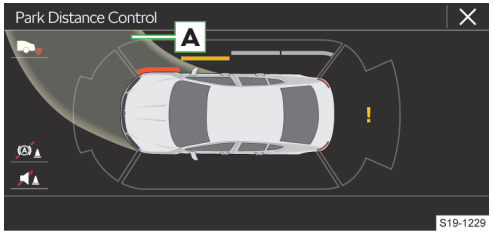
The interval between the signals becomes shorter as the clearance is reduced. At a distance of less than 30 cm from the obstacle, a continuous tone sounds.

If the driver does not respond to the warning, the system triggers automatic emergency braking at speeds below 10 km/h in order to reduce the impact.

Automatic braking can be activated and deactivated in the infotainment.

Display

The areas covered vary depending on the fitments.



A Route controlled at the current steering angle
Switch acoustic signals on / off
One-time deactivation / activation of automatic braking
Change to the rear view camera display
! System failure

■ Obstacle at a distance of less than 30 cm
■ Obstacle at a distance of over 30 cm
□ Obstacle outside the route

Functional conditions

✓ The driving speed is lower than 15 km/h.
✓ No accessories are connected to the trailer socket.

Turn on/ turn off

Turn on
› Engage reverse gear.

Or:

› Press P the button.

Automatic switch-on during forward travel
When approaching an obstacle at a speed of less than 10 km/h.

Automatic switch-on does not activate automatic braking.

Turn off
› Disengage reverse gear.

Or:

› Press P the button.

Automatic switch off
The driving speed is higher than 15 km/h.

Function restriction

The system might not warn of an obstacle e.g. in the following cases, or a warning may only be issued incorrectly.

- Unfavourable weather conditions.
- The detected obstacles are moving.
- Sensor signals are not reflected by the surface of the obstacles.
- It is a small obstacle, e.g. a stone or a pillar.

Settings

The system settings are made in the infotainment system in the following menu.

CAR > > P

Or:

MENU > > > P

Troubleshooting

After switching on, an audible signal sounds for 3 seconds and there is no obstacle near the vehicle
› Get the help of a specialist company.

After switching on, the symbol flashes in the button P
› Get the help of a specialist company.

After switching on, not all scanned areas are displayed on the Infotainment screen
› Move the vehicle forward or backward a few meters.
› If the scanned areas are still not displayed, obtain the help of a specialist garage.

Rear view camera

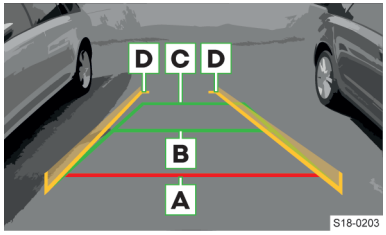
Functionality

When reversing, the area behind the vehicle is displayed in the Infotainment screen complete with orientation lines.

The camera is equipped with a cleaning system. Cleaning takes place automatically when the rear window is washed.

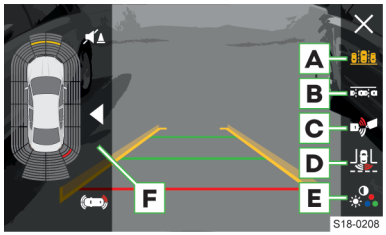
Orientation lines and functional surfaces

Orientation lines



A Distance about 40 cm
B Distance about 100 cm
C Distance about 200 cm
D The lines indicate the track, which is controlled at the current steering angle. The distance between the side lines corresponds approximately to the vehicle width including mirrors.

Function surfaces



A Mode for transverse parking
B Mode for parallel parking
C Mode for driving up to a trailer/distance monitoring
D Mode for monitoring the area behind the vehicle (wide view)
E Brightness, contrast and colour settings of the screen
F Parking Aid View
◀/▶ Switch the view on/off
Full Screen

Switching audible parking signals on/off

Operating conditions

✓ The ignition is switched on.
✓ The driving speed is lower than 15 km/h.

Operation

Switch on the system

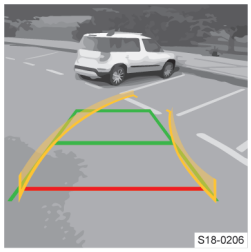
› Engage reverse gear.

Or:

› Press the P button.

When switching on, an alarm sounds and the symbol lights up in the button. P .

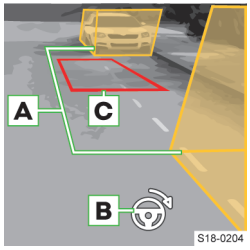
Mode for transverse parking



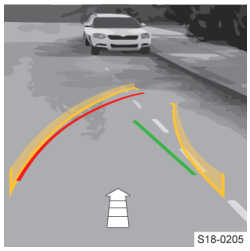
› Stop the vehicle in front of a suitable parking space.
› Reverse so that the yellow lines lead into the parking space.
› At the latest, stop when the red line touches the rear boundary (e.g. curb).

Mode for parallel parking

› In the screen, select the mode for parallel parking.
› Turn on the indicator light for the side on which you want to park.



› Stop the vehicle stop so that there are no obstructions in the gap between the auxiliary boxes A and the rear box does not extend over the side of the parking space (e.g. kerb).
› Turn the steering wheel in the recommended direction B until the red colour of the trapezoidal border C turns green.



› Hold the steering wheel in the adjusted position and reverse.
› Stop the vehicle, if the green line overlaps with the lateral boundary of the parking space (e.g. the curb) or if STOP is displayed.
› Counter-steer until the yellow lane line crosses the red line for the required lane orientation.
› Hold the steering wheel in the adjusted position and reverse.
› Stop the vehicle at a safe distance from the obstacle or when STOP is displayed.

Mode for driving up to a trailer/distance monitoring

The screen shows the area behind the vehicle in plan view.

On vehicles with a factory fitted tow-bar, this mode assists the driver when the vehicle is approaching a trailer draw bar. A line for approaching the trailer draw bar and lines for estimating distance are displayed on the screen.

For vehicles without a factory fitted tow bar, a line for monitoring the distance to obstacles is displayed on the screen at a distance of 40 cm behind the vehicle.

Mode for monitoring behind the vehicle

The area behind the vehicle is displayed on the screen.

Switch off the system

› Press the P button.

Or:

› For vehicles with an automatic gearbox, put the selector lever in the P position.

Automatic shut-off

The automatic system shut-off occurs when driving forward at a speed over 15 km/h.

Restriction

The camera image is distorted in contrast to the naked eye. The display may only be used to estimate the distance.

Some items may not be displayed properly on the screen. These include narrow columns, wire mesh fences, grids or road bumps.

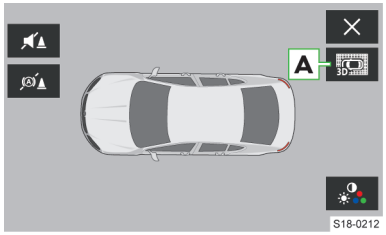
Area View environment overview

Usage

The area view assists the driver in parking and manoeuvring by displaying the vehicle area.

Overview

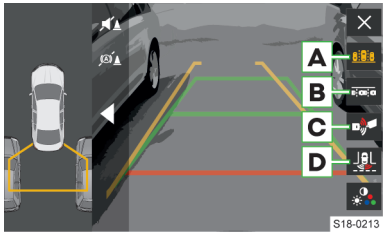
General overview



A 3D views:
- Top view
- View obliquely from above
- View from the side
- General overview

By moving your finger across the screen, you can change the viewing angle.

Camera rear view



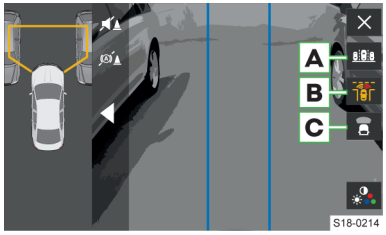
A Mode for transverse parking

B Mode for parallel parking

C Mode for driving up to a trailer/distance monitoring

D Mode for monitoring the area behind the vehicle (wide view)

Front camera view

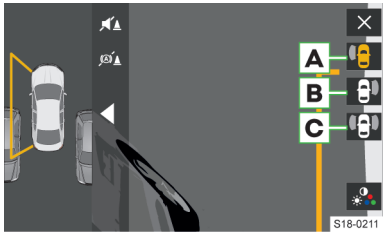


A Mode for transverse parking
The orientation lines are used for estimating distance as well as for displaying the route, which is controlled at the current steering angle.

B Mode for monitoring the area in front of the vehicle (wide view)
The area right in front of the vehicle is marked by the blue lines.

C Distance monitoring mode

Side camera view



A Left side

B Right side

C Left and right side

The yellow line is shown at a distance of about 40 cm from the vehicle.

Operating conditions

✓ The ignition is switched on.

✓ The driving speed is lower than 15 km/h.

Operation

Switching on

› Engage reverse gear.

Or:

› Press the P button.

Selecting the camera image

The respective camera image is selected by touching the screen in the Infotainment in the area next to, in front of or behind the vehicle silhouette. The selec-

ted area is highlighted on the screen by a yellow border.

Switching off
› Press the P button.

Or:

› For vehicles with an automatic gearbox, put the selector lever in the P position.

Automatic shut-off
The automatic system shut-off occurs when driving forward at a speed over 15 km/h.

Restriction

The camera image is distorted in contrast to the naked eye. The display may only be used to estimate the distance.

Some items, such as thin posts, chain link fences, grilles or uneven road surfaces may not be properly displayed.

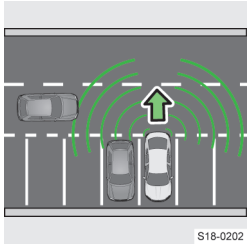
Objects directly beside the corners of the vehicle may be outside the field of view of the cameras and may therefore not be displayed on the screen.

Troubleshooting

After switching on, the symbol P flashes in the button
› Seek the help of a specialist garage.

Rear Traffic Alert

Functionality

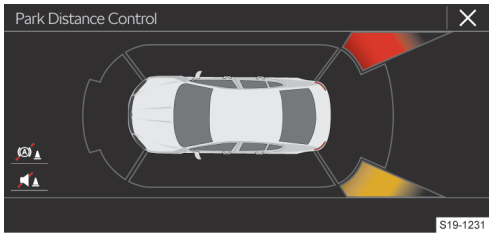

S18-0202

When reversing, the Rear Traffic Alert warns of approaching vehicles.

If the driver does not respond to the warning, the vehicle is braked automatically at a speed below 10 km/h.

⚠ **WARNING**
When the ESC/ASR system is deactivated, automatic braking is not performed.

Vehicle with Parking Aid
If an approaching vehicle is detected in the area behind your vehicle, a graphical warning is displayed in the Infotainment. At the same time, a continuous tone sounds.



■ Vehicle in the collision area - risk of collision!

■ Approaching vehicle

Vehicle without parking assist
If an approaching vehicle is detected in the area behind your vehicle, the a warning is displayed in the instrument cluster display, indicating to the driver to monitor the traffic behind. At the same time, an acoustic signal sounds.

Operating conditions

✓ No accessories are connected to the trailer socket.

Function restriction

Manoeuvre Assist's functionality may be limited in unfavourable weather conditions.

Settings

The system is activated or deactivated on the display of the instrument cluster in the menu item *Assistants*.

The system is activated or deactivated in the following menu in the Infotainment system.

CAR > > P

Or:

MENU > > > P

Troubleshooting

Message regarding system unavailability
› Stop the engine and start again.
› If the system is still not available, seek the help of a specialist garage.

Park steering assistant

Usage

Park Assist helps drivers park in parallel and perpendicular parking places and to manoeuvre out of parallel parking spaces.

What you should be mindful of

Do not use the Park Assist in the following cases.

- On unpaved or slippery surfaces.
- If snow chains or a spare wheel are mounted on the vehicle.
- If the system chooses an inappropriate parking space for parking.

Functionality

The system looks for a parking space and only takes over the steering during the parking procedure or when leaving a parking place. The driver operates the pedals and the shift lever/gear selector.

The system displays information and notes on the instrument cluster display.

If the system detects a risk of an impact, there is automatic emergency braking to reduce the consequences of the impact.

Operating conditions

✓ The driving speed is lower than 7 km/h.
✓ The ASR is activated and there is no intervention.
✓ There is no driver intervention in the automatic steering operation.
✓ No accessories are connected to the trailer socket.

Operation

Turn on/ turn off

› Press P the button.

When the system is switched on, in the button the symbol P.

Select the lane side for the parking procedure

The system automatically searches for a suitable parking space on the passenger side.

› Use the turn signal for the driver's side to find a parking space on this side of the road.

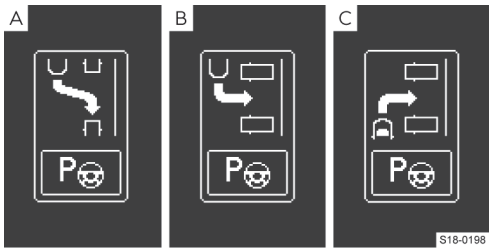
Operation while searching for a parking space

› Drive past a number of parked vehicles at a distance of 0.5–1.5 m.
› To search for a parking space across the road, drive slower than 20 km/h.
› To search for a parking space along the road, drive slower than 40 km/h.

When the symbol (km / h) is displayed in the display, reduce the driving speed. If the system finds a parking space, the display will show the recommended parking mode.

Changing the parking mode

If a suitable parking space is found, the following parking modes can be shown on the display.



A Park parallel backwards

B Park diagonally backwards

C Park diagonally forwards

The parking mode can be changed by pressing the button P .

Press the button again P to switch the system off.

› To return to the originally recommended parking mode, press the button P again.

Before the parking process

› If a suitable parking space is found, stop and drive backwards or forwards according to the arrow in the display.
› When a steering intervention message is displayed, release the steering wheel. The steering operation is taken over by the system.

Parking operation

⚠ **CAUTION**

Risk of injury!

- Do not reach between the steering wheel spokes during the parking manoeuvre.
- Only operate the pedals and the shift / selector lever.

› Observe the area around the vehicle and drive backwards or forwards in accordance with the arrow in the display.
› As soon as the symbol is displayed in the display and an acoustic signal sounds, stop the vehicle. The steering wheel is taken over accordingly. The symbol turns off.
› Travel backwards or forwards in accordance with the arrow in the display.

As soon as the parking process is completed, the corresponding message is displayed and an audible signal sounds.

The parking process can be terminated by pressing the button P at any time.

If there is parking to some extent in a suitable bay parking space, press P the button. The parking process is completed by the system.

Getting out of a parallel parking space

› Press P the button.

When the system is switched on, in the button the symbol P.

› Follow the instructions on the screen.

Automatic speed reduction

If a speed of 7 km/h is exceeded during the parking process, the system will reduce the speed.

Upon the speed being exceeded by 7 km/h a second time, the parking process is terminated.

Function restriction

If the parking space is too small, it is not possible to use the parking assistant to initiate a parking manoeuvre. A message is shown on the instrument cluster display.

Troubleshooting

Message regarding system unavailability

› Stop the engine and start again.

› If the system is still not available, seek the help of a specialist garage.

Incorrect resulting position of the vehicle in the parking space

The correct parking procedure depends on the size of the wheels. If other wheels approved by ŠKODA AUTO are fitted, have the system readjusted by a specialist garage.

Trailer assist trailer manoeuvring aid

Usage

The trailer manoeuvring aid helps the driver when reversing with a trailer.

What you should be mindful of

Use the system extremely carefully in the following cases.

▸ On unpaved or slippery surfaces.

▸ If snow chains or a spare wheel are mounted on the vehicle.

NOTICE

The system does not warn of obstacles or monitors the area behind the trailer. The driver must check themselves as to whether there are no obstacles in the area behind the trailer.

Functionality

The rear camera monitors the bending angle of the trailer drawbar. The system executes appropriate steering movements to position the trailer in the desired direction. The driver operates the pedals and the shift lever/gear selector.

The driver sets the desired direction with the external mirror knob.

Operating conditions

✓ The driving speed is lower than 5 km/h.

✓ The ASR is activated and there is no intervention.

✓ The luggage compartment lid is closed.

✓ The driver's door is closed.

✓ It is a uniaxial or biaxial trailer hitched without a steered axle.

✓ The trailer drawbar is not covered.

✓ The trailer is not veering too much.

Operation

Before switching on

› Carry out several turns or cornering with the trailer coupled.

The system determines the drawbar length in order to be able to use the maximum manoeuvring angle.

Switch on the system

› Engage reverse gear.

› Depress the brake pedal.

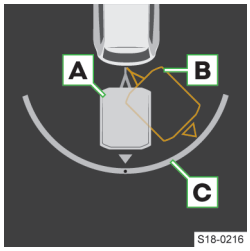
› Release the steering wheel and press the P the button.

Manoeuvring



› Tilt the exterior mirror knob to the right or left.

The setting menu is shown on the instrument cluster display.



A Current trailer position
B Target trailer position
C Manoeuvring angle

› Tilt the knob to the right or left to set the trailer's target position.
› Initiate reverse.

The setting can be corrected when reversing.

› Stop as soon as the trailer's target position is reached.

⚠ **CAUTION**
Risk of injury!
▸ Do not reach between the steering wheel spokes during the parking manoeuvre.
▸ Only operate the pedals and the shift / selector lever.

Align the trailer straight
› Tilt the knob backwards.
› Carefully reverse and drive forwards until the desired position of the trailer combination is achieved.

Turn off the system
› Press P the button.

Automatic system shutdown
If the following situations occur during the manoeuvring process, the system is switched off automatically and the brakes are applied.

▸ The button P is pressed.
▸ The driver's door is opened.
▸ The steering wheel is gripped.
▸ The driving speed is too high.
▸ The trailer veered too much.

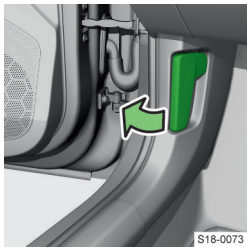
Engine, exhaust system and fuel

Bonnet

Open the engine compartment lid

Before opening
› Make sure that the wiper arms are folded against the windscreen.
› Keep everyone away from the engine compartment.

to open



› Pull the release lever underneath the dash panel.



› Release the lock.
› Lift the flap so that the gas pressure springs keep it open.

Close
› Pull the flap down.
› Close the flap with a slight push from a distance of about 20 cm.
› Check that the bonnet is closed.

ⓘ **NOTICE**
▸ Do not press an open flap.

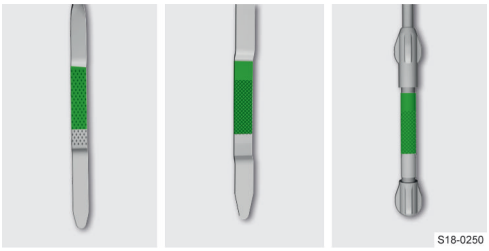
Engine oil

Checking the fill level and topping up

Test conditions
✓ The vehicle is on a horizontal surface.
✓ The parked engine is warm.

Checking the level
› Wait a few minutes for the engine oil to flow back into the oil sump.
› Remove the dipstick and wipe with a clean cloth.
› Insert the dipstick as far as it will go and pull it out again.

› Read the oil level and push the dipstick back in again.



The oil level must be within the marked range.

NOTICE

Risk of damage to the engine and the exhaust system!

- The oil level must not be outside the marked range. If it is not possible to top up the engine oil or if the oil level is above the marked range, do not continue driving. Stop the engine and seek the help of a specialist garage.
- Do not use any oil additives.

Consumption

Depending on driving style and operating conditions, the engine consumes some oil, up to 0.5 l/1000 km. Consumption may be higher over the next 5000 km.

Refilling

› Unscrew the cover of the engine oil filler opening.
› Top up the oil to the correct specification in 0.5 litre portions.
› Check the oil level.
› Screw on the cover of the engine oil filler opening.

Specification

Ask a specialist garage for the correct engine oil specification for your vehicle.

If no oil of the correct specification is available, **max. 0.5 l** of oil with the following specifications may be used until the next oil change.

- **Petrol engines**: VW 504 00, VW 508 00, ACEA C3, ACEA C5.
- **Diesel engines**: VW 507 00, VW 509 00, ACEA C3 or API CJ-4. For vehicles without a particulate filter, VW 505 01 can be optionally used.

Changing

Have the oil changed by a specialist garage.

Troubleshooting

Engine oil pressure too low

flashes, lights up at the same time ⚠

or

flashes, lights up at the same time ⚠

› Check the engine oil level.

The oil level is OK, the warning light continues to flash:

› Stop the engine and seek the help of a specialist garage.

Engine oil level too low

illuminates together with ⚠

or

illuminates together with ⚠
Message regarding required engine oil top up

› Check the engine oil level, top up with oil if required.

Engine oil level too high

illuminates together with ⚠

or

illuminates together with ⚠
Message regarding the need to reduce the engine oil level

› Check the engine oil level.

The oil level is too high:

› Drive on, exercising appropriate caution.
› Seek the help of a specialist garage.

Engine oil level sensor impaired

illuminates together with ⚠

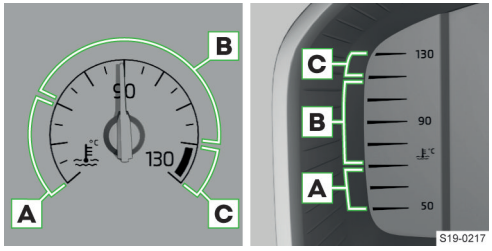
or

illuminates together with ⚠
Message regarding the engine oil sensor

› Drive on, exercising appropriate caution.
› Seek the help of a specialist garage.

Coolant

Coolant temperature display



A Cold area

› Avoid high engine speeds.

B Operating range

C High temperature range

Checking the fill level and topping up

Test conditions

✓ The vehicle is on a horizontal surface.

✓ The engine is turned off and cooled.

Checking the level



The fill level must be within the marked range.

› If the fill level is below the mark **MIN**, top up the coolant.

NOTICE

Danger of damage to the engine compartment!

▸ Do not top up the coolant above the marked area. The coolant could be forced out of the cooling system when heated.

NOTICE

There must be a small quantity of coolant in the tank.

▸ Do not add coolant when the tank is empty.

▸ Stop driving! Seek the help of a specialist garage.

Refilling

CAUTION

Risk of scalding!

The cooling system is pressurised.

▸ Do not open the cap of the coolant expansion tank while the engine is warm. Let the engine cool down.

› Place a rag on the lid of the tank and carefully unscrew the lid.

› Refill with coolant of the correct specification.

› Screw on the cap until it clicks into place.

Specification

Use the G12evo (TL 774 L) additive for refilling.

NOTICE

Risk of damage to the cooling system and the engine!

Adding coolant that does not conform to the correct specification can reduce the corrosion protection of the cooling system.

Troubleshooting

Coolant level is too low

illuminates together with ⚠

or

illuminates together with ⚠

Message concerning the required coolant check

› Check the coolant level.

The coolant level is OK:

› Check the fuse for radiator fan, replace if required » page 205, *Replacing a fuse*.

The fuse is OK, the indicator light comes on again:

› Stop driving! Seek the help of a specialist garage.

Coolant temperature too high

illuminates together with ⚠

or

illuminates together with ⚠

Report regarding the engine overheating

› Stop driving.

› Stop the engine and allow it to cool.

› Drive on after the indicator light goes out.

Engine fault

illuminates together with ⚠

or

illuminates together with ⚠

› Stop driving!

› Stop the engine and seek the help of a specialist garage.

There is no coolant of the correct specification available

› Top up with distilled or demineralised water.

› Have the correct coolant mixing ratio corrected by a specialist garage as soon as possible.

Another substance was used for topping up, other than distilled or demineralised water:

› Have the coolant changed by a specialist garage.

It is not possible to top up with a sufficient amount of coolant

› Stop driving.

› Stop the engine and seek the help of a specialist garage.

There is a loss of coolant

› Top up the coolant and seek the help of a specialist garage.

Engine electronics

Troubleshooting

Petrol engine control faulty

EPC illuminates

Driving in emergency mode is possible - a noticeable reduction in engine performance may occur.

› Drive on carefully, get the help of a specialist company.

Diesel engine control faulty

flashes

Driving in emergency mode is possible - a noticeable reduction in engine performance may occur.

› Drive on carefully, get the help of a specialist company.

Diesel preheating system faulty

illuminates, or does not illuminate after the ignition is switched on

Driving in emergency mode is possible - a noticeable reduction in engine performance may occur.

› Drive on carefully, get the help of a specialist company.

Particle filter

Troubleshooting

Clogged particle filter

illuminates together with ⚠

or

illuminates together with ⚠

› Clean the filter.

When the indicator light is on, it must be assumed that fuel consumption will be higher, engine power will be reduced, and the START-STOPP function will not be available.

Filter cleaning

Conditions for cleaning

✓ The engine is warm.

✓ For vehicles with manual transmission, observe the gear recommendation shown in the display of the instrument cluster.

Procedure for vehicles with diesel engines

› Drive at a speed of at least 60 km/h at engine speeds of at least 2000 rpm.

If the filter is cleaned successfully, the indicator light goes out .

If the indicator light does not go off within 40 minutes, the filter was not cleaned.

› Continue driving, exercising appropriate caution, and seek the help of a specialist garage.

Procedure for vehicles with petrol engines

› Drive at a speed of at least 80 km/h at engine speeds between 3000-5000 rpm.

› Release the accelerator pedal and let the vehicle roll with the gear engaged for a few seconds.

› Repeat this procedure several times.

If the filter is cleaned successfully, the indicator light goes out .

If the indicator light does not go off within 30 minutes, the filter was not cleaned.

› Continue driving, exercising appropriate caution, and seek the help of a specialist garage.

Exhaust control system

Troubleshooting

Emission control system faulty

illuminates

Driving in emergency mode is possible - a noticeable reduction in engine performance may occur.

› Continue driving, exercising appropriate caution, and seek the help of a specialist garage.

Fuel filter

Troubleshooting

Water in the diesel fuel filter

illuminates together with ⚠

or

illuminates together with ⚠

› Continue driving, exercising appropriate caution, and seek the help of a specialist garage.

Radiator blinds

Usage

The radiator blinds reduce polluting emissions and CO_2 emissions and save fuel.

Troubleshooting

If the display of the instrument cluster shows a message relating to the function restriction of the blinds, the maximum speed of the vehicle is limited to 160 km/h.

The cause may be ice or snow in the area around the blinds. After the ice or snow has thawed, the blinds are functional again.

› Should the impairment not be due to ice or snow, assistance from a specialist should be sought.

Fuel filler flap

Opening the fuel filler flap



› Press the flap and open it.

AdBlue

Regulations

Only use AdBlue® that complies with the ISO 22241-1 standard. Do not mix any additives to the AdBlue®.

AdBlue® is a registered trademark of VDA and is also known as AUS 32 (Aqueous Urea Solution) or DEF (Diesel Exhaust Fluid).

Functionality

To reduce pollutant emissions, a diesel exhaust fluid - AdBlue® is automatically injected into the exhaust system.

AdBlue® freezes at temperatures below -11 C. The system function is ensured by automatic heating.

Checking the fill level and topping up

Checking the level

The AdBlue® level is monitored automatically.

The range with the existing AdBlue® tank fill level as well as the indication of the minimum and maximum AdBlue® top up quantity can be viewed in the driving data in the instrument cluster display under the menu item .

If the range with the existing AdBlue® tank fill level drops to 0 km, it is not possible to start the engine.

› If possible, top up AdBlue® to the maximum level.

Requirements for refilling

✓ Vehicle unlocked.
✓ Independent car heating switched off.
✓ Ignition off.
✓ Park the vehicle on a horizontal surface.

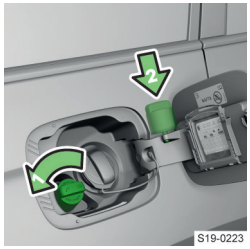
Methods of refilling

▸ With the fuel nozzle at the gas station.
▸ With the refill bottle or from the canister.
▸ At a specialist garage.

For refilling using refill bottles or canisters, we recommend using refill bottles and canisters from ŠKODA original parts. The refill bottles are equipped with overfill protective function.

Refilling

› Open the tank flap.



› Turn the tank cap in the direction of the arrow and remove it.
› Place the tank cap on the tank flap.
› Refill AdBlue®.

The AdBlue® tank is full when the fuel nozzle switches off or as soon as no more AdBlue® flows out of the refill bottle. Do not continue refilling.

› Place the tank cap on the filler neck and turn it in the opposite direction to the arrow until it clicks into place.
› Close the tank flap and click into place.
› Before starting the engine, leave the ignition on for 30 seconds to allow the system to detect the refilling.

NOTICE

Risk of damage to the system for injecting AdBlue® in to the exhaust system!

▸ Do not exceed the maximum refill quantity specified in the instrument cluster.
▸ The service life of AdBlue® is 4 years. If the tank contents are not consumed within this period, have them replaced by a specialist garage. When topping up, do not use AdBlue® that is past its expiry date.

Troubleshooting

AdBlue® level too low

or or lights up

› Top up AdBlue®.

AdBlue® system impaired.

or or lights up

› Seek the help of a specialist garage.

Technical data

The AdBlue® tank capacity is approximately 18 litres.

Petrol

What you should be mindful of

⚠ **DANGER**
Risk of death!
Fuel and fuel vapours are explosive.

ⓘ **NOTICE**
Risk of serious damage to the engine and the exhaust system!
▸ **Never run the fuel tank completely empty!**

If you would like to operate your vehicle in a country other than that intended for vehicle operation, please contact a ŠKODA Partner. They will let you know whether a suitable fuel is offered in the associated country.

Regulations

Standards
Petrol must comply with European standard EN 228 (in Russia, GOST 32513-2013).

Only use **unleaded petrol** that contains **max** 10% bioethanol **(E10)**.

ⓘ We recommend using petrol with additives, which is available at petrol stations at the petrol pumps.

Octane number
Use the petrol with the octane number prescribed for your vehicle.

Petrol with an octane number that is one **higher** than the one prescribed for your vehicle can be used without restriction.

ⓘ **NOTICE**
Risk of damage to the engine and the exhaust system!
▸ If petrol is used that has an octane number that is lower than the one prescribed for your vehicle, then drive at moderate speeds with minimal engine stress.
▸ Fill up with the prescribed octane number as soon as possible.
▸ Do not use petrol with an octane number that **lower** than **91**!

Prescribed petrol 95 / min. 92 or 93 RON / ROZ
We recommend using**95** RON petrol.

92 or. **93** RON petrol may be used as an option (low power loss, slightly increased fuel consumption).

In an **emergency**, **91** RON petrol may be used (low power loss, slightly increased fuel consumption).

Prescribed petrol min. 95 RON / ROZ
Use min. **95** petrol.

Using higher octane petrol than 95 RON may result in improved performance and lower fuel consumption.

In an **emergency 91**. **92** or. **93** RON may be used (low power loss, slightly increased fuel consumption).

Prescribed petrol 98 / (95) RON / ROZ
We recommend using**98** RON petrol.

95 RON petrol may be used as an option (low power loss, slightly increased fuel consumption).

In an **emergency 91**. **92** or. **93** RON may be used (low power loss, slightly increased fuel consumption).

Additive

ⓘ **NOTICE**
Risk of damage to the engine and the exhaust system!
▸ Do not use petrol containing metal-based additives, e.g. manganese, iron, lead, and do not use, for example, any LRP petrol – lead replacement petrol.
▸ Do not add any additional additives to the petrol in accordance with EN 228.
▸ If petrol is not used in accordance with EN 228, we recommend obtaining information from a specialist company regarding the possible use of petrol additives approved by ŠKODA AUTO.

Requirements for refuelling

✓ Vehicle unlocked.
✓ Independent car heating switched off.
✓ Ignition off.

Refilling

› Open the tank flap.



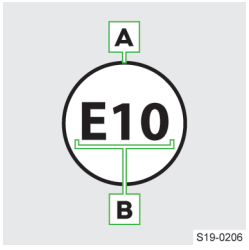
› Turn the tank cap in the direction of the arrow and remove it.
› Place the tank cap on the tank flap.
› Insert the fuel nozzle into the fuel filler neck up to the stop and refuel.
› Do not continue refuelling after the fuel nozzle switches off.
› Remove the fuel nozzle and put it back on the petrol pump.
› Place the fuel cap on the fuel filler neck and turn it in the opposite direction to the arrow until it clicks into place.
› Close the tank flap and click into place.

Troubleshooting

If fuel other than unleaded petrol has been refuelled according to the standards applicable to your vehicle
› Do not start the engine or switch on the ignition.
› Seek the help of a specialist garage.

Technical data

The fuel prescribed for your vehicle is indicated on a sticker on the inside of the fuel filler flap.



A Unleaded petrol
B Organic share as a percentage

The fuel tank has a capacity of about 58 litres in vehicles with front-wheel drive, including a reserve of approx. 7 litres.

illuminates - the fuel level has reached the reserve area.

Diesel

What you should be mindful of

⚠ **DANGER**
Risk of death!
Fuel and fuel vapours are explosive.

NOTICE
Risk of serious damage to the engine and the exhaust system!
▸ **Never run the fuel tank completely empty!**

If you would like to operate your vehicle in a country other than that intended for vehicle operation, please contact a ŠKODA Partner. They will let you know whether a suitable fuel is offered in the associated country.

Regulations

Standards
The diesel fuel must comply with European standard EN 590 (in Russia, GOST 32511-2013 or GOST R 55475-2013).

Only use a **diesel fuel** that contains a **maximum** of 7 % biodiesel **(B7)**.

We recommend using diesel with additives, which is available at petrol stations at the petrol pumps.

Operation in different weather conditions
Only use a diesel fuel according to the current or the expected weather conditions.

Additive

NOTICE
Risk of damage to the engine and the exhaust system!
▸ Do not use RME biofuel, even as a diesel fuel additive.
▸ Do not add any additional additives to the diesel in accordance with EN 590.
▸ If diesel is not used in accordance with EN 590, we recommend obtaining information from a specialist company regarding the possible use of diesel additives approved by ŠKODA AUTO.

Requirements for refuelling

✓ Vehicle unlocked.
✓ Independent car heating switched off.
✓ Ignition off.

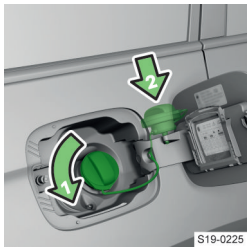
Refill

Misfuel protection
The fuel filler neck of diesel vehicles can be equipped with misfuelling protection.

In some countries, the diameter of the diesel fuel nozzle may be the same as that of the gasoline nozzle. Before driving in these countries, have the protection device removed by a specialist garage.

Refill

› Open the fuel filler flap.



› Turn and remove the filler cap in the direction of the arrow.
› Place the tank cap on the tank flap.
› Insert the fuel nozzle into the fuel filler neck up to the stop and refuel.
› Do not continue refuelling after the fuel nozzle switches off.
› Remove the nozzle and put it back in the gas pump.
› Put the filler cap on the fuel filler neck and turn it against the direction of the arrow until it clicks into place.
› Close the tank flap and snap it into place.

Troubleshooting

If a fuel other than diesel fuel has been refuelled to the appropriate standard

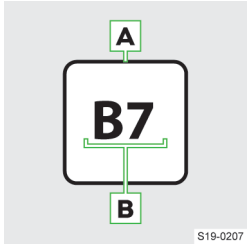
› Do not start the engine or switch on the ignition.
› Seek the help of a specialist garage.

The diesel fuel nozzle cannot be correctly inserted into the filler neck

› If the fuel nozzle cannot be properly inserted into the fuel filler neck, move it slightly back and forth when inserting it.

Technical data

The fuel prescribed for your vehicle is indicated on a sticker on the inside of the fuel filler flap.



A Diesel
B Organic share as a percentage

The fuel tank has a capacity of about 58 litres in vehicles with front-wheel drive, including a reserve of approx. 7 litres.

illuminates - the fuel level has reached the reserve area.

Vehicle battery and fuses

Vehicle battery

What you should be mindful of

Explanation of the warning symbols on the vehicle battery

Wear safety goggles!

Battery acid is highly caustic. Wear gloves and eye protection.

Keep fire, sparks, and open flames away from the vehicle battery! Do not smoke!

When charging the vehicle battery, a highly explosive gas mixture is produced.

Keep children away from the vehicle battery.

Refer to the manual!

Functionality - Discharge protection

Possible causes of battery discharge

▸ Frequent short journeys.
▸ Low temperatures.
▸ Vehicle stationary for a long period of time.

System-related discharge protection measures

▸ Increasing the engine idling speed.
▸ Switching off certain consumers or limiting their power.

Measures to be taken when vehicle stationary for more than three weeks

› Disconnect the ⊖ terminal of the vehicle battery.

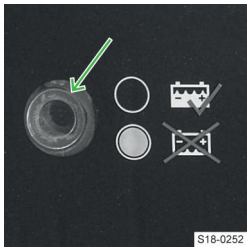
Checking and charging the vehicle battery

Checking the condition

The battery condition is checked by a specialist garage during servicing.

Checking the acid level

Applies to a vehicle battery with an acid level indicator.



› Tap on the indicator before testing, to clear air bubbles.

▸ Black colour - the acid level is OK.

▸ Colourless or pale yellow colour - acid level is too low, the battery must be replaced.

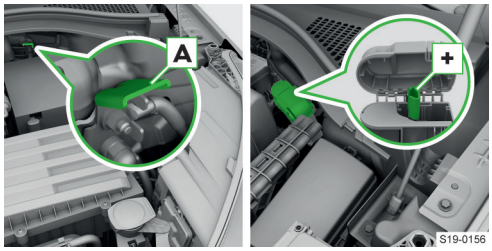
Requirements for the charging process

✓ Ignition off.

✓ Power consumers switched off.

Vehicle battery charging process

To charge the vehicle battery fully, set a charging current of max. of 0.1 times the battery capacity.



A Earth point

+ ⊕ Pole for charging process in vehicles with a vehicle battery in the luggage compartment

› Connect the ⊕ terminal of the charger to the ⊕ terminal of the vehicle battery.

For vehicles with a vehicle battery in the luggage compartment, the ⊕-pole for charging is in the engine compartment.

› Connect the ⊖terminal of the charger to the earth point A.

› Plug the charger's power cable into the socket and switch on the device.

› After charging, switch off the charger and unplug the power cable from the socket.

› Disconnect the charger terminals from the vehicle battery.

⚠ WARNING

Risk of explosion!

▸ During charging, hydrogen is released. An explosion can also be caused by sparks, for example, when disconnecting or loosening the cable connector.

▸ Never charge a frozen or thawed vehicle battery.

▸ Do not carry out the so-called quick charging of the vehicle battery yourself, but have it carried out by a specialist garage.

ⓘ NOTICE

A flat vehicle battery can freeze easily!

Troubleshooting

Vehicle battery does not charge while the engine is running

 or illuminates

› Seek the help of a specialist garage.

Engine fault

 or illuminates

› Stop driving!

› Stop the engine and seek the help of a specialist garage.

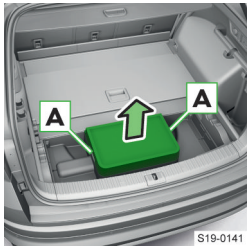
Disconnecting, connecting and replacing

⚠ CAUTION

Risk of fire!

▸ Do not mix up the connection cables.

Depending on the trim level, the vehicle battery is located in the engine compartment or in the boot.



Access to the vehicle battery in the boot

› Remove the battery cover using the handles A.

Disconnect

› Close the electric boot lid, the tilting/sliding sunroof, all windows and the electric sun blind.

› Switch off the ignition and any connected power consumers.

› Disconnect the ⊖ terminal and then the ⊕ terminal.

Connect

› Connect the ⊕ terminal and then the ⊖ terminal.

After switching on ignition, the indicator lights illuminate briefly. from the isolation box.

› If, after a short distance, one of the above-mentioned indicator lights does not go out, seek the help of a specialist garage.

Commission these functions after disconnecting and connecting the vehicle battery

▸ Clock setting » page 65.

▸ Window operation » page 31.

▸ Operation of the tilting/sliding sunroof » page 32.
▸ Sun blind » page 33.

Changing
The new vehicle battery must have the same parameters as the original battery. Have the replacement carried out by a specialist garage.

Using the jump-starting cable

What you should be mindful of

⚠ **WARNING**
Risk of explosion and chemical burns!
▸ Do not jump start with the battery of another vehicle under the following conditions.
  ▸ The discharged vehicle battery is frozen. A discharged vehicle battery can freeze at temperatures just below 0°C.
  ▸ The battery acid level is too low » page 202.

Use jump leads with a sufficient cross section and insulated terminal clamps.

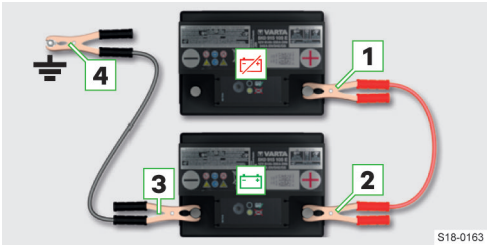
The rated voltage of both batteries must be 12V. The capacity (in Ah) of the charging battery must not be significantly lower than the capacity of the discharged battery.

Jump-starting with the battery of another vehicle

⚠ **WARNING**
Risk of injury and danger of vehicle damage!
▸ Lay the jump start cables so that they cannot become caught by rotating parts in the engine compartment.

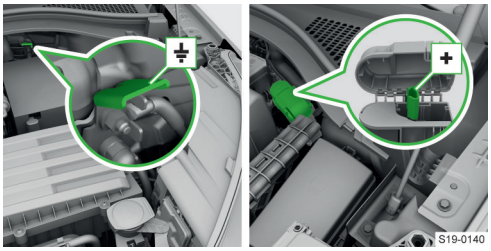
ⓘ **NOTICE**
Short circuit!
▸ The non-insulated parts of the terminal clamps must not touch each other.
▸ The cable connected to the positive pole of the battery must not come into contact with electrically conductive vehicle parts.
▸ The vehicles must not touch each other.

Connect the jump start cable
› Connect the terminal clamps of the jump start cables in the order shown in the legend.



- discharged battery / - current-emitting battery

1 ⊕-pole of the discharged battery
2 ⊕-pole of the current-emitting battery
3 ⊖-pole of the current-emitting battery
4 ⏚ Earth point of the engine to be started



Engine compartment: Earth point and ⊕ pole on vehicles with the battery in the boot

Start the engine
› Start the engine of the current-giving vehicle and let it idle.
› Start the engine of the vehicle with the flat battery.
› If the engine of the vehicle with the flat battery does not start within 10 seconds, repeat the starting procedure after approximately 30 seconds.

Disconnecting the cable
› Disconnect the cables in the reverse order from connection.

Fuses

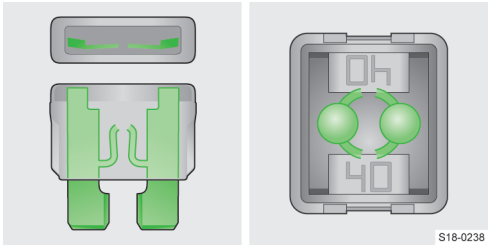
What you should be mindful of

NOTICE
Fire hazard and risk of damage to the electrical system.

- Do not repair fuses or replace them with stronger fuses.
- Replace the defective fuse with a new fuse with the same amperage.
- We recommend using replacement fuses from the ŠKODA Genuine Accessories range. These guarantee reliable and safe consumer protection.
- If a newly inserted fuse blows again, seek the help of a specialist garage.

One fuse may belong to several consumers. One consumer may have several fuses.

Functionality

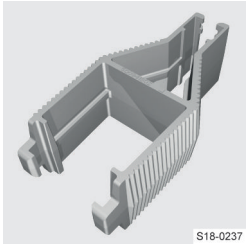


Blown fuse

Conditions for replacing a fuse

✓ Ignition off.
✓ Driver door opened.
✓ All consumers switched off.

Replacing a fuse



› Replace the fuse with the clamp located on the inside of the fuse box cover in the engine compartment.
› Use the appropriate end of the clamp according to the fuse dimensions.

Fuses in the dash panel

Overview

Access to fuses – left-hand drive
› Open the storage compartment on the driver's side.

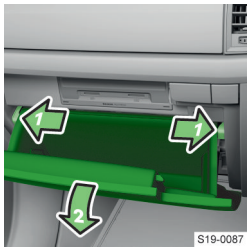


› Press the button and open the tray.
› Change the fuse.
› Close the storage compartment.

Access to fuses – right-hand drive
› Open the storage compartment on the passenger's side.

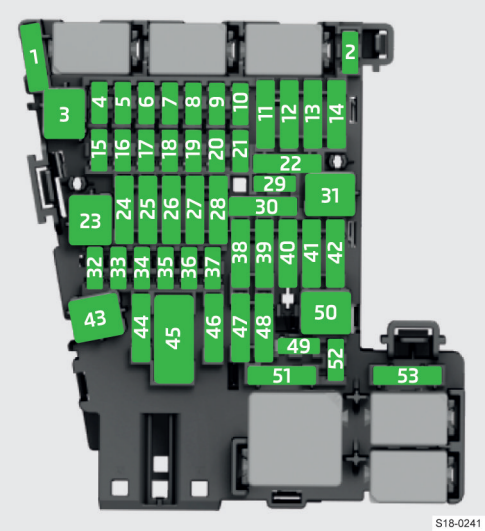


› Loosen the brake rod of the storage compartment.



› Press the locking lugs, the storage compartment folds down.
› Change the fuse.
› Insert and lock the brake rod.
› Close the storage compartment.

Fuses overview



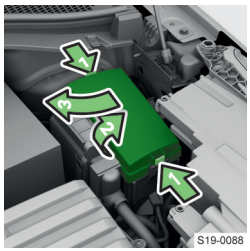
Fuse number	Consumer
1	SCR (AdBlue®)
2	Heated steering wheel
3	Not used
4	Alarm system
5	Databus
6	Automatic gearbox
7	Air conditioning, Auxiliary heating receiver, Front and rear window heating, Tyre pressure monitor
8	Light switch, rain sensor, parking brake, ambient lighting, sensor of the alarm system, headlight
9	Control lever under the steering wheel
10	Infotainment screen
11	Light - left side
12	Infotainment
13	Belt tensioner - left side
14	Air blower for air conditioning, heating
15	Electric steering lock
16	USB ports, diagnostic connector, Phonebox
17	Instrument cluster, emergency call
18	Rear view camera, Area View
19	KESSY (keyless locking and starting system)
20	SCR (AdBlue®), Vacuum pump for brake system
21	All-wheel drive
22	Tow hitch
23	Panorama sliding/tilting roof
24	Light - right side

Fuse number	Consumer
25	Central locking - (front and rear door left), power windows - (left), left external mirror (heating, folding function, mirror surface adjustment)
26	Heating of the front seats
27	Interior lighting
28	Tow hitch
29	USB charging function - rear and on the interior mirror
30	Shock absorber setting
31	Opening the boot lid
32	Parking aid, Park Assist, "blind spot" detection
33	Airbags
34	Air conditioning, reversing light switch, Interior mirror with automatic dimming, heated seats, parking brake, light switches, bar with buttons
35	Diagnostic connection, camera, radar sensor
36	LED headlight - right
37	LED headlight - left
38	Tow hitch
39	Central locking - (front and rear door right), power windows - (right), right external mirror - (heating, folding function, mirror surface adjustment)
40	12-volt power outlets
41	Belt tensioner - right side
42	Luggage compartment cover lock, headlight washers, front and rear window washer
43	Music amplifier
44	Tow hitch
45	Electrical operation of driver's seat
46	230 volt socket
47	Rear window wiper
48	Sport sound generator
49	Engine starting, clutch pedal switch
50	Not used
51	Seat heating - rear
52	Seat ventilation at the front
53	Heated rear window

Fuses in the engine compartment

Overview

Access to the fuses



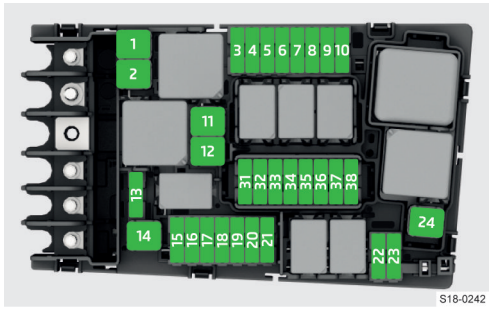
› Simultaneously press the locking buttons on the fuse box cover and open up the cover.
› Remove the cover.
› Change the fuse.
› Fit the cover and click into place.

NOTICE

Danger of water entering the fuse box.

▸ Fit the cover correctly and click into place securely.

Fuses overview



Fuse number	Consumer
1	ESC, parking brake
2	ESC
3	Engine control system
4	Radiator fan, fuel pressure regulator, electric auxiliary heater, glow plug system, air flow sensor, brake system, oil level and oil temperature sensor, ignition, engine components
5	Engine components
6	Brake sensor
7	Coolant pump, exhaust flap, crankcase ventilation, engine components
8	Lambda probe, NOx sensor and particle sensor
9	Coolant pump, ignition, engine components
10	Fuel pump
11	Additional electrical heating, heated windscreen
12	Electric auxiliary heater
13	Oil pump for automatic gearbox

Fuse number	Consumer
14	Not used
15	Horn
16	Ignition
17	ESC, engine control unit, main relay coil
18	Databus, battery data module
19	Front windscreen wiper (only some vehicles)
20	Not used
21	Automatic transmission (only some vehicles)
22	Engine control system
23	Starter
24	Electric auxiliary heater
31	Not used
32	Not used
33	Automatic transmission (only some vehicles)
34	Not used
35	Front windscreen wiper (only some vehicles)
36	Not used
37	Auxiliary heating
38	Not used

Wheels

Tyres and rims

What you should be mindful of

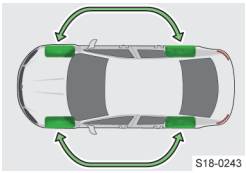
NOTICE

- Protect tyres from contact with lubricants and fuel.
- Always store wheels and tyres in a cool, dry and dark place. Tyres without rims should be kept upright.
- Alloy rims can be damaged by grit.

Causes of uneven tyre wear

- Improper tyre pressure.
- Driving style (e.g. fast cornering, rapid acceleration and braking).
- Wheel position error.
- Incorrect wheel balancing.

Wheel changes


S18-0243

For uniform wear on all tyres, we recommend that you change the wheels every 10,000 km according to the schedule.

Instructions for tyre mounting

› Comply with the specified direction of travel, otherwise the driving characteristics may be impaired. The direction of rotation of the tyres is marked by arrows on the wall of the tyre.

› Always replace tyres by axle.

additional information

Only use approved radial tyres of the same type, size (rolling circumference) and the same tread pattern on one axle.

Approved tyre sizes are specified in the technical vehicle documentation and in the declaration of conformity (in the so-called COCDocument).

The declaration of conformity can be obtained from a ŠKODA partner (applies to some countries and some model variants).

Wheels 8.5Jx20 ET38 with 255/40 R 20 tyres

A vehicle equipped with these wheels and tyres at the factory also has appropriate widening elements for the use of these wheels and tyres.

If you would like to have these wheels and tyres fitted later, ask a ŠKODA partner about the possible retrofitting of the vehicle with the widening elements for the use of these wheels and tyres.

Overview of tyre labelling

Explanation of the tire labelling

e.g. 235/55 R 18 100 V

235 Tyre width in mm
55 Height/width ratio in %
R Code letter for the type of tyre - Radial
18 Rim diameter in inches
100 Load index
V Speed icon

Load index

The load index indicates the maximum permissible load for each individual tyre.

95 690 kg
96 710 kg
97 730 kg
98 750 kg
99 775 kg
100 800 kg
101 825 kg
102 850 kg
103 875 kg

Speed icon

The speed icon indicates the maximum permissible vehicle speed with tires fitted in the respective category.

M 130 km/h
T 190 km/h
U 200 km/h
H 210 km/h
V 240 km/h
W 270 km/h
Y 300 km/h

WARNING

- Do not exceed the maximum permissible load and speed for the mounted tires.

Tire wear indicator



S18-0245

There are wear indicators in the profile base of the tires, which indicate the permissible minimum profile depth.

Markings on the tire flanks using the letters TWI or other symbols, e.g. △, mark the position of the wear indicators.

A tyre is to be regarded as worn out when this wear indicator is flush with the tread.

The tread depth can be measured with a tread depth gauge on the ice scraper. The ice scraper is located on the inside of the fuel filler flap.

⚠ **WARNING**
Risk of accident!
▸ Do not use worn tires.

Tire manufacturing date
The date of manufacture is indicated on the tyre sidewall.

For example, DOT ... 10 19 means that the tire was manufactured in the 10th week of 2019.

⚠ **WARNING**
Risk of accident!
▸ Do not use tires that are older than 6 years.

Troubleshooting

Help with a flat tire
▸ Spare wheel and emergency spare wheel » page 210.
▸ Changing the wheel and raising the vehicle » page 210.
▸ Breakdown set » page 212.

Change in tire pressure
illuminates
› Stop the vehicle.
› Check the tires and tire pressures.

Show tires with changed pressure
In the following menu, select the menu item for displaying the tyre condition.

CAR >

Or:

MENU > >

All-season or winter tires

Usage

All-season or winter tyres improve handling in winter weather conditions. They are characterised by 'M+S' and a mountaintop and snowflake symbol .

What you should be mindful of

For the best possible handling, use tyres on all four wheels with a minimum tread depth of 4 mm.

Change winter tyres to summer tyres at the appropriate time. Summer tyres have better driving and braking characteristics on snow- and ice-free roads and at temperatures above 7 °C.

Conditions of use

If all-season or winter tires are used that have a lower speed category than the actual maximum speed of the vehicle, then proceed as follows.

› Set the speed limit in the Infotainment according to the category of the fitted tires.
› In the driver's field of view, affix a warning label with the maximum value of the speed category intended for the tyres fitted (applies only to certain countries).

Settings

The speed limit setting for tyres is set in the Infotainment in the following menu item.

CAR > >

Or:

MENU > > >

Snow chains

Usage

The snow chains improve driving in wintry road conditions.

⚠ **WARNING**
Risk of accident as well as tyre damage!
▸ Do not use chains on routes that are free from snow and ice.

What you should be mindful of

› Before fitting the snow chains, remove the full wheel trims.
› Only mount the snow chains on the front wheels.

Technical specifications

Permitted rim / tire combinations for the installation of the snow chains.

Rim size	Wheel size
6.5Jx17 ET38	215/65 R17

Only use snow chains with links and locks no larger than 13 mm.

SEAL tyres

Usage

The SEAL tyres have increased resistance to air leakage when punctured.

When replacing SEAL tyres with standard tires, the vehicle must have one of the following pieces of equipment.

- Spare or emergency spare wheel with corresponding tool for replacing it.
- Breakdown kit.

Spare and emergency spare wheel

Overview

Spare wheel

- The dimensions of a full-featured spare wheel correspond to the dimensions of the wheels installed on the vehicle.
- A temporary spare wheel is provided with a warning label on the rim. This wheel is intended to enable you to reach the nearest specialist garage.

Inflate a space saver wheel with the maximum prescribed pressure.

Emergency wheel

A warning label is displayed on the rim of the temporary spare wheel. This wheel is intended to enable you to reach the nearest specialist garage.

An emergency wheel is significantly narrower than the wheels mounted ex-factory.

Remove and insert the wheel on vehicles without a sound system

The spare wheel or emergency wheel is mounted in a recess under the floor covering or the variable loading floor in the boot.

Remove



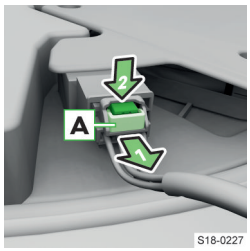
› Loosen the retaining belt and take out the box with the tool kit.
› Unscrew the lock nut.
› Take out the wheel.

Insertion

› Insert the wheel into the wheel well with the outside facing downwards.
› Pull the fixing band through the opposite holes in the wheel rim.
› Screw in the locknut until it stops.
› Replace the box with the tool kit into the wheel and secure it with the tape.

Remove the wheel on vehicles with sound system and replace

Remove



› Partially pull out the securing tab A.
› Press the safety button and pull out the plug.



› Unscrew the lock nut.
› Take out the bass speaker.
› Take out the wheel.

Insertion

› Insert the wheel into the wheel well with the outside facing downwards.
› Insert the bass speaker.
› Screw in the locknut until it stops.
› Insert the plug into the bass speaker.
› Secure securing tab A.

Changing the wheel and raising the vehicle

What you should be mindful of

Before changing

› Park the vehicle safely and secure it against rolling away.
› Turn off the engine.
› Let all passengers get out. During the wheel change they should not stand on the road, e.g. behind the crash barriers.
› Close all doors, the luggage compartment and engine compartment flaps.
› If a trailer is coupled, uncouple it.

Lift the vehicle

⚠ WARNING
Always secure the jack's base plate against slipping!
- ▸ Place a large, firm surface under the jack on a loose surface.
- ▸ Place a non-slip pad, e.g. a rubber doormat, under the jack on a smooth surface.
- ▸ Always lift the vehicle with the doors closed.
- ▸ Do not insert any body parts under the raised vehicle.
- ▸ Do not start the engine of the lifted vehicle.

ⓘ NOTICE
Risk of vehicle damage!
- ▸ Make sure that the jack is attached correctly to the bridge of the sill.

After having been changed
- › Check the tyre pressure on the mounted wheel and adjust if necessary.
- › For vehicles with a tire control display, save the tire pressure values in the system.
- › Have the tightening torque of the wheel bolts of the mounted tyres checked with a torque wrench as soon as possible.

The specified tightening torque is 140 Nm.

Drive carefully until the tightening torque is checked.

Replace the damaged tyre. It is not recommended to repair the tyre.

⚠ WARNING
Risk of accident!
- ▸ Too low a tightening torque may cause the wheel to disengage while driving.
- ▸ Excessive tightening torque can damage the thread and deform the rim.

⚠ WARNING
Risk of accident!
- ▸ Do not grease or lubricate screws.
- ▸ Do not use corroded or damaged screws.

Changing the wheel and raising the vehicle

Loosen screws
- › If the vehicle has covers over the wheel bolts or wheel trims, remove them.

⚠ WARNING
- ▸ If you step on the key end when loosening the screw, hold on to the vehicle for better stability.

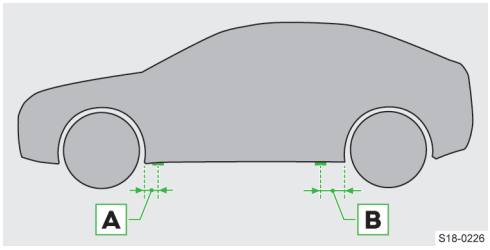


Some vehicles may have anti-theft wheel bolts that protect the wheels from theft.
- › Insert the upper section on the anti-theft wheel bolt until it stops.



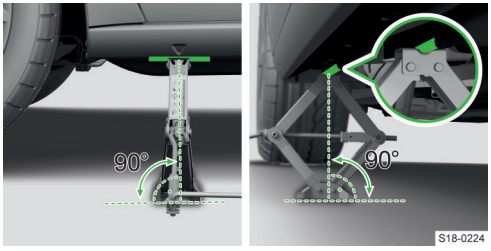
- › Place the key on the wheel bolt or on the attachment piece.
- › Turn the screw a maximum of half a turn so that the wheel does not come loose and fall off.

Pickups for the jack



A 12 cm
B 24 cm

Position the jack and raise the vehicle
Use the jack from the tool kit.



- › Position the jack at the jacking point closest to the wheel to be replaced.
- › Insert the crank into the mount on the car jack.
- › Support the base plate of the jack with its full area resting on level ground and ensure that the jack is located in a vertical position at the jacking point.
- › Use the crank to raise the jack until its claw encloses the bar.

› Continue to lift the vehicle until the wheel is just off the floor.

Changing a wheel

› Unscrew the screws and place them on a clean surface.
› Remove the wheel carefully.
› Attach the wheel.
› Slightly screw in the screws.
› Lower the vehicle.

NOTICE

▸ Applies to factory installed or from ŠKODA Original wheel covers supplied: Install the anti-theft wheel bolt according to the position marked on the back of the wheel cover.

Tighten screws

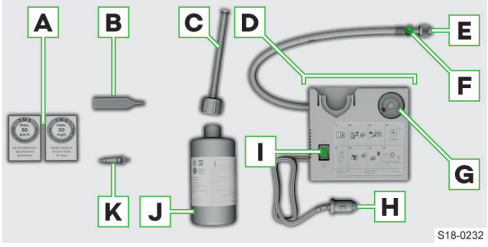
› Tighten the opposite wheel bolts including the anti-theft wheel bolt one after the other.
› Reinstall the cover caps of the wheel bolts or the full wheel covers.

I Keep the label with the code number of the anti-theft wheel bolts. Based on this, a replacement attachment piece can be purchased from the ŠKODA Original parts.

Breakdown kit

Content overview

The kit is located in a box under the floor covering in the luggage compartment.



A Stickers with the speed indication
B Valve insert driver
C Filling hose with sealing plug
D Air compressor (the layout of the controls may be different depending on the type of air compressor)
E Tyre inflation hose
F Button for pressure reduction
G Pressure display
H 12 volt cable connector
I ON and OFF switch
J Tyre inflation bottle
K Replacement valve core

The declaration of conformity is included with the air compressor or the log folder.

Conditions of use

Performing a repair with the breakdown kit not at all intended to replace a permanent repair on the tyre.

The purpose of the repair is to get you to the nearest specialist garage.

Change the tyre repaired by the breakdown kit as soon as possible.

Before using the kit

› Park the vehicle safely and secure it against rolling away.
› Turn off the engine.
› Let all passengers get out. During the wheel repair they should not stand on the road, e.g. behind the crash barriers.
› Close all doors as well as the luggage compartment and engine compartment flaps.
› If a trailer is coupled, uncouple it.

After using the kit

If a tyre pressure of 2.0 bar cannot be achieved, the tyre is too damaged and cannot be sealed with the puncture set.

› Stop driving. Get the help of a specialist company.

Once a tyre pressure of 2.0–2.5 bar is achieved, continue the journey at a maximum speed of 80 km/h (50 mph).

› Avoid full throttle accelerations, hard braking and fast cornering.

Instructions for driving with repaired tires

› The pressure of the repaired tyre must be checked after driving for 10 minutes.
› If the tyre pressure is 1.3 bar and less, do not continue! Get the help of a specialist company.
› If the tyre pressure is higher than 1.3 bar, correct the pressure to the correct value of at least 2 bar and continue driving.

NOTICE

Danger of compressor damage!

▸ After the maximum running time of the air compressor has expired, let it cool down for a few minutes.

⚠ **WARNING**
Risk of burns!
The tire inflation hose and air compressor can become hot when inflated.
▸ Allow the air compressor and hose to cool down for a few minutes.

Usage restrictions

Do not use the kit in the following cases.

▸ The rim is damaged.
▸ The outdoor temperature is below the minimum temperature indicated in the manual of the tyre filling bottle.
▸ Tyre punctures are greater than 4 mm.
▸ There is damage to the tyre wall.
▸ The expiry date stated on the tyre inflation bottle has expired.

Self-help

Seal the tyres

› Unscrew the valve cap from the damaged tyre.
› Unscrew the valve core with the valve insert and place it on a clean surface.
› Shake the tyre inflation bottle back and forth with sealant.
› Screw the inflation hose onto the tyre inflater bottle. The film on the closure is pierced automatically.
› Remove the plug from the inflation hose and push it fully onto the tyre valve.
› Hold the bottle with the bottom facing upwards and fill all of the sealing agent into the tyre.
› Remove the filler plug from the valve.
› Screw in the valve insert.

Inflate tyres

› Fit the tyre inflation hose of the air compressor to the tyre valve.
› Secure the vehicle with the parking brake.
› Start the engine.
› Plug the connector into the 12 volt socket .
› Turn on the air compressor.
› Once a tyre pressure of 2.0-2.5 bar is reached, turn off the air compressor.

Observe the maximum running time of the air compressor according to the directions of the repair kit manufacturer.

› If an air pressure of 2.0 - 2.5 bar has not been reached, remove the tyre inflation hose from the valve.
› Drive approx. 10 metres forwards or backwards to allow the sealing agent to distribute in the tyre.
› Replace the tire inflation hose on the valve and repeat the inflation procedure.

Tyre pressure

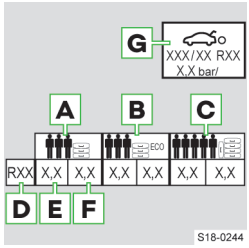
What you should be mindful of

ⓘ **NOTICE**
▸ Always adjust the tyre pressure to the load.
▸ Check the pressure in all tyres at least once a month and before each longer ride.
▸ Check the pressure when the tyres are cold. If necessary, do not reduce the elevated pressure when the tyres are warm.
▸ After each change in tyre pressure, save the new values in the tyre control display.

⚠ **WARNING**
Risk of an accident!
▸ If tyre pressure loss is very quick, try to stop the vehicle carefully without heavy steering or heavy braking.

Stickers with prescribed tire pressure values

The sticker with prescribed tyre pressures is located on the inside of the fuel filler flap.



A Filling pressure for half a load
B Filling pressure for environmentally friendly operation (slightly lower fuel consumption and pollutant emissions)
C Filling pressure for full loading
D Tire diameter in inches
This information only serves as information for the prescribed tyre pressure. This is not a list of approved tire sizes for your vehicle. These are in the vehicle's technical documentation, as well as in the declaration of conformity (in the so-called COCDocument).
E Tyre pressure reading for the front axle tyres
F Tyre pressure reading for the rear axle tyres
G Prescribed tyre pressure value for the emergency wheel

Tyre pressure monitor

Functionality

The tyre pressure monitoring indicator indicates a change in tyre pressure.

Warning when pressure changes

illuminates

› Stop the vehicle.

› Check the tyres and tyre pressures.

Show tyres with changed pressure

› In the following menu, select the menu item for displaying the tyre condition.

MENU > >

Or:

CAR >

Functional restriction

The system is unable to provide a warning in the event of a very rapid tyre pressure loss, e.g. sudden puncture.

The system function may be restricted in the following cases.

- Uneven loading of the wheels, e.g. with a trailer attached.
- Sports driving style.
- Driving on unpaved roads.
- Fitted snow chains.

Save tyre pressure values

Save tyre pressure values in Infotainment

› Inflate the tyres to the stipulated inflation pressure.

› Turn on the ignition.

› In the following menu, select the menu item for displaying the vehicle condition.

CAR >

Or:

MENU > >

› Using the functional areas ◀ ▶ select the menu for the tyre control display.

› Tap the functional surface SET .

› Then follow the instructions on the screen.

Save the tyre pressure values in the following cases.

- Change in tyre pressure.
- Change of one or more wheels.
- Change of position of a wheel on the vehicle.
- Always after covering a distance of 10,000 km or once a year.

Troubleshooting

Tyre pressure display faulty

flashes for about 1 minute and stays on

› Stop the vehicle, switch off the ignition and start the engine.

If the symbol flashes again after starting the engine, there is a system fault.

› Continue driving, exercising appropriate caution, and seek the help of a specialist garage.

Tyre pressure monitoring system

Functionality

The system measures tyre pressure while driving using sensors on the wheels.

For correct system function, you must select the tyre type as well as the load condition of the vehicle in the Infotainment.

After switching on the ignition, the last measured tyre pressure values are displayed. This display will be updated at the start of the journey.

Warning when changing the tyre pressure

illuminates

› Stop the vehicle.

› Check the tyres and tyre pressures.

Overview

Display in the instrument cluster

› Select *Vehicle*

Display in Infotainment

› In the following menu, select the menu item for displaying the vehicle condition.

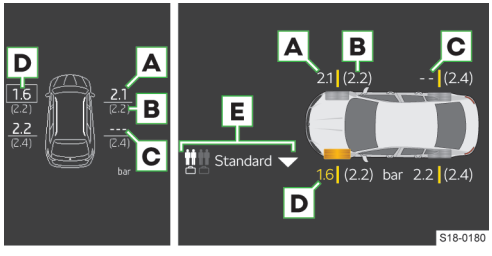
CAR >

Or:

MENU > >

› Using the functional surfaces ◀ ▶ choose the Tyre Pressure Monitoring menu item.

Instrument cluster / Infotainment



- Tyre pressure
- B Recommended tyre pressure
- C Tyre pressure not available
- D Tyre pressure too low
- E Setting the vehicle's load condition

The tyres warm up while driving and there is an increase in pressure. This is completely normal, it is not a defect. If the system shows an increase in pressure while driving, do not reduce the pressure.

Settings

Tyre type
Select the tyre type in the following menu.

CAR > >

Or:

MENU > > >

Vehicle loading condition
› In the following menu, select the menu item for displaying the vehicle condition.

CAR >

Or:

MENU > >

› Using the functional surfaces ◀ ▶ choose the *Tyre Pressure Monitoring* menu item.
› Tap the ▽ functional area and select the vehicle load condition.

Troubleshooting

Functional restriction / system fault

flashing

› Stop the engine and start again.

› If the indicator light flashes again after the engine starts, there is a problem with the system.
› Continue driving, exercising appropriate caution, and seek the help of a specialist garage.

Wheel bolt cover caps

Pull off and install cover caps



Pull off
› Push the pull-off clamp onto the cover cap up to the stop.
› Pull off the cover cap.

Install
› Push the cover cap onto the wheel bolt to the stop.

Full wheel frame

Pull off panel and install

Applies to factory installed covers or covers delivered with ŠKODA original accessories.

Remove
› Hang the bracket for pulling off the wheel covers at the edge of one of the openings in the cover.
› Push the wheel wrench through the bracket, support it on the tire and pull off the cover.

Install
› Place the cover on the intended valve section on the rim.

If an anti-theft wheel bolt is used, it must be in the position marked on the cover.

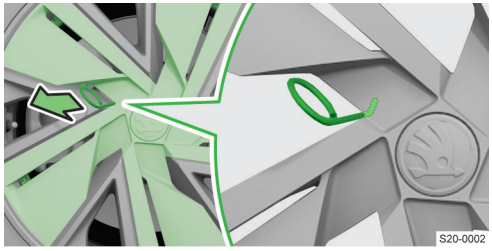
› Press the trim, starting at the valve, into the rim on both sides until it engages around the entire circumference.

NOTICE
▸ Use hand pressure, do not hit the wheel cover.

Pull off and install the aero cover

Applies to factory installed covers or covers delivered with ŠKODA original accessories.

Remove



› Hook the bracket to remove the wheel covers at the edge of the panel as close to the centre as possible.
› Loosen the centre of the wheel cover by pulling and pull off the cover.

To make removal easier, it is possible to insert the wheel wrench through the bracket loop and pull on the two key ends.

Install

› If an anti-theft wheel bolt is used, it must be in the position marked on the cover.
› Place the cover on the wheel rim and press in the individual spokes of the cover one after the other until they engage completely.
› Press in the centre of the wheel cover until it clicks into place.

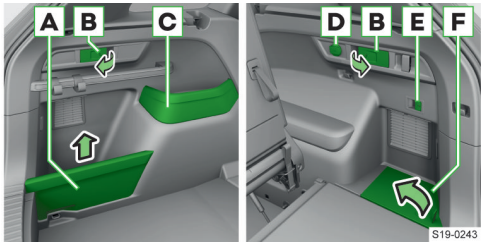
NOTICE

▸ Use hand pressure, do not hit the wheel cover.

Storage space and interior equipment

Equipment in the boot

Overview



A *Applicable to the five-seater variant of the vehicle.*
Removable partition of the storage compartment
Max. load 2.5 kg

B Lever for folding forward the rear seat backrests

C Fixed storage compartment
Max. load 1.5 kg

D 12 voltsocket

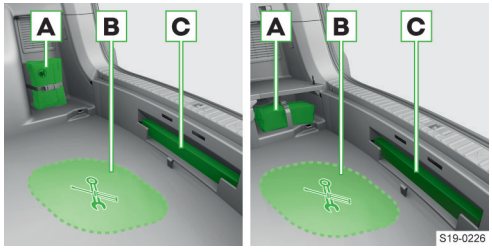
E Hitch switch

F *Applicable to the seven-seater variant of the vehicle.*
Side compartment
› Pull at the loop to open.

Emergency equipment

Overview of the emergency equipment

Emergency equipment in the luggage compartment



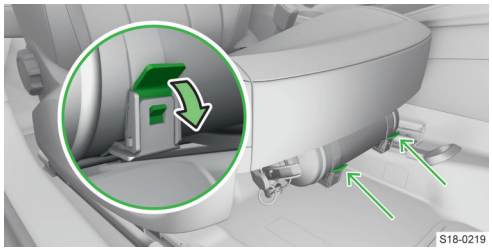
A Positioning of the first aid kit (depending on equipment)

B Tool kit

C Placing of the warning triangle

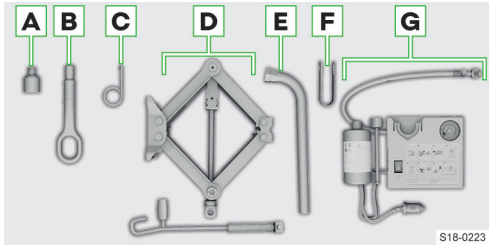
Storage compartment for the reflective vest
The storage compartment for the reflective vest is in the storage compartment of the front door.

Fire extinguisher under the passenger seat



Tool kit

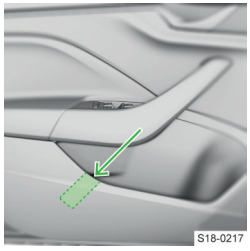
Depending on the equipment, not all of the following components may be included in the tool kit.



- A Attachment for the anti-theft wheel bolts
- B Towing lug
- C Bracket for removing the full wheel covers
- D Jack with sign and crank
- E Wheel wrench
- F Removal clip for the wheel bolt cover caps
- G Breakdown set

The declaration of conformity is enclosed with the jack or the logbook folder.

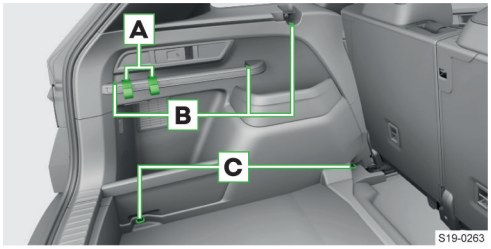
Storage compartment for the reflective vest



Fasteners in the boot

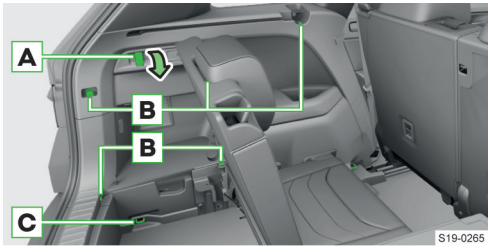
Overview

Five-seater variant of the vehicle



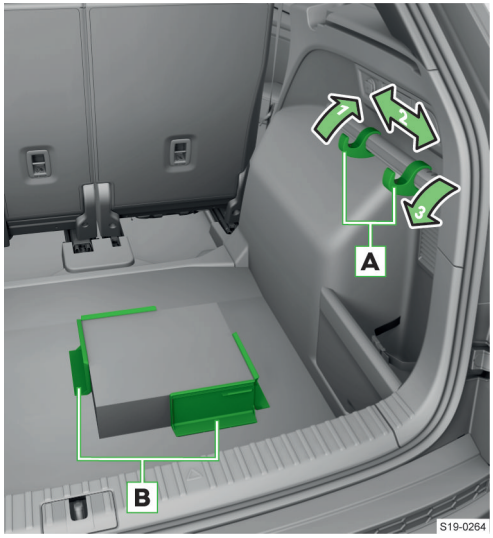
- A Pocket hook
  Max. load 7.5 kg
- B Hook for fastening the fastening nets
- C Lashing eyes for securing the load and the fastening nets
  Max. load 350 kg

Seven-seater variant of the vehicle



- A Pocket hook
  Max. load 7.5 kg
- B Hook for fastening the fastening nets
- C Lashing eye for securing the load and the fastening nets
  Max. load 350 kg

Other fastening elements



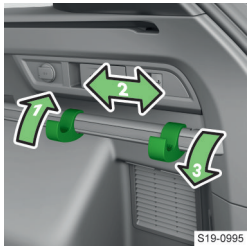
A Sliding bag hook
Max. load 7.5 kg

B Cargoelements
Max. load 8 kg

A storage compartment for the cargo elements is located under the floor covering in the boot.

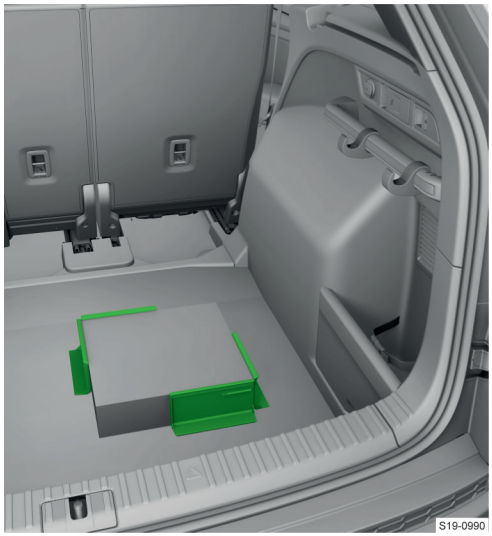
› Fold up the cargo element and fasten it to the floor covering in the boot.

Bag hooks in the boot



The maximum load for the hook is 7.5 kg.

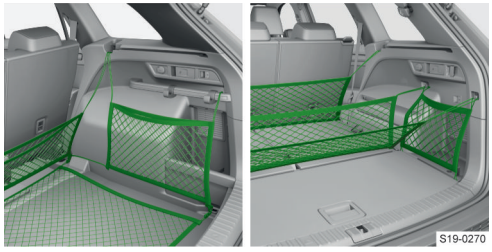
Cargoelements in the luggage compartment



The maximum load of the Cargoelements is 8 kg.

Fastening nets

Overview

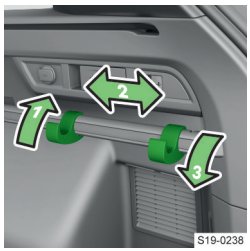


The maximum load of the respective fastening nets is 1.5 kg.

Sliding hooks

Settings

Moving



1 Releasing
2 Moving
3 Applying

Removal



› Move the hook into the front area of the fixing strip and remove it.

Inserting hook



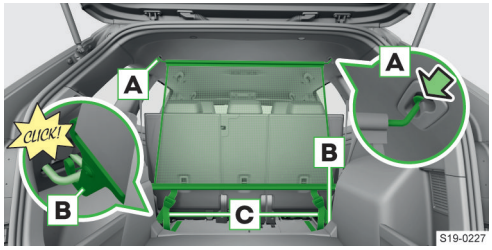
› Press the hook against the front part of the fixing strip and fold it down to the stop.

The maximum load for the hook is 7.5 kg.

Net partition

Fasten the net partition

Fasten at the back



› Before installing the net partition behind the second row of seats, fold forward the third row of seats.
› Insert the crossbar into the mount A on one side and push it forwards.
› Attach the bar to the other side in the same way.
› Snap the carabiners B into the lashing eyes.
› Pull the straps firmly at the free ends C.

Fasten at the front

The procedure is analogous to the process behind.

The lashing eyes for the carabiners are located under the central body pillars.

Loosen

Loosening takes place in the reverse order to fastening.

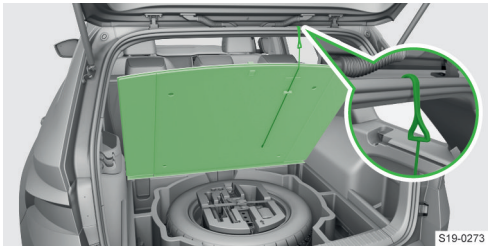
Double-sided floor covering

Overview

Depending on the equipment, the vehicle may be equipped with a double-sided floor covering in the luggage compartment. One side is made of fabric, the other side is washable.

Floor covering in the boot

Folding up and folding down



NOTICE
Before closing the boot lid, remove the hook from the frame.

Roll-up luggage compartment cover

Operation

Extending



› Pull out the cover on the handle until it clicks into place.

Retracting



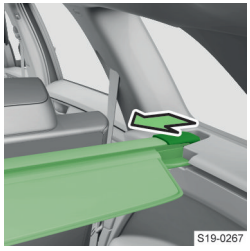
› Press the cover in the handle area.

The cover rolls up.

It is possible that the cover rolls more slowly during winter weather conditions.

Removing and inserting

Take out and insert the roll-up cover



› Press the end of the crossbar and take out or insert the cover.

Stowing the cover under the variable loading floor
Applicable to the seven-seater variant of the vehicle.



› Open the side pockets.



› Insert the cover into the recesses of the side panel.
› Close the side pockets.
› Restore the original position of the variable loading floor.

Variable loading floor in the boot

Setting the position

The maximum load of the rear plate in the upper position is 25 kg. The maximum load of both plates in the upper position is 75 kg in total.

Five-seater version of the vehicle – the variable loading floor consists of two parts.

Seven-seater verison of the vehicle – the variable loading floor consists of one part.

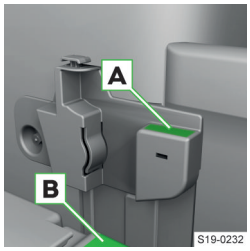
For vehicles with a two-part variable loading floor, one side of the rear panel may be made of fabric and the other side may be washable.

In vehicles with an emergency wheel or vehicle battery under the floor covering in the luggage compartment, the variable loading floor cannot be adjusted to the lower position.
For vehicles with an emergency wheel under the floor covering in the luggage compartment, the maximum load on the floor covering is 5 kg.

Set the variable loading floor to the upper or lower position
The front and rear plates of the variable load floor can be adjusted to the upper or lower position. The handling of the two panels is identical.



› Lift the variable load floor and pull it towards you.

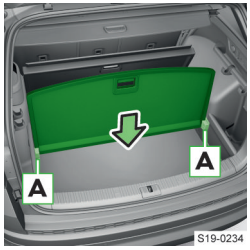


› To set in the upper position, place the variable loading floor in the front area on area A.
› To set in the lower position, place the variable loading floor in the front area on space B.



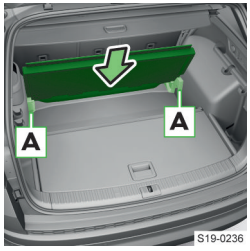
› Press the variable loading floor forward and hang up.

Dividing the boot



› Lift the rear plate of the variable loading floor.
› Push the plate into the grooves A.

Fold the front plate up and back

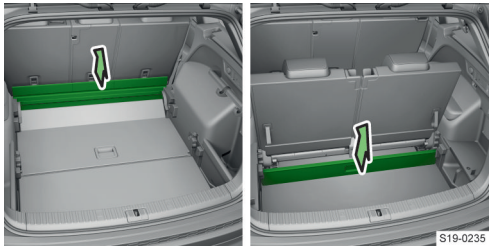


› Lift the plate. The plate is inserted into the grooves A.
› Folding it back takes place in reverse order.

Partition in the boot

Removing and inserting

Remove the partition



Vehicle version: Five-seater/seven-seater

The partition prevents the cargo from slipping.

› Remove the partition upwards.

Through-loading bag

Insert and lock

In the bag, a max. of 2 pairs of skis with poles can be transported.

› Fold the middle rear seat back forward. Where applicable, fold down the third row of seats.
› Push the skis and poles with the tips backwards into the bag and secure the bag.

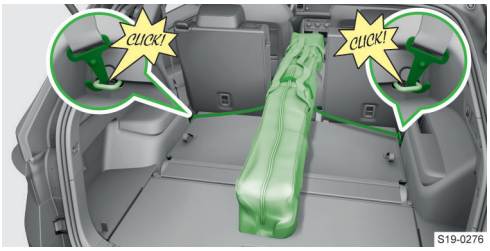
  The bag can be shortened in relation to the length of the ski by means of a band attached inside the bag.
› Place the empty bag in the opening in such a way that the end of the bag with the zip is in the boot.



› Tighten the drawstring around the skis on the base of the binding.



› Insert the belt tongue into the buckle of the middle seat.



› Snap the carabiners onto the lashing eyes on both sides.

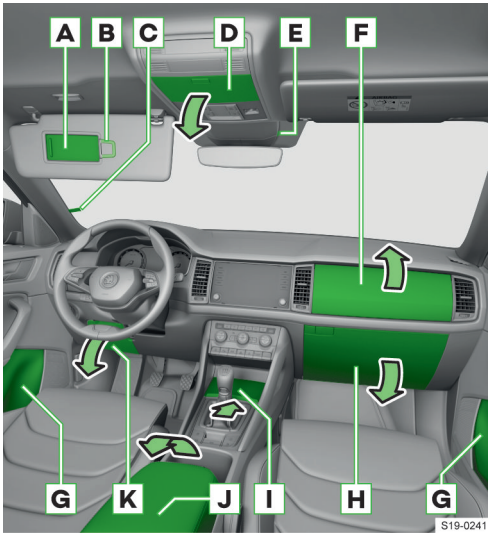
To better access the eyelets, the backrests of the second row of seats can be folded forward.

› Tighten the straps.

⚠ WARNING
The maximum weight of the transported skis is 10 kg.

Overview of passenger compartment

Overview of practical equipment in the front



A Make-up mirror

B Note holder

C Parking ticket holder

D Spectacle compartment
Max. load 0.25 kg
› Press the button to open.

E USB connection
The USBconnection is for charging only.

F Upper storage compartment
Max. load 1.5 kg
› Press the left button on the lid of the lower storage compartment to open it.

G Storage compartment
▸ Bottle holder with a capacity of max. 1.5 l
▸ Storage compartment for the waste container
▸ Storage compartment for the reflective vest

H Bottom storage compartment with air outlet nozzle
In the compartment, there is a card holder, a pen holder and a storage compartment for coins.
Max. load 3 kg
› Press the button on the right to open.
› To open the air outlet nozzle, turn the regulator to position ☼ .

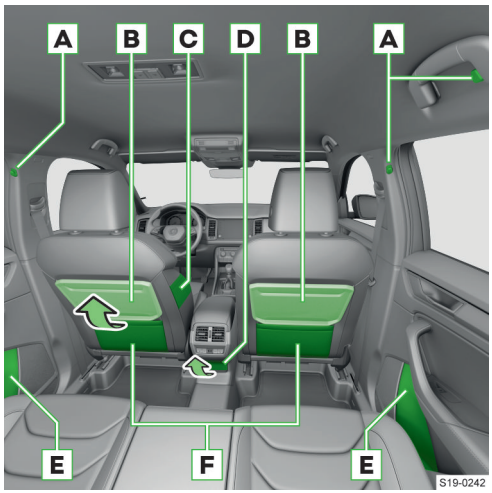
I Storage compartment
In the compartment is a 12-volt socket and USBconnections.
The USBconnections can be used for charging and data transfer.
› Pull the strip to open the compartment.

J Opening and adjustable armrest with storage compartment
› Raise the armrest to open the compartment.

K Storage compartment
Max. load 0.5 kg
A card holder is located in the compartment.
› Pull on the handle to open.

NOTICE
▸ Do not leave any heat-sensitive objects in the spectacle compartment D.

Overview of practical equipment at the rear



A Coat hooks
Max. load 2 kg

B Folding table

C Storage bag

D Depending on the equipment:
- ▸ 12 volt socket
- ▸ 230 volt socket

E Storage compartment
- ▸ Bottle holder with a capacity of max. 1.5 l
- ▸ Storage compartment for the reflective vest

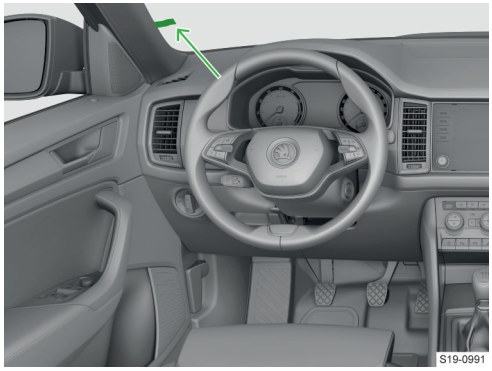
F Storage bag

⚠ **WARNING**
- ▸ Only hang light clothing on the hooks. Do not leave heavy and sharp objects in the pockets of the clothing.
- ▸ Do not use hangers to hang clothes.

Storage pockets on the inner sides of the front seats



Parking ticket holder



Bottle tray in the storage compartment of the front door



The tray is suitable for bottles with a max. size of 1.5 l.

Bottle tray in the storage compartment of the rear door



The tray is suitable for bottles with a max. size of 1.5 l.

USBConnections



The USBconnection can only be used for charging.

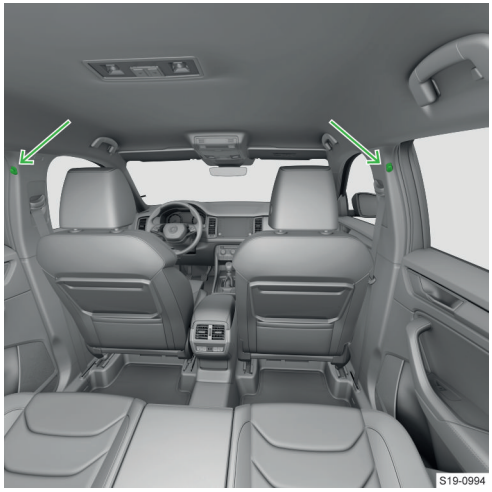


The USBconnections can be used for charging and data transfer.



The USBconnections can only be used for charging.

Hook on the middle body pillar



The maximum load for the hook is 2 kg.

⚠ **WARNING**

- Only hang light clothing on the hooks. Do not leave heavy and sharp objects in the pockets of the clothing.
- Do not use hangers to hang clothes.

Glasses compartment



The maximum load for the compartment is 0.25 kg.

ⓘ **NOTICE**

- Do not leave any heat-sensitive objects in the glasses compartment.

Pen holder



Storage compartment for cards, coins and SD card



Storage compartment for cards in the storage area on the driver's side



Third row of seats - cup and phone holder



⚠ CAUTION
Risk of scalding!

- Never put hot beverage containers in the cup holder.

ⓘ NOTICE
Danger of damage to the electrical system and the panels from spilled drinks.

Storage compartment under the front seat

Open the storage compartment



The maximum permissible load for the storage compartment is 1.5 kg.

Storage compartment for an umbrella

Overview



ⓘ NOTICE
Risk of damage to the body and the interior panelling of the vehicle!

- Only place the umbrella from the ŠKODA original accessories in the storage compartment.
- Always push the umbrella into the storage compartment as far as it will go.

Phonebox

What you should be mindful of

⚠ **CAUTION**
Risk of burns during charging.
- ▸ The phone may get warm, remove it carefully from the storage compartment.
- ▸ Do not leave any metal objects in the compartment under the phone. If there is a metallic object in the storage compartment, which has become hot, remove the phone and let it cool down in the storage compartment!

Functionality

Functions of the Phonebox
- ▸ Wireless phone charging.
- ▸ Amplification of the telephone signal (only valid for some countries).

The Phonebox is located in the storage compartment in the front centre console.

Insert a telephone with a maximum size of 160x80 mm into the storage compartment.

Charge status display
When the phone is charging, lights up ⌀ in the status bar on the Infotainment screen.

Recommendations for optimal function
- ✓ The phone is positioned with the screen facing up.
- ✓ The protective cover of the phone is removed.
- ✓ The phone is centred on the phone icon on the pad.

Operating conditions

Conditions for wireless charging
- ✓ Ignition is switched on.
- ✓ The phone supports the Qi standard.
- ✓ There is no object between the pad and the phone.

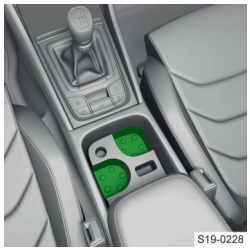
Troubleshooting

A message was displayed on the Infotainment screen stating that the mobile phone could not be charged.
- ▸ Check that there is no object between the support and the phone to be charged. If this is the case, remove the phone and the item. Place the phone centrally on the phone symbol on the pad again.
- ▸ Check that the position of the phone to be charged has not changed. If this is the case, remove the phone and put it back in the centre of the phone symbol on the pad.

Cup holder

Overview

Cup holder in front

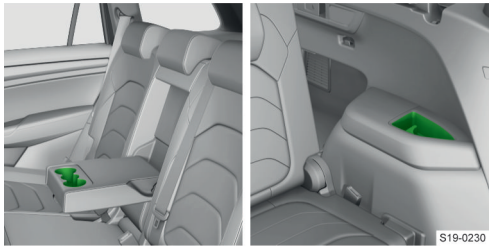


A bottle can be opened with one hand in the holder.

› Press the bottle into the holder and unscrew the cap.

Cup holder in the back



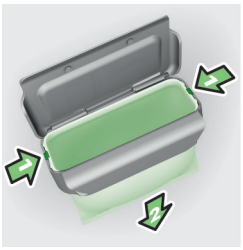


⚠ **CAUTION**
Risk of scalding!
- ▸ Never put hot beverage containers in the cup holder.

ⓘ **NOTICE**
Danger of damage to the electrical system and the panels from spilled drinks.

Waste container

Replace bags





Ashtray and cigarette lighter

What you should be mindful of

⚠ **CAUTION**
Risk of burning or fire!
- ▸ Do not use the ashtray for storing hot or burning objects.
- ▸ Handle the lighter carefully.

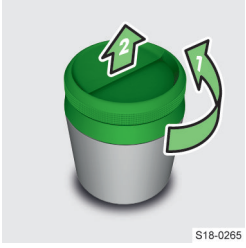
service

The ashtray is inserted in the cup holder.

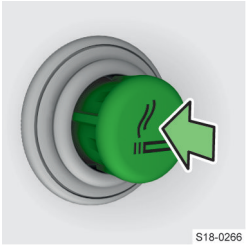
Open the ashtray



Remove the lid



cigarette lighter



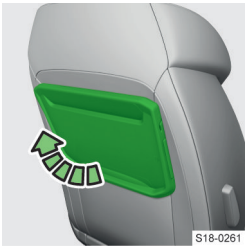
- › Push in the lighter.
- › Wait until the glowing lighter pops back out.
- › Remove and use the lighter.
- › Push the lighter back in.

The socket of the cigarette lighter serves as a 12V socket.

Folding table

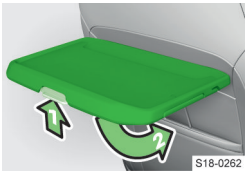
service

Fold up the table



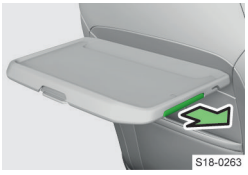
- › Fold the table up to the desired position.

Unfold the table



- › Press the safety button and unfold the table.

Slide out the cup holder

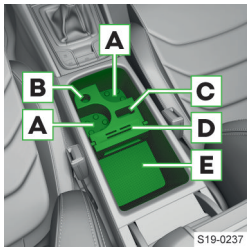


The maximum load for the table is 8.5 kg.

⚠ **CAUTION**
Risk of injury!
- ▸ While driving, the table must be in the folded-down position.

Multifunction holder

Overview



A Cup holder

B Storage compartment for storing the cover of the 12-volt power outlet

C Storage compartment for the vehicle key

D Storage compartment for coins and card

E Storage tray

The multifunction holder can be removed or rotated.

Ceiling

Remove and insert

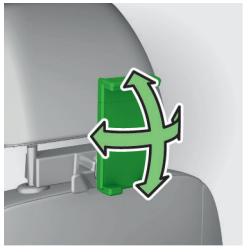
The blanket is in a bag that can be attached to one of the following locations.

- On the guide rods of the front headrests.
- In the storage pockets on the backs of the front seats.
- On the operating lever for adjusting the second seat row in the longitudinal direction.

Tablet holder

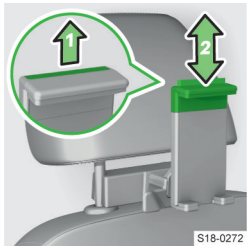
Settings

Tilt and turn





adjust size

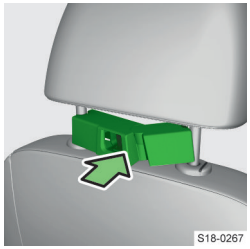


› Pull out the locking tab and move the upper part of the holder to the desired position.

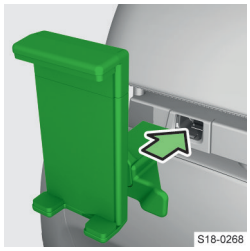
Set the minimum size of the empty holder to avoid noise while driving.

Removal and Insertion

Fasten behind the headrests

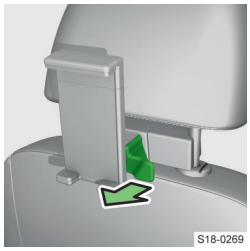


› Place the open adapter on the front guide rods of the headrest and clip in carefully.

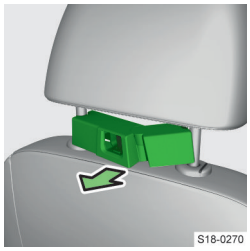


› Clip in the holder in the adapter.

Removal



› Press the safety button and unfold the holder.



› Press on the adapter and remove it.

Technical data

The holder is for fixing a tablet with a height of min. 12.2 cm and max. 19.5 cm.

The maximum load for the holder is 0.75 kg.

12-Volt power socket

Operating conditions

NOTICE
Risk of damage to the electrical system of the vehicle!
- ▸ Use the sockets only for the connection of approved electrical accessories with a total power consumption of up to 120 watts.

NOTICE
Danger of damage to the connected consumers!
- ▸ Switch off the consumers before switching the ignition on or off and before starting the engine.

230-Volt power socket

Functionality

NOTICE
Danger of damage to the connected consumers!
- ▸ Do not connect a light with fluorescent lamp to the socket.
- ▸ Switch off the consumers before switching the ignition on or off and before starting the engine.

Status display
- ▸ Lit up in green - the socket is switched on.
- ▸ Blinking green - the socket is still switched on for about 10 minutes after the engine has been switched off, if a consumer was connected before the engine was switched off.

The socket has a child safety lock. When inserting the plug, the fuse is unlocked and the socket is switched on.

Operating conditions

✓ The engine is running.

On vehicles with the START-STOP system, the socket also works in STOP mode.

Troubleshooting

The indicator light flashes red
The socket is switched off for the following reasons.
- ▸ Excessive current.
- ▸ Low state of charge of the battery.
- ▸ Overheating of the socket.

› If the reasons given above no longer apply and the socket is still not switched on automatically, disconnect the connected consumer from the socket and reconnect after a short time.

Storage compartment with air outlet nozzle

Storage compartment with air outlet nozzle

In the compartment, there is a card holder and a pen holder.

The maximum load for the compartment is 3 kg.

› Turn the knob in the compartment to position ☼ to open the air outlet nozzle.

Roof rack and hitch

Roof rack

Overview

The maximum weight of the load incl. roof rack is 75 kg.

Swivelling hitch

What you should be mindful of

⚠ WARNING
Risk of an accident!
- ▸ Do not manipulate the switch for swinging the tow bar in and out while a trailer or another accessory is coupled to the tow bar. The tow bar could be unlocked.

⚠ CAUTION
Risk of injury!
- ▸ Handle the trailer coupling carefully.
- ▸ When swinging out the tow bar, do not stand in the middle area of the rear bumper.

ⓘ NOTICE
Risk of damage to the trailer coupling!
- ▸ When not using the towing device, swing the tow bar under the bumper.

Tow bar: swivel out/in

Swing out the tow bar



› Pull on the switch. The tow bar swings out. The indicator light ⊸ inside the switch illuminates.



› Press the tow bar until it audibly clicks into place.

Check latchings: the indicator light ⊸ within the switch lights up.

Swivel tow bar

ⓘ NOTICE
- ▸ No trailer or any other accessory can be connected to the tow bar.
- ▸ A socket or adapter may not be plugged into the socket.



› Pull on the switch. The tow bar is unlocked. The indicator light ⊸ inside the switch illuminates.



› Swing in the tow bar under the bumper until it audibly clicks into place.

Check latchings: the indicator light ⊸ within the switch lights up.

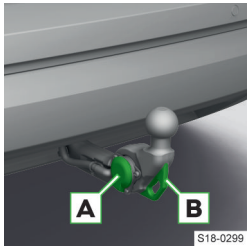
Coupling or uncoupling a trailer or accessory

The following information describes the procedure for coupling and uncoupling a trailer. The information also refers to another accessory, e.g. a bike carrier.

⚠ WARNING
Risk of an accident!
- ▸ Do not use the safety eye for towing.
- ▸ Distribute and fix the load correctly.

ⓘ The trailer has a 13-pin electrical socket. If the trailer has a 7-pin connector, use a corresponding adapter from the ŠKODA Original Accessories.

Coupling
› Swing out the tow bar.
› Put the trailer drawbar onto the ball head.



› Plug the electrical trailer plug into the socket A.
› Hook the tear-off rope of the trailer onto the safety eye B. The tear-off rope must sag against the vehicle in all trailer positions.

Uncoupling
Uncoupling takes place in reverse order.

Power supply of the trailer power network
In the electrical connection between the vehicle and trailer, the trailer is powered by the vehicle.

NOTICE
Risk of damage to the vehicle electronics!
The total power consumption of all consumers connected to the trailer power supply must not exceed 350 watts.

Troubleshooting

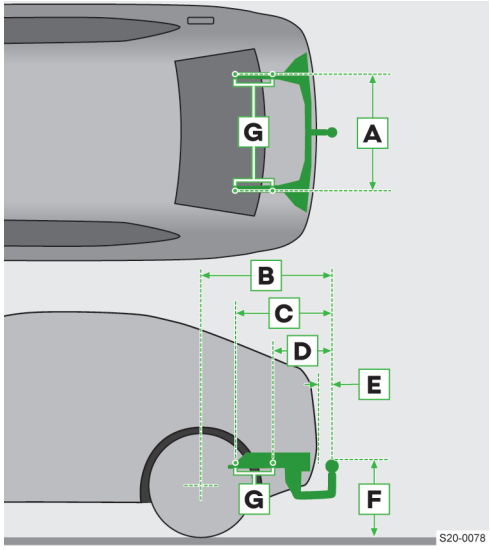
Trailer coupling error
The indicator light inside the switch does not light up or flash, or the tow bar does not lock into place.

› Do not use the trailer coupling.
› Seek the help of a specialist garage.

Tow bar not locked
illuminates
› Engage the tow bar.

Technical data

Tow hitch attachment points



A Distance of the attachment points
B Length of the rear overhang to the centre of the ball head
C Distance of the front attachment point to the centre of the ball head
D Distance of the rear attachment point to the centre of the ball head
E Distance of the rear bumper to the centre of the ball head (according to the ECE-55 standard)
F Distance from the centre of the ball head to the road (according to the standard ECE-55)
G Fastening points on the body

In mm	
A	1047.1
B	1084
C	591.2
D	343.9
E	min. 65
F	350-420

Maximum vertical load for trailer operation
The maximum vertical load for trailer operation depends on the engine type and the vehicle equipment.

The valid specification for your vehicle can be found in the technical vehicle documentation, (e.g. vehicle approval documentation, the COC document) or at a ŠKODA partner.

Other information (e.g. on the nameplate of the trailer device) merely provides information on the test values of the device.

Support load with mounted accessories
When using the accessories (e.g. bicycle carrier), the maximum length and the permissible total weight including load must be considered.

The maximum length of the mounted accessories (from the ball of the towing device) may not exceed 70 cm.

The permissible total weight of the mounted accessories including its load corresponds to the maximum vertical load for trailer operation; the value can be found in the vehicle registration documentation.

If the maximum load in trailer operation is more than 75 kg, then the permissible total weight of the mounted accessories including their load must not exceed 75 kg.

This value applies if the centre of gravity is at a distance of no more than 30 cm from the towing device ball head.

If the distance of the centre gravity of the load to the ball head of the towing device is greater than 30 cm, then the max. permissible total weight of the accessory, including its load, decreases (e.g. at a distance of 60 cm from the ball head, the permissible weight decreases by half).

⚠ **WARNING**
Risk of an accident!
- ▶ Do not exceed the maximum vertical load.
- ▶ The permissible trailer load and the weight of another accessory, e.g. of the bike carrier, is not to be exceeded.

ⓘ **NOTICE**
Risk of damage to the trailer and the vehicle itself!
- › When using the accessory (e.g. bicycle carrier), observe the maximum length and the permissible total weight of the accessory incl.

Maintaining and cleaning

Service events

service intervals
Compliance with service intervals is crucial for the life and value of the vehicle.

You will be notified of the due date for service with the symbol and the corresponding message on the display of the instrument cluster.

The specialist garage will inform you of the type of service interval, the option of changing this and the scope of service.

All services and the replacement or refilling of operating fluids are chargeable to the customer, even during the warranty period, unless the ŠKODA AUTO warranty conditions or other binding agreements determine otherwise.

Proof of service
A specialist garage stores the proof of service in the information system called Digital Service Plan.

The proof of service can be printed out.

Show service appointment
In Infotainment, select the following menu.

CAR › › Menu item for the service

Or:

MENU › › › Menu item for the service

Resetting information
We recommend that you do not reset the information regarding service events on your own. It can lead to incorrect setting of the service intervals and thus also to possible faults in the vehicle.

For vehicles with a variable service interval, new service interval values calculated according to the previous operating conditions will be displayed after the oil change service indicator is reset. These values will then continue to be adjusted according to the current operating conditions.

Service work, adjustments and technical changes

The instructions and guidelines from ŠKODA AUTO must be observed when carrying out any modifications, repairs or technical alterations to the vehicle.

Adhering to these instructions and guidelines helps ensure road safety and helps keep the vehicle in a good technical condition.

We advise only using ŠKODA Original Accessories and ŠKODA Original Parts which have been expressly approved for use on your vehicle. Reliability, safety

and suitability for your vehicle are guaranteed with these.

ŠKODA Service Partner
All ŠKODA Service Partners operate according to the most recent guidelines and instructions from ŠKODA AUTO. Service and repair work is therefore carried out on time and at the appropriate quality. Adhering to these instructions and guidelines helps ensure road safety and helps keep the vehicle in a good technical condition.

We therefore advise having all modifications, repairs and technical alterations to the vehicle carried out by a ŠKODA Service Partner.

ŠKODA original parts
We recommend the use of ŠKODA Original Parts for your vehicle, as these parts are approved by ŠKODA AUTO. These parts correspond exactly to the ŠKODA AUTO regulations and are identical to the parts used in series production.

ŠKODA AUTO is able to warrant the safety, suitability, and long life of these products.

ŠKODA Service Partners are liable for any defects of ŠKODA Genuine Parts for a period of 2 years after sale in accordance with the materials defect liability, unless agreed otherwise in the purchase agreement.

ŠKODA original accessories
We recommend that you use ŠKODA Genuine Accessories in your vehicle. With these accessories, ŠKODA AUTO stands for safety, reliability and the suitability for your vehicle type.

ŠKODA Service Partners are liable for any defects of ŠKODA Genuine Accessories for a period of 2 years after installation or delivery in accordance with the materials defect liability, unless agreed otherwise in the purchase agreement or any other agreements.

Spoiler

⚠ **WARNING**
Risk of an accident!
- Only use the original spoiler on the front bumper in combination with the original spoiler on the boot lid.
- The original spoiler on the front bumper cannot be left on its own without the spoiler on the luggage compartment lid or in combination with an unsuitable spoiler on the luggage compartment lid.
- We recommend that you consult the ŠKODA Service Partner for any repairs to or replacement, addition or removal of spoilers.

Component protection
Some electronic vehicle components (such as the instrument cluster) are factory-equipped with component protection. This component protection ensures the functional limitation of these components in a non-legitimate installation in another vehicle (e.g. after a theft) or operation outside the vehicle.

Interior

What you should be mindful of

NOTICE
- Use cleaning agents intended for cleaning and care of the individual materials.
- Do not use aggressive cleaning agents or chemical solvents.

Natural leather / Faux leather / Alcantara® suede / material

NOTICE
- Remove impurities as soon as possible.
- Do not use solvents, floor wax, shoe cream, stain remover or similar agents on Alcantara® suede seat upholstery.
- Make sure that natural leather is not moistened when cleaning and that no water seeps into the seams.
- Do not clean the roof cladding with a brush.

NOTICE
Risk of fading to the cover fabric.
- If necessary, do not leave the covers for long periods in the blazing sun.

- During use, the leather and Alcantara® and suede materials may show minor changes (e.g. folds or discolouration).
- Some clothing fabrics, e.g. dark denim, sometimes do not have sufficient colour fastness. As a result, discolouration that is clearly visible on the seat upholstery can occur. This is not a defect in the fabric.
- Sharp-edged zippers, rivets, clamps and similar garments can damage the upholstery in the vehicle. Such damages cannot be subsequently recognised as a justified complaint.

Plastic parts

NOTICE
Risk of damaging the dash panel.
- Do not attach fragrances and air fresheners to the dash panel.

Windows

NOTICE
Risk of damage to the filaments or the glass antenna.
- Do not stick stickers on the heating filaments.
- Do not use sharp objects (such as pot scrapers, etc.) to clean the windows.

Covers on electrically heated seats

NOTICE

Risk of damaging the heating system.

- ▶ Do not clean the seats with water or other liquids.
- ▶ Do not dry the seats by switching on the heating.

Seat belts

NOTICE

Risk of damage to the seat belts.

- ▶ Do not dry clean the seat belts.
- ▶ Allow cleaned belts to dry before rolling up.

Instructions for cleaning

Natural leather / Faux leather / Alcantara® / suede / material

- › Remove dust and dirt on the surface with a vacuum cleaner.
- › Remove fresh impurities with water, slightly moistened cotton cloth or woollen cloth; if necessary, use a mild soap solution and wipe with a dry cloth.
- › Remove stubborn stains with a suitable cleaning agent.
- › For regular care of natural leather, use the equipment provided for this purpose. After each clean, use a care cream with light protection and impregnation effect.
- › When looking after Alcantara®, remove stubborn hair from suede and fabric surfaces with a cleaning brush. Remove pills from materials with a brush.

Plastic parts

- › Remove impurities with water, slightly moistened cloth or sponge with a suitable cleaning agent if necessary.

Windows

- › Remove impurities with clean water and dry with a cloth provided for this purpose.

Infotainment screen

- › Remove any impurities on the screen using the cleaning agents provided.

NOTICE

Danger of screen damage!

- ▶ When removing dirt, do not press on the screen.

Covers on electrically heated seats

- › Remove impurities with a suitable cleaning agent.

Seat belts

- › Remove impurities with a soft cloth and mild soap solution.

Exterior

What you should be mindful of

WARNING

Risk of accident!

After washing the vehicle, the functionality of the brake system may be affected by moisture and, in winter, by ice.

- ▶ Dry and clean the brakes by braking several times.

NOTICE

- ▶ Bird droppings, insect residues, litter and sea salt residues, overflowing fuel, remove AdBlue® and similar as soon as possible.
- ▶ Do not use rough sponges, pot scourers or similar to remove dirt.
- ▶ Use the appropriate cleaning agents to clean and care for the individual materials.
- ▶ Do not use aggressive cleaning agents or chemical solvents.
- ▶ Do not polish the vehicle in a dusty environment.

NOTICE

AdBlue® picks up some materials, e.g. paint and plastics.

- ▶ Clean the affected area with a damp cloth and cold water.
- ▶ Remove the dried solution with warm water and a sponge.

NOTICE

- ▶ Paint damage should be repaired as soon as possible.
- ▶ Do not treat matt lacquered parts with polish or hard wax.
- ▶ Do not polish foils.
- ▶ We recommend treating door seals and window guides with the appropriate tools from ŠKODA original accessories. These ensure that the protective lacquer layer of the seals and window guides is not attacked.
- ▶ Do not use abrasive cleaning agents to clean the rear view camera.

Before driving through a car wash

- › Observe the usual specifications of the car wash, e.g. close all windows, fold the exterior mirrors, and the like.
- › Set the wiper lever in position **OFF** .
- › If there are special attachments on your vehicle, observe the instructions of the car wash operator.

NOTICE

- ▶ The Auto Hold Deactivate the function if it is necessary to roll the vehicle when passing through a car wash.

NOTICE
In vehicles with an electric luggage compartment lid, this can open automatically due to the pressure of the washing brushes.
▶ Lock the vehicle, e.g. with the central lock button.

After washing with a wax preservation
› Wipe off the windscreen wiper blades with a dry cloth.

Wash with a pressure washer

NOTICE
▶ Follow the operating instructions for the high-pressure cleaner. This particularly applies to information with respect to the pressure and spray distance from the vehicle surface.
▶ Do not direct the water jet directly at the following vehicle parts.
  ▶ Foils.
  ▶ Locks.
  ▶ Columns on the vehicle.
  ▶ Trailer socket.
  ▶ Swivelling ball bar.
  ▶ Sensors.
  ▶ Camera lenses.
  ▶ Plastic parts, chrome-plated and anodized parts.

Remove snow and ice

NOTICE
▶ Remove snow and ice with a plastic scraper or a suitable de-icing agent.
▶ Clean cameras with a hand brush.
▶ Only move the scraper in one direction.
▶ Do not use scratches or other sharp objects for foils.
▶ Do not remove snow and ice with hot or warm water.
▶ Do not remove snow and ice from surfaces with coarse dirt.

Instructions for cleaning

Handwash
› Wash the vehicle from top to bottom with a soft sponge or wash glove and plenty of water, if necessary with additional suitable cleaning agents.
› For foils and headlights, use a mild soap solution that contains two tablespoons of white neutral soap to one litre of lukewarm water.
› Use a glass cleaner for the windscreen wiper blades.
› Wash the cameras with clean water and dry with a suitable clean wipe.

NOTICE
▶ Wash out the sponge or wash mitt regularly.
▶ Use a different sponge for wheels, sills and the lower part of the vehicle than that used for the other vehicle parts.
▶ Do not wash the vehicle in the blazing sun.
▶ Do not dry the headlights or use sharp objects.
▶ Do not put pressure on the bodywork when washing.
▶ The temperature of the washing water may be a max. 60 °C.

After hand washing
› Rinse the vehicle and wipe it with a suitable clean cloth.

Vehicle paint
› Preserve the varnish at least twice a year with hard wax.
› Use a polish for matt lacquers.

Films
Films will age and become brittle – this is entirely normal: this is not an error.

The following factors have a negative effect on the life or colour fastness of the films.
▶ Sun rays.
▶ Moisture.
▶ Air pollution.
▶ Stones, e.g. due to the rebound of the cargo during transport on the roof rack.

Protection of hollow spaces
Corrosion-prone cavities of the vehicle are permanently protected by preservative wax at the factory.
› Remove spilled wax with a plastic scraper, clean stains with mineral spirits.

Underseal
The underside is permanently protected by the factory against chemical and mechanical influences.
› Have the protective coating checked by a specialist garage before starting and at the end of the cold season.

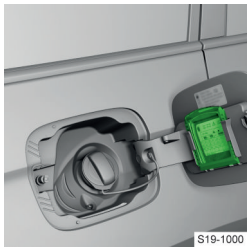
Wheels
› After washing, preserve the wheels with suitable means.

NOTICE
Severe dirt on the wheels can result in the wheels unbalancing.

Car jack
› If necessary, treat moving parts with suitable grease.

Tow hitch
› Coat the ball head of the towing device with a suitable grease whenever necessary.

Ice scraper on the fuel filler flap



Technical data and specifications

Requirements for the technical data

The emission standard, information on fuel consumption and other information pertaining to your vehicle can be found listed in the technical vehicle documentation and in the declaration of conformity, in the so-called COC-document.

The information listed was determined in accordance with rules and under conditions that are stipulated by legal or technical regulations.

This and other information about your vehicle and the declaration of conformity can be obtained from a ŠKODA partner.

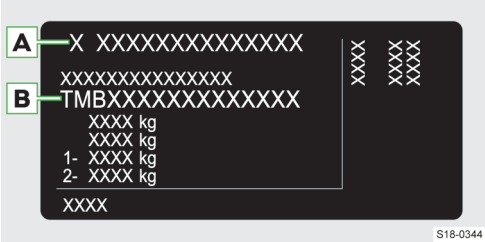
The details in the technical vehicle documentation and in the declaration of conformity take precedence over the information in this Owner's Manual. These details and values apply to your vehicle in the state and configuration at the time of delivery from the manufacturer. Retrofitting an accessory can have a negative impact on these details and values, in particular the values pertaining to fuel consumption and carbon dioxide (CO_2), which are specified in the vehicle documentation and in the declaration of conformity.

The listed performance values were determined without performance-reducing equipment, e.g. air conditioning system.

Vehicle identification data

Vehicle identification number (VIN)
The vehicle identification number is found at the following locations.

- Directly in the engine compartment on the suspension turret.
- On a plate under the windscreen in the lower left corner.
- On the type plate at the bottom of the middle body pillar of the vehicle.



Type plate.

A Vehicle manufacturers

B Vehicle identification number (VIN)

VIN display
The display of VIN takes place in the infotainment under the following menu item.

CAR > ⚙ > Menu item for the Service

Or:

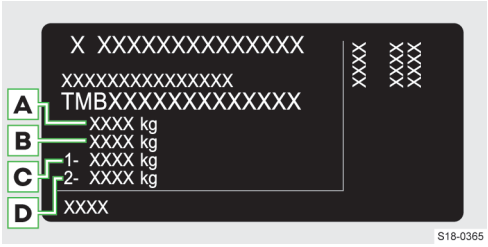
MENU > 🚗 > ⚙ > Menu item for the Service

Engine number
The engine number is embossed on the engine block.

Maximum permissible weights

The maximum permissible weights are listed on the nameplate.

The type plate is located at the bottom of the middle body pillar of the vehicle.



A Maximum permissible gross weight

B Maximum permissible towed weight (towing vehicle and trailer)

C Maximum permissible front axle load

D Maximum permissible rear axle load

Maximum permissible towed weight
The specified value is valid for altitudes up to 1000 m above sea level.

The engine output falls as the height increases, as does the ability to climb.

Therefore, for every additional 1,000 m in height (or part), the maximum permissible towed weight must be reduced by 10 %.

The towed weight is made up of the actual weights of the loaded towing vehicle and the loaded trailer.

Payloads
It is possible to calculate the approximate maximum payload from the difference between the permissible total weight and the operating weight.

The payload consists of the following components.

- The weight of the rider.
- The weight of all luggage and other loads.
- The weight of the roof, including the roof rack system.
- The weight of the equipment that is excluded from the operating weight.
- Trailer bearing load for trailer towing » page 232.

⚠ **WARNING**
Risk of accident and danger of vehicle damage!
- Do not exceed the specified values for the maximum permissible weights.

Operating weight

Information about the operating weight

The specification corresponds to the lowest possible operating weight without additional weight-increasing equipment. This includes 75 kg driver's weight, the weight of the operating fluids and the on-board tool kit and a fuel tank filled to min. 90%.

Operating weight

Engine type	Gearbox	Operating weight (kg)	
		Five-seat version	Seven-seat version
1.4 l/92 kW TSI	Manual gearbox	1516	1559
1.4 l/110 kW TSI	Manual gearbox 4x4	1626	1669
	DSG [a]	1572	1615
	DSG [a] 4x4	1641	1684
1.5 l/110 kW TSI	Manual gearbox	1544	1587
	DSG [a]	1581	1624
2.0 l/132 kW TSI	DSG [a] 4x4	1702 [b]/1706	1749
2.0 l/140 kW TSI	DSG [a] 4x4	1703	1746
2.0 l/110 kW TDI CR	Manual gearbox 4x4	1725	1768
	DSG [a]	1679	1722
	DSG [a] 4x4	1730 [c]/1755	1773 [c]/1798
2.0 l/130 kW TDI CR	DSG [a] 4x4	1718	1761

Engine type	Gearbox	Operating weight (kg)	
		Five-seat version	Seven-seat version
2.0 l/147 kW TDI CR	DSG [a] 4x4	1746	1789
2.0 l/176 kW TDI CR	DSG [a] 4x4	1895	1928

[a] Automatic dual-clutch transmission.
[b] Applies to cars with the EU4 emission standard.
[c] Applies to cars with the EU5 emission standard.

Ask for the exact vehicle weight in a specialist garage.

Vehicle dimensions

Dimensions

Specification	Value (in mm)	
	Five-seat version	Seven-seat version
Vehicle height	1660/1665 [a] [b]	1659/1664 [a]/1665 [b]
Vehicle width with folded-in mirrors	1882	
Vehicle width with folded-out mirrors	2087	
Ground clearance of the vehicle	193/197 [a]/199 [b]	192/197 [a]/198 [b]
Vehicle length	4697/4705 [b]	

[a] Applies to vehicles with a 2.0 l/176 kW TDI engine.
[b] Applies to the vehicles Kodiaq Scout.

Engine specifications

Overview

- 1.4 l/92 kW TSI » page 239.
- 1.4 l/110 kW TSI » page 240.
- 1.5 l/110 kW TSI » page 240.
- 2.0 l/132 kW TSI » page 240.
- 2.0 l/140 kW TSI » page 241.
- 2.0 l/110 kW TDI CR » page 241.
- 2.0 l/130 kW TDI CR » page 241.
- 2.0 l/147 kW TDI CR » page 242.
- 2.0 l/176 kW TDI CR » page 242.

1.4 l/92 kW TSI engine

Output (kW at rpm)	92/5000-6000	
Highest torque (Nm at rpm)	200/1400-4000	
Number of cylinders/displacement (cm^3)	4- 1395	
Gearbox	Manual gearbox	
Vehicle version	Five-seat	Seven-seat
Maximum speed (km/h)	186	186
With specified gear engaged	5	5
Acceleration 0-100 km/h (s)	10.6	10.9

1.4 l/110 kW TSI engine

Output (kW at rpm)	110/5000-6000					
Highest torque (Nm at rpm)	250/1500-3500					
Number of cylinders/displacement (cm^3)	4- 1395					
Vehicle version	Five-seat			Seven-seat		
Gearbox	Manual gearbox 4x4	DSG [a]	DSG [a] 4x4	Manual gearbox 4x4	DSG [a]	DSG [a] 4x4
Maximum speed (km/h)	195	196	191	195	195	191
With specified gear engaged	5	5	5	5	5	5
Acceleration 0-100 km/h (s)	9.8	9.7	10.0	9.9	9.9	10.2

[a] Automatic dual-clutch transmission.

1.5 l/110 kW TSI engine

Output (kW at rpm)	110/5000-6000			
Highest torque (Nm at rpm)	250/1500-3500			
Number of cylinders/displacement (cm^3)	4- 1498			
Vehicle version	Five-seat		Seven-seat	
Gearbox	Manual gearbox	DSG [a]	Manual gearbox	DSG [a]
Maximum speed (km/h)	200	198	200	198
With specified gear engaged	5	6	5	6
Acceleration 0-100 km/h (s)	9.8	9.8	9.9	9.9

[a] Automatic dual-clutch transmission.

2.0 l/132 kW TSI engine

Output (kW at rpm)	132/3900-6000	
Highest torque (Nm at rpm)	320/1400-3940	
Number of cylinders/displacement (cm^3)	4- 1984	
Vehicle version	Five-seat	Seven-seat
Gearbox	DSG [a] 4x4	DSG [a] 4x4
Maximum speed (km/h)	205	204
With specified gear engaged	6	6
Acceleration 0-100 km/h (s)	8.2	8.4

[a] Automatic dual-clutch transmission.

2.0 l/140 kW TSI engine

Output (kW at rpm)	140/4200-6000	
Highest torque (Nm at rpm)	320/1500-4100	
Number of cylinders/displacement (cm^3)	4- 1984	
Vehicle version	Five-seat	Seven-seat
Gearbox	DSG [a] 4x4	DSG [a] 4x4
Maximum speed (km/h)	212	212
With specified gear engaged	5	5
Acceleration 0-100 km/h (s)	7.5	7.6

[a] Automatic dual-clutch transmission.

2.0 l/110 kW TDI CR engine

Number of cylinders/displacement (cm^3)	4- 1968							
Vehicle version	Five-seat				Seven-seat			
Gearbox	Manual gear-box 4x4	DSG [a]	DSG [a] 4x4 (EU6)	DSG [a] 4x4 (EU5)	Manual gear-box 4x4	DSG [a]	DSG [a] 4x4 (EU6)	DSG [a] 4x4 (EU5)
Output (kW at rpm)	110/ 3500-4000	110/ 3500-4000	110/ 3000-4200	110/ 3500-4000	110/ 3500-4000	110/ 3500-4000	110/ 3000-4200	110/ 3500-4000
Highest torque (Nm at rpm)	340/ 1750-3000	340/ 1750-3000	360/ 1600-2750	340/ 1750-3000	340/ 1750-3000	340/ 1750-3000	360/ 1600-2750	340/ 1750-3000
Maximum speed (km/h)	196	198	197	192	196	198	196	191
With specified gear engaged	6	6	6	6	6	6	6	6
Acceleration 0-100 km/h (s)	9.8	9.8	9.4	10.2	10.1	10.0	9.6	10.4

[a] Automatic dual-clutch transmission.

2.0 l/130 kW TDI CR engine

Output (kW at rpm)	130/3500-4000	
Highest torque (Nm at rpm)	380/1750-3000	
Number of cylinders/displacement (cm^3)	4- 1968	
Vehicle version	Five-seat	Seven-seat
Gearbox	DSG [a] 4x4	DSG [a] 4x4
Maximum speed (km/h)	202	202
With specified gear engaged	7	7
Acceleration 0-100 km/h (s)	8.7	8.9

[a] Automatic dual-clutch transmission.

2.0 l/147 kW TDI CR engine

Output (kW at rpm)	147/3600-4100	
Highest torque (Nm at rpm)	400/1750-3500	
Number of cylinders/displacement (cm^3)	4- 1968	
Vehicle version	Five-seat	Seven-seat
Gearbox	DSG [a] 4x4	DSG [a] 4x4
Maximum speed (km/h)	212	211
With specified gear engaged	6	6
Acceleration 0-100 km/h (s)	7.6	7.8
[a] Automatic dual-clutch transmission.		

2.0 l/176 kW TDI CR engine

Output (kW at rpm)	176- 4000	
Highest torque (Nm at rpm)	500/1750-2500	
Number of cylinders/displacement (cm^3)	4- 1968	
Vehicle version	Five-seat	Seven-seat
Gearbox	DSG [a] 4x4	DSG [a] 4x4
Maximum speed (km/h)	225	224
With specified gear engaged	7	7
Acceleration 0-100 km/h (s)	6.9	7.0
[a] Automatic dual-clutch transmission.		

Accident data recorder

The vehicle is equipped with an accident data recorder, hereinafter only “EDR”. The purpose of the EDR is to record data during a traffic accident or other extraordinary traffic situation, hereinafter only an “accident”.

Data is only recorded in the event of an accident in which the restraint systems are triggered.

The EDR records the accident in a short time (approximately 10 s), by showing the following information, for example:

- The function of certain systems in the vehicle.
- The seat belt status of the driver and front passenger.
- The actuation of the brake and accelerator pedals.
- The speed of the vehicle at the time of the accident.

The recorded data support the analysis of how the vehicle systems behaved shortly before, during and shortly after the accident. This enables them to better understand the circumstances in which the accident occurred.

The data of the assistance systems in the vehicle are also recorded. Whether e.g. the affected systems were switched on or off at the relevant time, whether they were only partially available or were inactive.

There is also the possibility of tracking whether these vehicle functions controlled, accelerated or decelerated the vehicle during the accident. Depending on the equipment, these functions are, e.g:

- Automatic distance control (ACC).
- Lane Assist.
- Parking assistant.
- Emergency brake function (Front Assist).

Under normal driving conditions, there is no data record. There is no audio or video recording from the vehicle interior or surroundings. Personal data, e.g. Name, gender, age or place where the accident occurred are not recorded in the EDR. Third subjects, e.g. Law enforcement agencies can, however, use certain resources to link EDR content to other data sources and, in this way, identify some of the people involved in the accident when investigating the causes of the accident.

Special equipment is required and the ignition needs to be switched on to read the EDR data.

The ŠKODA AUTO company will not read or process any accident data from the EDR without the consent of the vehicle owner or another person authorized to use the vehicle. Exceptions are specified in the contractual agreements or these are subject to generally binding regulations.

Due to legal requirements, ŠKODA AUTO is required to monitor the quality and safety of its products, meaning that it is only entitled to use data from the EDR to monitor the product on the market, for further research and development, and to improve the quality of the vehicle's safety systems. For the purpose of research and development, ŠKODA AUTO will also make data available to third parties. This is done exclusively in anonymous form, i.e. without any connection to the specific vehicle, the vehicle owner or other authorized users.

Personal data

Personal customer data is collected, processed and used by ŠKODA AUTO in accordance with the provisions of the generally binding legal provisions.

The current declaration on the protection of personal data can be found on the following website:

▸ **https://www.skoda-auto.com/other/personal-data**

Information about the radio systems in the vehicle

Your vehicle has various radio systems.

Manufacturers of this radio equipment declare that this equipment complies with the requirements of **Directive 2014/53/EU** and the **Technical Regulation on Radio Equipment, approved by the Decision of the Cabinet of Ministers of Ukraine of 25 May 2017 no. 355**.

Information about **Directive 2014/53/EU**on the approximation of the laws of the Member States relating to the marketing of radio equipment, **Technical Regulation on Radio Equipment, approved by the Decision of the Cabinet of Ministers of Ukraine of 25 May 2017 No. 355**, as well as regarding **declaration of conformity**, can be viewed on ŠKODA web pages using the following link or by scanning the QR-code.

https://www.skoda-auto.com/services/red-doc

After this, proceed as follows:

1. Select the desired region.
2. Select Download Declaration of conformity against the desired model, to receive the certificates.

Examples of labelling of radio systems

Armenia

Australia and New Zealand

Belarus

Europe (countries that approve radio equipment as per EU guidelines)

Philippines

Moldova

Mongolia

Russia

Serbia



Taiwan



Ukraine



Vietnam

Rights arising from defective performance, ŠKODA warranties

Rights arising from defective performance
Your ŠKODA Partner, as a seller, is liable to you for material defects in your new ŠKODA vehicle, ŠKODA Genuine Parts and ŠKODA Genuine Accessories, in accordance with the legal requirements and the purchase contract.

The buyer is entitled to assert the rights arising from defective performance with the responsible ŠKODA partner from the time of vehicle handover. The date of the vehicle handover and the vehicle identification number (VIN) are properly documented in the "Vehicle delivery documentation" chapter in this Owner's Manual.

ŠKODA warranty for new cars
As well as the legal rights arising from defective performance, ŠKODA AUTO grants you the ŠKODA warranty for new cars (hereinafter referred to as the "ŠKODA Warranty"), according to the conditions described below.

Under the ŠKODA Warranty, the company ŠKODA AUTO shall provide the following services [1].

- Free repair of damage due to a defect that occurs in your vehicle within two years of the start of the ŠKODA Warranty.
- Free repair of damage due to paintwork flaws that occur on your vehicle within three years of the start of the ŠKODA Warranty.
- Free repair of rust corrosion on the body, which occurs on your vehicle within twelve years of the start of the warranty. In terms of rust corrosion on the body, the ŠKODA Warranty shall cover only rust corrosion through body panels from the inside to the outside.

The start of the ŠKODA Warranty is the day on which the new car is handed over for use by a ŠKODA partner to the first buyer who is not a ŠKODA Partner[2].

The ŠKODA Partner enters this date into the corresponding systems of the manufacturer. Any one ŠKODA Partner Partner can notify you of this date on request.

Vehicle repairs under the ŠKODA Warranty can be carried out by means of a replacement or repair of the defective parts. The ŠKODA Service Partner decides about the type of vehicle repair. The vehicle repair takes place in accordance with the availability of the ŠKODA Service Partners and within a reasonable period of time. Replaced parts become the property of the ŠKODA Service Partner.

There shall be no further claims arising from the ŠKODA Warranty. In particular, no claim for replacement, no right of withdrawal, no claim to purchase price reduction, or provision of a replacement car for the duration of repair and compensation.

The ŠKODA Warranty can be claimed at any ŠKODA Service Partner.

There are no claims under the ŠKODA Warranty if vehicle damage has occurred in causal connection with one of the following circumstances.

- The service work was not carried out on time and professionally according to the provisions of ŠKODA AUTO, or its execution was not proven by the customer when asserting claims under the ŠKODA Warranty.
- Damage refers to parts that are subject to natural wear, such as tyres, spark plugs, wiper blades, brake pads and brake discs, clutch, bulbs, synchronizer rings, batteries, etc.
- Installation, connection of parts or accessories, other adaptation or technical modification of the vehicle not approved by ŠKODA AUTO (e.g. tuning).
- Unauthorized use, improper handling (e.g. use in motor sport competitions or overloading), improp-

---

1) Based on the requirements of generally binding legal regulations or country-specific market requirements, the ŠKODA partner or importer can provide a warranty beyond the scope of the stated ŠKODA Warranty. This local warranty extends the scope of performance in accordance with the specific warranty conditions of ŠKODA partners or importers.

2) Due to the requirements of the generally binding country-specific regulations, the date of first registration can be given instead of the date of the vehicle handover.

er care and maintenance or unauthorized modifications to your vehicle.

- Non-compliance with provisions in the Owner's Manual or other factory-supplied instructions.
- External impact or influences (e.g. accident, hail, flood, etc.).
- Damage has not been reported immediately to a specialist company or has not been properly remedied.

The customer shall prove the lack of causation.

The present ŠKODA Warranty shall not affect the purchaser's statutory rights arising from unsatisfactory performance in respect of the seller of the vehicle and possible claims arising from product liability laws.

ŠKODA Mobility warranty

The Mobility Warranty provides you with a sense of certainty for journeys in your vehicle.

As part of the Mobility Warranty, if your car breaks down as a result of an unexpected fault when you are on the move, you can access services to ensure your continued mobility. These services include the following: Breakdown service at the breakdown location and towing to the ŠKODA Service Partner, technical assistance by phone or on-site operation.

If your vehicle is not repaired on the same day, then the ŠKODA Service Partner may, if necessary, arrange additional subsequent services, such as replacement transport (bus, train, etc.), the provision of a replacement vehicle, and the like.

Specific claims for free provision of services under the ŠKODA Mobility Warranty only exist if your vehicle has remained in a causal connection with a defect which is to be remedied on the basis of fulfilment under the ŠKODA Warranty.

Check the conditions for provision of the Mobility Warranty for your vehicle with your ŠKODA Partner. They will also inform you of the detailed terms and conditions of the Mobility Warranty in relation to your vehicle. In the event that your vehicle is not covered by a mobility warranty, he will inform you of the possibilities for subsequent conclusion.

Optional ŠKODA Extended Warranty

If you also purchased a ŠKODA Extended Warranty when purchasing your new car, ŠKODA AUTO will provide you with a free repair of vehicle damage caused by a defect in the vehicle during the warranty period.

The ŠKODA Extended Warranty for your vehicle is valid for the agreed period or until the agreed mileage limit is reached, whichever comes first.

For the assessment of claims from the ŠKODA Extended Warranty, the conditions of the ŠKODA warranty described above apply to the appropriate extent.

The vehicle repair under the ŠKODA Extended Warranty can only be carried out by replacement or repair of the defective parts, whereby the ŠKODA service partner decides on the type of vehicle repair. The vehicle repair takes place in accordance with the availability of the ŠKODA Service Partners and within a reasonable period of time.

There shall in any case be no entitlement to further claims from the ŠKODA Extended Warranty. In particular, no claim for replacement, no right of withdrawal, no claim to purchase price reduction, or provision of a replacement car for the duration of repair and compensation.

The previously mentioned paint warranty and the warranty against rust perforation are unaffected by the ŠKODA extended warranty.

The ŠKODA Extended Warranty does not apply to exterior and interior foils.

Your ŠKODA partner will provide you with information about the detailed conditions of the ŠKODA Extended Warranty.

The ŠKODA Mobility Warranty and the ŠKODA Extended Warranty are only available in some countries.

Index

A

ABS 177
ACC 181
Automatic stop and start 181
Distance adjustment 181
Interruption of cruise control 182
Accident data recorder 242
Activation of online services 157
Adaptive Cruise Control 181
Adaptive suspension 172
AdBlue
Check 199
Functionality 199
Indicator light 199
Refilling 199
Safety 19
standard 199
tank capacity 200
Air conditioning
see manual air conditioning 58
Air conditioning,
see Climatronic 59
Airbag 47
Fault 48
Installation locations 47
Release 47
Safety 20
Switch off the front passenger airbag 48
Turn off airbags 48
Alarm system 28
Trailer 28
All-season tyres 209
Ambient lighting 56
Analogue instrument cluster 64
Android Auto
Infotainment Amundsen 125
Infotainment Bolero 104
Infotainment Columbus 150
Infotainment Swing 82
see digital version of the manual 5
Anonymous vehicle data 158
Apple CarPlay
Infotainment Amundsen 125
Infotainment Bolero 104
Infotainment Columbus 150
Infotainment Swing 82
see digital version of the manual 5
Area View 191, 192
see Area View 191
armrest
behind 40
front 40
Ashtray 228
ASR 177
Assist systems
Driver assist 177
Park Assist 188
Assist systems for emergency situations 187
Assistance systems
Safety 21
Auto Hold 176
Automatic Braking
see Front Assist 178
Automatic gearbox 169
shift manually with the shift paddles on the steering wheel 170
Automatic gearbox modes 169
Automatic operation of the Climatronic 59
Auxiliary heating and ventilation 61
Change the battery in the remote control 62
Troubleshooting 62
Availability of ŠKODA Connect services 157

B

Battery
see vehicle battery 202
Battery acid 202
Blanket 229
Boot
Double-sided floor covering 219
Fastening the floor covering 219
roll-up cover 220
see luggage compartment lid 33
Transporting objects safely 21
Variable loading floor 220
Boot lid
Automatic locking 34
Contactless operation 35
Manually unlock 35
to be set to the highest position 34
Boot Lid
Troubleshooting 35
brake fluid 175
Brake fluid
Safety 19
Brake pads 175
Brakes 175
Breakdown call 166
Bulbs 52
Front fog lights - Replacing 54
Buttons / dials
Steering wheel 11

C

Car adaptations
Recommendations 233
Cargo elements 217
Central locking 26
SAFE function 26
Central locking button 26
Centre console 10
Changing gear with a
manual gearbox 169
Charging your phone wirelessly 227

Check the vehicle before your journey 19
Child lock 29
Child seat 44
Attachment 46
Attachment with a strap 46
Grouping 44
i-Size 46
in the passenger seat 44
ISOFIX 45, 46
Keyword child seat 44
Recommended child seats 45
Safety instructions 44
Securing children properly 20
TOP TETHER 47
Choose Tyre control display A. 214
cigarette lighter 228
Cleaning the vehicle
Outside 236
Climatronic 59
Display in the centre console at the back 59
COMING HOME 52
attitude 52
Functional conditions 52
Compartments 222, 223
Control Centre
Infotainment Amundsen 110
Infotainment Bolero 89
Infotainment Columbus 135
Infotainment Swing 73
Coolant 196
Checking 197
Indicator light 197
Refilling 197
Safety 19
Specification 197
Temperature display 196
Troubleshooting 197
Cooling system 58, 59
Crew Protect Assist
see Proactive occupant protection 186
Cruise control 180
Cup holder 227
Cybernetic Security
Infotainment Amundsen 119
Infotainment Bolero 98
Infotainment Columbus 144

D

Data Connection 163
Daylight running lights 49
DCC 172
Diesel 201
Misfuel protection 201
Prescribed fuel 202
Refill 202
Requirements for refuelling 201
Standards 201
Tank capacity 202
Troubleshooting 202
Digital
instrument cluster 65
Digital Assistant Laura
Columbus Infotainment 134
Infotainment Amundsen 109
Digital instrument cluster 65, 66
dimmed headlights 49, 51
Distribution of the cargo 172
Door
Open / close 29
Door protect
see door protection strip 30
Door protection strip
Change 30
Functionality 30
Downhill assistant 187
Activation / deactivation 188
Functionality 187
Drive assistant
see Travel Assist 184
Drive in neutral 169
DriveGreen 172
Driver Alert 187
fatigue detection assistant 187
Driver's seat 10
Driving data 67
Driving with a trailer
Trailer stability assist 177
Driving with trailer
Safety 21
DSR 177

E

Earth point 204
Economical driving style 172
EDL 177
Electric parking brake 175
Electric windows 31
Activation 31
Force limitation 30
Operation 31
Troubleshooting 31
Emergency
Emergency call 22
Using jump start cables 204
What to do after an accident 23
What to do in the event of a fire 23
Emergency Assist
see assist systems for emergency situations 187
Emergency call 22
Emergency equipment 216
Jack 217
Tool kit 217
Emergency wheel 210
Safe driving 21
End of protection of personal data 158
Engine compartment 11

Coolant 196
Engine oil 195
flap 195
Safety 19
Vehicle battery 202
Windshield washer fluid 57
Engine compartment lid 195
Engine number 237
Engine oil 195
Changing 196
Checking 195
Indicator light 196
Refilling 196
Safety 19
Specification 196
Engine start
Using jump start cables 204
EPC 198
Equipment in the luggage compartment 216
ESC 177
ESC Sport 177
Exhaust control system 198
Explanations 6
Exterior
lighting 49
Extinguisher 217

F

Fasteners in the luggage compartment 217
First aid kit 216
Flashing comfort 50, 51
Floor covering in the boot
Fasten the floor covering 219
Flooring in the boot 219
Fog light 50
Fog lights 50
Fogged windows 59, 60
Folding table 228
Freewheel
see Driving in neutral 169
Front Assist 178
Front seats
with electrical control 36
with manual operation 36
Front vehicle area 7
Fuel
Diesel 201
Petrol 200
Fuel filter 198
Fuel tank
Opening the flap 199
Fuel tank lid 199
Full LED headlights 49
Fuses 205
In the dash panel 205
In the engine compartment 207
Replacing 205

H

Hazard warning lights 50
Headlights 51
Full LED 49
Headlight range control 51
Headrests 39
Heated seats 63
Heated windscreen 62
HHC
see hill start assist 177
High beam assistant 52
High-beam
High-beam assist system 52
High-beam assist system 52
Hill Descent Assist System
Operating conditions 187
Hill start assist 177
Hook
in the interior 223
in the luggage compartment 217

I

i-Size 46
Ice scraper 9
Images
Infotainment Amundsen 118
Infotainment Bolero 97
Infotainment Columbus 143
see digital version of the manual 5
Immobilizer 168
In the event of an accident
What to do after an accident 23
indicator
see flashing light 50
Indicator lights
Foreword 12
Overview 12, 14
Info call 165
Information Sport 70
Infotainment Amundsen 106
Infotainment Bolero 84
Infotainment Columbus 131
Infotainment keyboard
see digital version of the manual 5
Infotainment Overview
Infotainment Amundsen 106
Infotainment Bolero 84
Infotainment Columbus 131
Infotainment Swing 71
Infotainment Screen
Infotainment Amundsen 107
Infotainment Bolero 86
Infotainment Columbus 132
Infotainment Swing 72
Infotainment Settings
Infotainment Amundsen 106
Infotainment Bolero 85
Infotainment Columbus 131

Infotainment Swing 71
Infotainment Swing 71
Instrument cluster
Analogue 64
Instrument cluster display 64
Instrument cluster display 64
Interior
lighting 55
Interior lighting 55, 56
Ambient lighting 56
service 55
Interior mirror 41
ISOFIX 46
Retaining eyes 46
Use of child seats 45

J

Jump start cables 204
Jump-starting 204

K

Key 24
Memory function of the key 25
Take out the key bit 24
Key switch for airbag deactivation 48
Key switch for the front passenger airbag
Key switch faulty 49
Keyboard
Infotainment Columbus 133
Keyless locking (KESSY) 27
Keypad
Infotainment Amundsen 108
Infotainment Columbus 87
Infotainment Swing 72
Kick-down 169

L

Lane Assist 183
Lane change assistant
see Side Assist 184
Lane Keeping Assist
see Lane Assist 183
Lap timer
Infotainment 69
Instrument cluster 69
Launch control 170
LEAVING HOME 52
attitude 52
Functional conditions 52
Lever
buttons 65
High beam assistant 52
Main beam 50
Turn signal 50
Windshield wipers and washers 56
Liability for defects
see warranty 244
Light 49
automatic switching on and off 49, 51
Change bulbs 52
Changing bulbs 52
Clean headlights 56
CORNER function 49
dimmed headlights 51
Driving in opposite directions 51
Fog light 50
Full LED headlights 49
Hazard warning lights 50
Headlight range adjustment 51
High-beam assist system 52
Indicator light 51
Main beam 50
Parking light 50, 51
service 50
Side light 51
Troubleshooting 51
Turn signal 50
Light Assist
see high beam assistant 52
Light range 51
light switch 50
lightbulbs
Front flashing light - change 54
Rear flashing light - change 55
Lightbulbs
Dipped beam - change 53
High beam - Replacing 53
Parking light - Changing 53
lighting
Inside 55
Outside 49
Lighting
Ambient lighting 56
Limiter
see speed limiter 179
Load-through bag 221
Lock 26
Locking 27
Luggage compartment 216
12 volt socket 216
Fastening elements 217
Fastening nets 218
Hitch switch 216
Lever for folding forward the rear seat backrests 216
Net partition 219
Storage compartments 216
Luggage compartment lid 34
manual operation 33

M

Main beam 50
Management of online services 162
Manual air conditioning 58
Manual gearbox 169
Manually switch the automatic gearbox

with the selector lever 170
MCB 177
Media
Infotainment Amundsen 114
Infotainment Bolero 93
Infotainment Columbus 139
Infotainment Swing 76
Playlist 94, 115, 140
see digital version of the manual 5
Memory function of the key 25
Memory function of the seat 36
mirror
see exterior mirror 41
see inside mirror 41
MirrorLink
Infotainment Amundsen 125
Infotainment Bolero 104
Infotainment Columbus 150
Infotainment Swing 82
see digital version of the manual 5
Mobile Device Management
Infotainment Amundsen 119
Infotainment Bolero 98
Infotainment Columbus 144
Infotainment Swing 79
MSR 177
Multi-collision brake
see MCB 177
Multifunction holder 229

N

Navigation
Infotainment Amundsen 127
Infotainment Bolero 85
Infotainment Columbus 152
Net partition 219
Nets 218

O

Offroad 171
Offroad information 171
Oil
see engine oil 195
Online services
Availability 157
Breakdown call 166
Info call 165
Remote access to the vehicle 166
Shop 165
System update 164
Online Services
Data Connection 163
Management of online services 162
Personalisation 162
Service Scheduling 166
ŠKODA Connect 156
User Account 162
User Management 160
User registration and activation of ŠKODA Connect services 157
Vehicle status report 166

P

Park
Parking assist 188
Parking assistant 192
Park Assist
Troubleshooting 194
Park Assist systems 188
Parking
Parking the vehicle safely 22
Reversing camera 189
Parking aid 189
Parking assist 188, 189
Troubleshooting 189
Parking assistant 192, 193
Parking brake 175
see electric parking brake 175
Parking light 50, 51
ParkPilot
see parking assist 188
Partition in the boot 221
Passenger seat 10
Pedestrian detection 179
Personal data 158, 243
Personalisation 162
Personalization
Change user account 70
Functionality 70
key assignment 70
Setting 70
Usage 70
Petrol 200
Prescribed fuel 201
Prescribed petrol 200
Refilling 200
Requirements for refuelling 200
standards 200
Tank capacity 201
Troubleshooting 201
Phonebox 227
Power steering 40
Practical equipment 222, 223
12 volt socket 216, 222, 223, 230
230 volt socket 223, 230
Ashtray 228
cigarette lighter 228
Coat hooks 223
Cup holder 227
Folding table 228
Load-through bag 221
Make-up mirror 222
Multifunction holder 229
Note holder 222
Parking ticket holder 222
Spectacle compartment 222

Storage bags 223
Storage compartment for the umbrella 226
Storage compartment under the front seat 226
Storage compartments 222, 223
Tablet holder 229

R

Radiator blinds 198
Radio
Infotainment Amundsen 111
Infotainment Bolero 89
Infotainment Columbus 136
Infotainment Swing 73
see digital version of the manual 5
Radio remote control for the auxiliary heating and ventilation
Change battery 62
Rear fog light 50
Rear vehicle area 9
Rear view camera 189
Rear View Camera
Operation 190
Recirculated air mode 58, 59
Refill
Diesel 202
Windshield washer fluid 57
Refilling
AdBlue 199
Coolant 197
Engine oil 196
Petrol 200
Reflective vest 216
Remote access to the vehicle 166
Restarting Infotainment
Infotainment Amundsen 107
Infotainment Bolero 85
Infotainment Columbus 132
Infotainment Swing 71
Rights arising from defective performance
see warranty 244
Roll-up boot cover 220
Roof rack 231
Roof load 231
Safe driving 21

S

Safe driving 21
SAFE function
Description 26
Turn off 26
Safety
Airbag 20
Assistance systems 21
Before the journey 18
Belt webbing arrangement 20
Car adaptations 18
Child seat 20
Correct seating position 19
Driving through water 22
Driving with a trailer 21
Emergency call 22
Engine compartment 19
Exiting the vehicle 22
Indicator lights 21
New brake pads 18
New tyres 18
Operating fluids 19
Parking 22
Roof rack 21
Running in the engine 18
safe driving 21
Sensors and cameras 18
Sockets 19
Spare and emergency wheel 21
Transporting cargo 21
Transporting children 20
Transporting objects 21
Vehicle battery 19
weather conditions 22
What to do after an accident 23
What to do in the event of a fire 23
SEAL tyres 209
Seat belts 42
Adjust height 43
Automatic belt retractor 42
Belt tensioners 42
blocked webbing 43
Correct arrangement 20
Put on and take off 43
Reversible belt tensioner 42
status display 42
Seat ventilation 63
Seats 36
Access to the third row 37
Heating 63
ISOFIX 46
Memory function of the seat 36
second row 37
Sitting safely 19
third row of seats 38
TOP TETHER 47
Ventilation 63
Selector lever 170
Service event
Interval 233
Proof 233
Reset information 233
Show appointment 233
Service position of the wiper arms 57
Service Scheduling 166
Service work 233
Set tyre pressure values 214
Shop 165
Side assist 184
Side Assist 184
Side light
see parking light 50, 51

Ski 221
Sliding / tilting roof
Electrical operation of the sun protection blind 33
Operation 32
Sliding hooks 219
Sliding/tilting roof
Activation after disconnecting the vehicle battery 32
Troubleshooting 32
SmartLink
Infotainment Amundsen 125
Infotainment Bolero 104
Infotainment Columbus 150
Infotainment Swing 82
see digital version of the manual 5
Snow chains 209
Sockets
12-volt socket 230
230-volt socket 230
Safety 19
Spare wheel 210
Safe driving 21
Speed limit 68
Resetting 68
Settings 68
Speed limit warning 68
Setting 68
Speed limiter 179
Indicator light 179
Start 167
START-STOP 168
Starter button 167
Starting instructions 167
Steering column lock 40
Steering wheel 40
buttons / dial 65, 66
Buttons / dials 11
Correct position 20
heating 64
shift manually with the shift paddles on the steering wheel 170
Steering wheel heating 64
Stopping the engine 167
Stopwatch
Infotainment 69
Instrument cluster 69
Storage 222, 223
Sun protection 33
Activating sunblind operation 33
Electrical operation of the sun protection blind 33
Operation of the sun blinds for the rear door windows 33
Supported media files
see digital version of the manual 5
Switch off the front passenger airbag 48
Switch Offroad
on / off 171
Switch on the low beam automatically 49, 51
System
Infotainment Amundsen 106
Infotainment Columbus 131
Infotainment Swing 71
System update 164
System Update
Infotainment Bolero 85

T

Tablet holder 229
Tank capacity
Diesel 202
Petrol 201
Technical data 237
Technical specifications
Dimensions 239
engine specifications 239
Telephone
Infotainment Amundsen 120
Infotainment Bolero 99
Infotainment Columbus 145
Infotainment Swing 80
Tilting/sliding sunroof 32
Tips for economical driving 172
Tiptronic 170
Tires
Overview of the labelling 208
Pressure 213
Wear indicator 208
Tool 217
Top speed 239
TOP TETHER 47
Retaining eyes 47
Touch operation
Infotainment Amundsen 107
Infotainment Bolero 86
Infotainment Columbus 132
Infotainment swing 72
Tow hitch 231
Tow rope 174
Towing a trailer 172
Towing eye 174
Towing the vehicle 174
traffic accident
Data recorder 242
Traffic accident
Emergency call 22
Traffic Sign Recognition 185
Trailer 172
Alarm system 28
Coupling and uncoupling 231
Permissible load 173
Safe driving 21
Swing out the tow bar and back in 231
Trailer Assist 194
Trailer attachment
Vertical load 232
Trailer coupling
Troubleshooting 232

Trailer manoeuvring system
see Trailer Assist 194
Trailer stability assist 177
Transport
Transporting objects safely 21
Transporting
tow hitch 231
Transporting the
roof rack 231
Travel Assist 184
TSA
see trailer stability assist 177
Turn signal 50
Type plate 237
Tyre control display 214
Tyre pressure monitor 214, 215
tyres 208
Breakdown set 212
Tyres 209
Pressure 213
Snow chains 209
Tyre control display 214

U

Umbrella 226
Unlock 26
Unlocking 27
Update Infotainment
Infotainment Amundsen 107
Infotainment Bolero 85
Infotainment Columbus 132
Infotainment Swing 71
Updating the system and the Infotainment system
see digital version of the manual 5
USB 222, 223
User Account 162
User Management 160
User registration 157

V

Variable loading floor in the boot 220
Vehicle battery 202
Charging 202
Checking the condition 202
Discharge protection 202
Disconnecting and connecting 203
Error 203
Safety 19
Vehicle cleaning
interior space 235
Vehicle dimensions 239
Vehicle driving mode 171
Eco 171
Individual 171
Normal 171
Offroad 171
Snow 171
Sport 171
Vehicle height 239
Vehicle Identification Number (VIN) 237
Vehicle length 239
Vehicle status 68
Vehicle status report 166
Vehicle width 239
Vest
see reflective vest 216
VIN
see vehicle identification number 237
Virtual cockpit
see digital instrument cluster 65
Voice control
Infotainment Amundsen 109
Voice Control
Infotainment Bolero 88
Infotainment Columbus 134

W

Warning triangle 216
Warranty 244
Mobility Warranty 245
Optional Extended Warranty 245
Rights arising from defective performance 244
Warranty for new cars 244
Waste bin 228
Water in the fuel filter 198
Weight 238
wheels 208
Wheels
Aero full wheel cover 215
Breakdown 209
Change 210, 211
Cover caps of the screws 215
Full wheel cover 215
Overview of tyre labelling 208
Pressure change 209
Spare wheel and emergency spare wheel 210
Tyre control display 214
Tyre pressure 213
Wear indicator 208
Wi-Fi
Infotainment Amundsen 123
Infotainment Bolero 103
Infotainment Columbus 148
see digital version of the manual 5
Window 31
heating 62
Windshield washer
see windscreen wipers and washers 56
Windshield washer fluid
how is the wash water refilled 57
Level too low 57
Windshield wipers and washers 56
Add windshield washer fluid 57
automatic rear window wiper 57
automatic wiping 57
Fold down the wiper arms 57

Replace the windscreen wiper blade 58
Windscreen washer fluid level too low 57
Wing mirror 41
Winter tyres 209

X

XDL + 177